



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

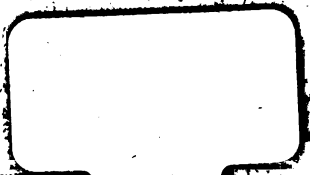
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

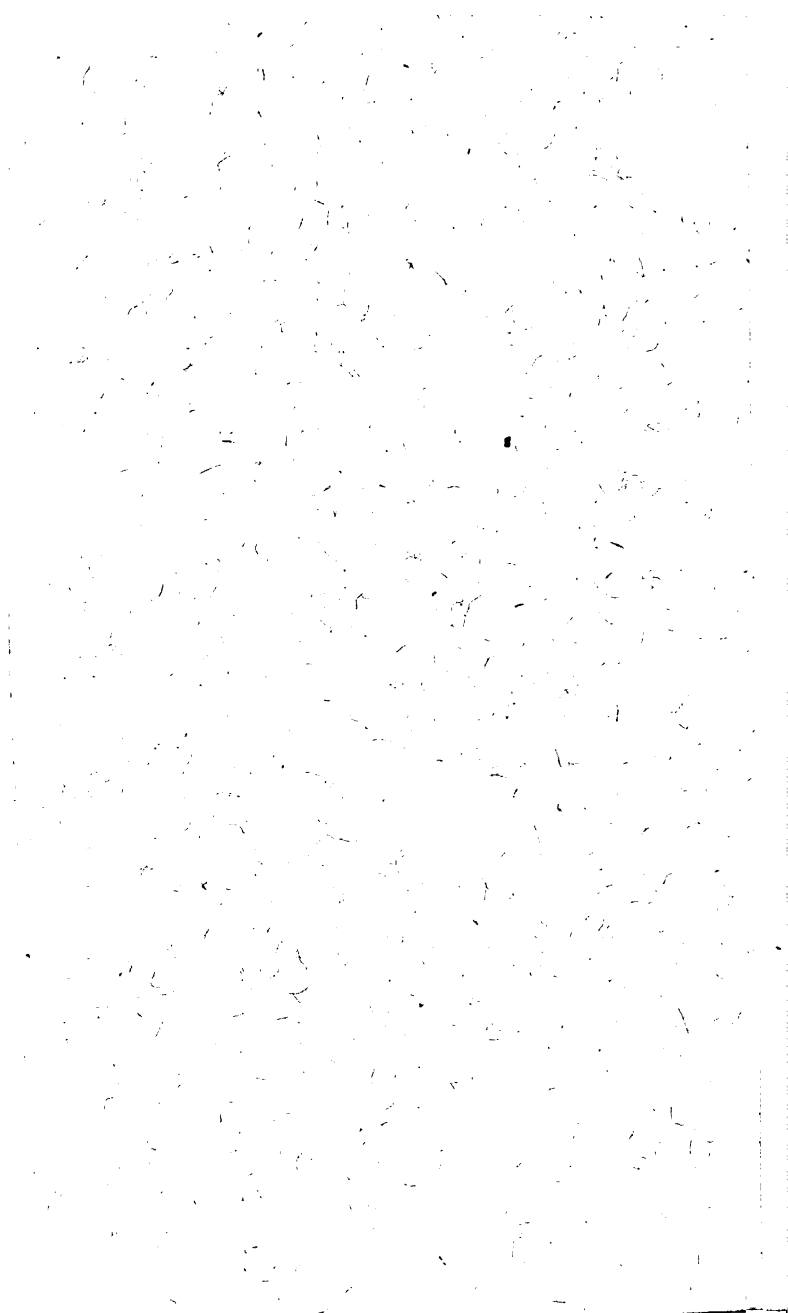


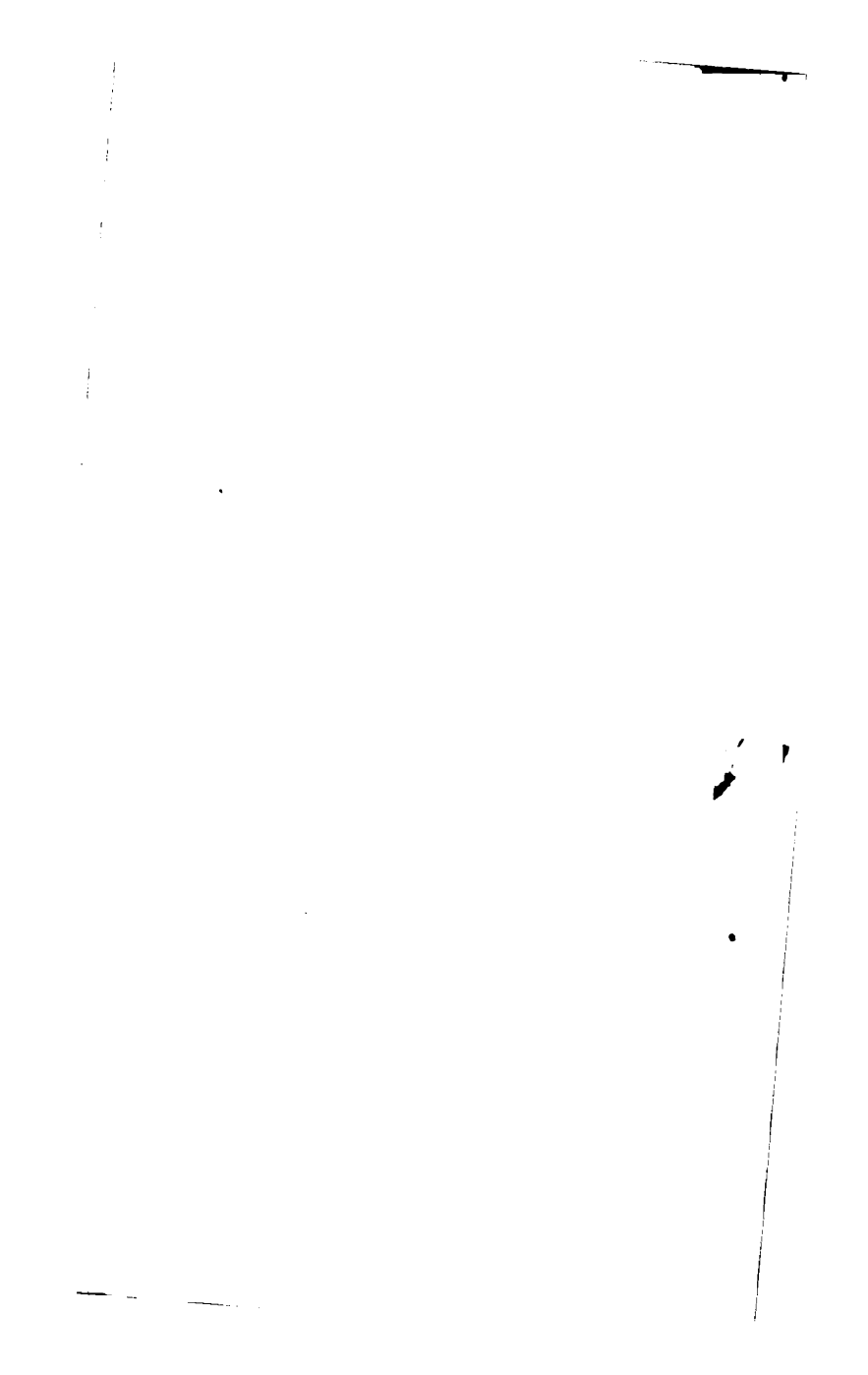
BNG D

135 B

CONCAT

135 B







THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

THE FIRST SIX BOOKS
OF
CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE
GALLIC WAR, +✓

ADAPTED TO
BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR;

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, ON THE IDIOMS OF THE LATIN
LANGUAGE; COPIOUS EXPLANATORY NOTES; AND
AN INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

REVISED AND CORRECTED.

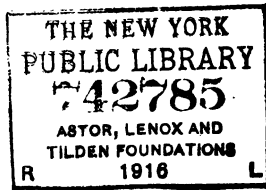
With New Marginal Notes and References.

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS; D. D.,

LATE PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ABBEY ACADEMY; AUTHOR
OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND
ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN, &c., &c.

NEW YORK:
PRATT, OAKLEY AND COMPANY,
21 MURRAY STREET.

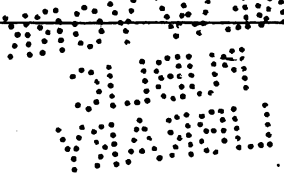
1860.



Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year one thousand
eight hundred and fifty-nine, by

PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,

In the Clerk's Office of the Northern District of New York.



PREFACE.

CÆSAR is usually, and with great propriety, among the first books put into the hands of pupils commencing the study of Latin. In adapting a portion of this work, as well as the Latin Reader, to his Latin Grammar, the chief object of the Editor has been to lead the student, in the beginning of his course, to a minute and thorough acquaintance with the principles of the language. The text of Oudendorp has been generally followed. For the sake of convenience, and also because, with many, Cæsar is the first book studied after the Grammar, the Introduction on the Latin Idioms prefixed to the Latin Reader has been prefixed here also. To this as well as to the Grammar reference is constantly made at the foot of the page, for the purpose of explaining and illustrating principles as they occur; and if the pupil will only take the pains to examine these references as he proceeds, he will gradually, and with comparatively little labor, become so familiar with the grammatical structure and idioms of the language that his future progress will be much more rapid and pleasant than it can be without such a course of training.

To the text copious notes have been added, for the purpose of explaining more particularly some constructions of the language,—aiding the pupil in the selection of an appropriate term, or, in giving variety to his expression,—and, in some cases, of assisting him to apprehend more clearly the meaning of the author. These, together with the references to the Introduction and Grammar above specified, contain such and so much assistance as an industrious and intelligent pupil, at this stage of his progress, in preparing his lessons, may be supposed to need from his teacher; so that by a proper use of this work, both the teacher will be relieved in a great measure from that labor, and interruption of other duties which the rea-

dering of this assistance would require, and the pupil will have always at hand the assistance needed. These notes are taken chiefly from Dymock's *Cæsar*, Glasgow edition. A few have been added from other sources.

The Vocabulary or index at the end of the work is abridged from the same author, and contains various and important information respecting the persons and places mentioned in the text, and also respecting many things belonging to the antiquities and polity of the Romans and their method of conducting military operations. In this part several wood cuts have been introduced to aid the pupil in forming correct ideas of some of the engines and operations of war, as they existed in the days of *Cæsar*.

The map of Ancient Gaul has been prepared with special reference to this work, and exhibits the divisions of that country, with the names of nations, tribes, and towns, mentioned by *Cæsar*, as they existed in his time, so far as their position can be ascertained from authentic sources. The modern names of the same places will be found, generally, by consulting the Index.

A correct pronunciation as it regards quantity should be attended to from the beginning. In order to aid the pupil in forming correct habits in this too much neglected part of study, the quantity of the penult syllable has been marked in all words of more than two syllables, except where the penult vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, in which case it is always long; or where the penult vowel is followed by another vowel, in which case it is almost always short; or when the syllable being common, that is, either short or long, there is no danger of the quantity being given wrong. In words of two syllables there is little danger of wrong pronunciation, and if, in words of more than two syllables, the quantity of the penult is correctly given, there is little danger of error elsewhere.

With a view to render the work as full as was deemed necessary, and at the same time to bring the price so low as to make it more generally accessible, only the first six books of the *Commentaries* on the Gallic war have been taken. These contain all that portion of this author usually read in academies and schools, and to have taken more would only have increased the size and the price of the book without any corresponding benefit to the purchaser.

The Editor takes this opportunity to renew his grateful acknowledgements to the many learned men, and instructors of youth, for

PREFACE.

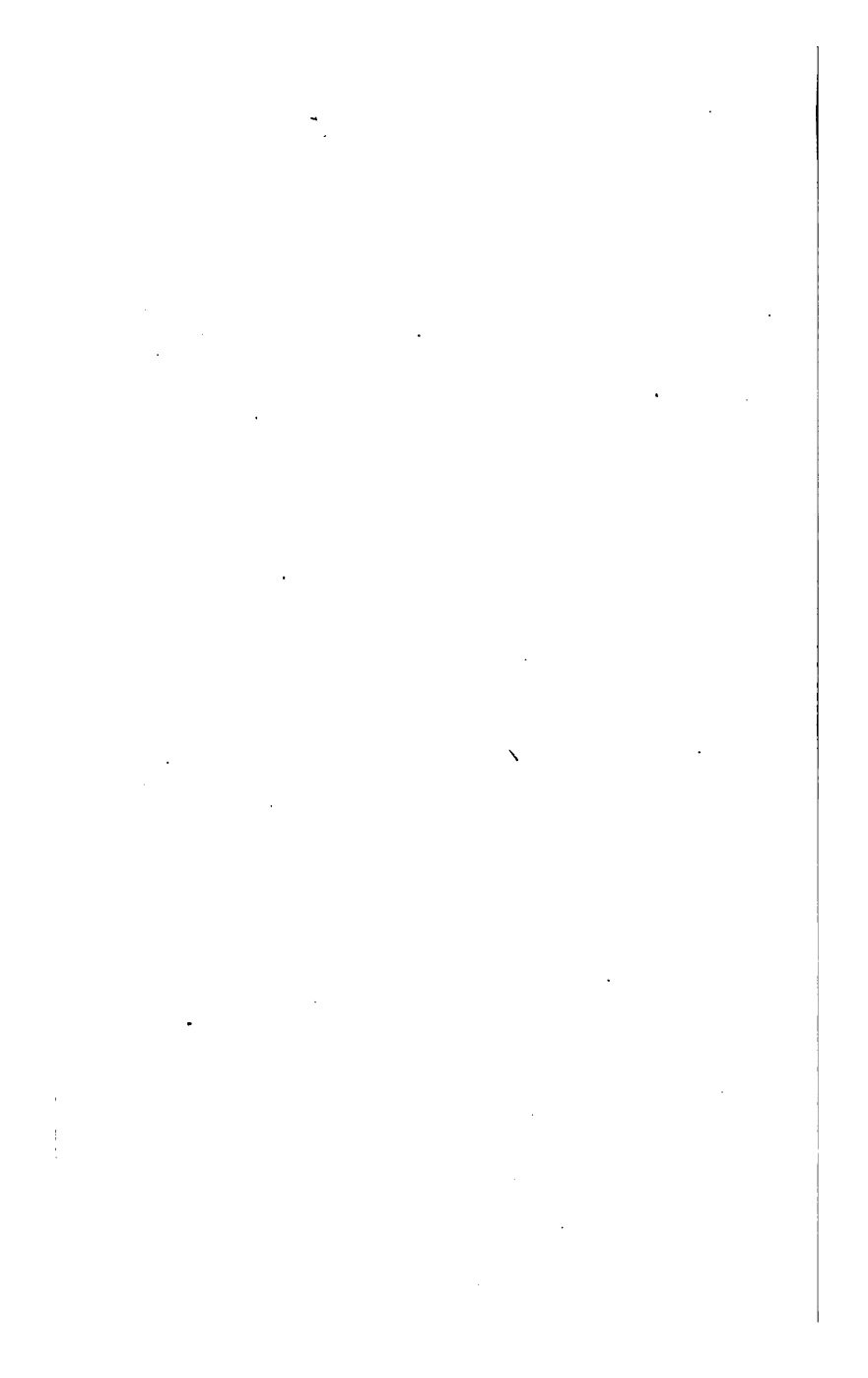
v

the favor with which his humble labors have been received by them, and for the many important suggestions communicated, by which he has been enabled to add essentially to their value and usefulness.

REFERENCES.

The References to the Latin Grammar, at the foot of each page of the text, are now adapted to the revised and improved editions since 1852, and are indicated by Gr. prefixed. Those having Id. prefixed, refer to the "Idioms" at the beginning of the book, pp. 11-51.

TROY, N. Y., May, 1859.



INTRODUCTION.

SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal.*
2. Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.
3. A simple sentence contains but one subject and one verb; as, *Life is short. Time flies.*
4. A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed.*
5. In the combining of words to form a sentence, observe carefully the following

General Principles of Syntax.

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject*, expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees, § 98 and § 146.*
3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees, § 99.
4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, §§ 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate, § 103.
5. Every finite verb; i. e., every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood, §§ 101, 102, and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative, § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition, § 143.
6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part.

* The references are to the sections in the Latin Grammar.

Resolution or Analysis.

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94, 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the *Grammatical* subject and predicate, and the *Logical* subject and predicate.

The *Grammatical subject* is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The *Logical subject* is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The *Grammatical predicate* is the word or words containing the simple affirmation made respecting the subject.

The *Logical predicate* is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way; thus:

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "*desire*;" the Logical "*An inordinate desire of admiration*." The Grammatical predicate is "*produces*," the Logical, "*produces often a contemptible levity of deportment*."

In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e., the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the proper order of the English. This is technically called *construing* or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

Directions for Beginners.

DIRECT. I. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or **NOMINATIVE**, and the predicate or **VERB**; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this

1. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

2. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

DIRECT. II. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words*, if there are any.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e., words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e., words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.

6. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

DIRECT. III. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

Rules for construing.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quotus*, *quantus* *uter*, &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative, and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions should be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

LATIN IDIOMS.*

PARTICULAR DIRECTIONS AND MODELS FOR TRANSLATION.

The following explanations and directions are intended chiefly for reference. But it will be of great advantage for the pupil to become familiar with them by going through them two or three times, *in course*, simultaneously with his reading lessons.

1. BEFORE translating, every sentence should be read over till it can be read correctly and with ease, paying special attention to the quantity and pronunciation. The words should then be arranged according to the preceding general directions, and translated as they are arranged, separately or in clusters, as may be found convenient; always remembering to place adjectives and adjective pronouns with their substantives before translating. The sense and grammatical construction being thus ascertained, the translation may then be read over without the Latin, and due attention paid to the English idiom. The whole sentence, whether simple or compound, may then be analyzed as directed § 152, and last of all, every word parsed separately as directed, § 153.

2. In order to arrange and translate with ease, it is necessary to be familiar with, and readily to distinguish the different cases, genders, and numbers of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, and to translate them correctly and promptly, in these cases and numbers, &c.; and also to distinguish and correctly translate the verb in its various moods, tenses, numbers, persons, &c. This can be acquired only by continual practice and drilling, which should be kept up till the utmost readiness is attained.

3. The English prepositions used in translating the different cases in Latin, for the sake of convenience, may be called *signs* of those cases; and in translating these, the English *definite* or *indefinite* article is to be used as the sense requires. The signs of the cases are as follows:

Nom. (No sign.)	Acc. (No sign.)
Gen. <i>Of</i> .	Voc. <i>O</i> . or no sign.
Dat. <i>To</i> or <i>for</i> .	Abl. <i>With</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>by</i> , &c.

* A *Latin idiom*, strictly speaking, is a mode of speech peculiar to the Latin language. It is here used in a more extended sense, to denote a mode of speech different from the English, or which, if rendered word for word, and with the ordinary signs of cases, moods, tenses, &c., would not make a correct English sentence.

In certain constructions the idiom of the English language requires the oblique cases in Latin to be translated in a manner different from the above. The chief of these constructions are the following :

4. The Genitive.

1. The genitive denoting the place where, R. XXXVI., is translated *at*; as, *Romæ*, "*At Rome.*"

2. Denoting *price*, sometimes *for*; as, *Vendidit plures*, "*He sold it for more;*" or without a sign; as, *Constitis pluris*, "*It cost more.*"

5. The Dative.

1. After a verb of taking away, R. XXIX.; the dative is translated *from*; as, *Eripuit me morti*, "*He rescued me from death;*" *Eripitur morti*, "*He is rescued from death.*" R. XXXII-III. See § 123, Exp.

2. Denoting the doer after a passive verb, R. XXXIII., it is translated *by*; as, *Vix audior ulli*, "*I am scarcely heard by any one.*"

3. Denoting the possessor, R. XV., Obs. 1, it is translated as the genitive; as, *Ei in mentem venit*, "*It came into the mind to him,*" i. e., *of him*, or into *his* mind.

4. After verbs signifying "*to be present,*" *at*; as, *Adfuit precibus*, "*He was present at prayers.*" § 112, R. I.

6. The Ablative.

1. The ablative denoting a property or quality of another substantive, R. VII., is translated *of*; as, *Vir miræ magnitudine*, "*A man of wonderful size.*"

2. The place where, R. XXXVI. Exc., commonly *at*, sometimes *in*.

3. After the comparative degree, § 120, R. XXIV., *than*; as, *Dulcior melle*, "*Sweeter than honey.*"

4. Denoting the material of which a thing is made, § 128, Obs. 2, *of*; as, *Factus ebone*, "*Made of ivory.*"

5. After *dignus* and words denoting origin; also after *opus* and *usus*, signifying need, *of*; as, *Dignus honore*, "*Worthy of honor.*"

6. Denoting time how long, sometimes *in*; as, *Uno die fecit*, "He did it *in one day*;" sometimes without a sign; as, *Uno die abfuit*, "He was absent *one day*."

7. Time when, *at, on*; as, *Solis occāsu*, "At the setting of the sun;" *Idibus Aprilis*, "On the ides of April."

8. After verbs of depriving, § 125, *of*; as, *Eum veste spoliāvit*, "He stripped him *of his garment*."

Cases without Signs.

7. When the genitive, dative, or ablative, is governed by an intransitive verb which is translated by a transitive verb in English, (§ 38, Obs. 4.) or by an adjective denoting likeness, the sign of the case is omitted; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Gen. <i>Miserere mei</i> , | Pity me. |
| 2. Dat. <i>Præfuit exercitui</i> , | He commanded the army. |
| 3. " <i>Placuit regi</i> , | It pleased the king. |
| 4. Abl. <i>Utitur fraude</i> , | He uses deceit. |
| 5. " <i>Potitus est imperio</i> , | He obtained the government. |
| 6. Dat. <i>Similis patri</i> , | Like his father. |

Obs. But when rendered by an intransitive verb in English, the sign of the case must be used; as,

7. *Insidiantur nobis*, They lie in wait for us.

8. When a verb governs two datives, by R. XIX., the dative of the end or design is sometimes rendered without the sign; as,

1. *Est mihi voluptāti*, It is to me [for] a pleasure; i. e.,
It is [or brings] a pleasure to me.

9. The ablative absolute, R. LX., (See No. 109,) and frequently time how long, R. XL., are without the sign; as,

1. *Bello finito*, The war being ended.
2. *Sex mensibus abfuit*, He was absent six months.

10. When the ablative is governed by a preposition, the English of that preposition takes the place of the sign of the ablative, and no other will be used; thus,

1. *Ab exercitu*, From the army. 4. *Cum dignitate*, With dignity.
2. *Ex urbe*, Out of the city. 5. *Pro castris*, Before the camp.
3. *In agro*, In the field. 6. *Tenus pube*, Up to the middle.

11. In order to specify more particularly, the English idiom sometimes requires the possessive pronouns, *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their*, (not expressed in Latin unless contrasted with others,) to be supplied before a noun, and espe-

cially if they refer to the subject of the sentence. The sense will shew when this is to be done and what pronoun is to be used; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Filius similis patri,</i> | A son like his father. |
| 2. <i>Reverere parentes,</i> | Reverence your parents. |

12. Nouns in apposition, (§ 97, R. I.,) must be brought as near together as possible, and the sign of the case, when used, prefixed to the first only; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Nom. <i>Cicero Orator,</i> | Cicero the orator. |
| 2. Gen. <i>Ciceronis oratoris,</i> | Of Cicero the orator. |
| 3. Dat. <i>Ciceroni oratori,</i> | To Cicero the orator, |
| 4. Abl. <i>Cicerone oratore,</i> | With Cicero the orator. |

13. The noun in apposition is sometimes connected with the noun before it by the words *as, being, &c.*; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Misit me comitem,</i> | He sent me as a companion. |
| 2. <i>Hic puer venit,</i> | He came, when [or being] a boy. |

Adjectives and Substantives.

14. In translating an adjective or adjective pronoun and a substantive together, the adjective is commonly placed first, and the sign of the case is prefixed to it, and not to the noun, § 98, R. II.; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Nom. <i>Altus mons,</i> | A high mountain. |
| 2. Gen. <i>Alti montis,</i> | Of a high mountain. |
| 3. Dat. <i>Alto monti,</i> | To [for] a high mountain. |
| 4. Abl. <i>Alto monte,</i> | With a high mountain. |

15. When two or more adjectives, coupled by a conjunction belong to one substantive, they may be placed either before or after it; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Jupiter optimus et maximus,</i> | Jupiter the best and greatest; or |
| <i>Optimus et maximus Jupiter,</i> | The best and greatest Jupiter. |
| 2. <i>Viri sapientis et docti,</i> | Of a man wise and learned; or |
| <i>Sapientis et docti viri,</i> | Of a wise and learned man. |

16. The adjective must be placed after its substantive when the former has a negative joined with it, or another word in the sentence governed by it, or dependent upon it. So also *solus*; as,

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dux peritus belli,</i> | A general skilled in war. |
| 2. <i>Filius similis patri,</i> | A son like his father. |
| 3. <i>Poeta dignus honore,</i> | A poet worthy of honor |
| 4. <i>Homines soli sapient,</i> | Men alone are wise. |
| 5. <i>Avis tam parum decora,</i> | A bird so little beautiful. |
| 6. <i>Littore non molli neque arenoso,</i> | With a shore not soft nor sandy. |

17. The adjectives *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *ceter*, or *ceterus*, and some others describing a part of an object, are translated as substantives, with the sign of the case prefixed, and of before the substantive following, § 98, Obs. 9; as

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Mediâ nocte</i> , | <i>In the middle of the night.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ad summum montem</i> , | <i>To the top of the mountain.</i> |

18. When these adjectives (No. 17.) describe the whole and not a part only, they are translated as No. 11.; as,

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Summum bonum</i> , | <i>The chief good.</i> |
| <i>Supremus dies</i> , | <i>The last day.</i> |

19. An adjective without a substantive usually has a substantive understood, but obvious from the connexion, § 98, Obs. 5. Masculine adjectives, (if plural,) commonly agree with *homines*, or, if possessives, with *amici*, *cives*, or *militēs*, understood; and neuters, with *factum*, *negotium*, *verbum*, *tempus*, &c.; as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Boni (homines) sunt rari</i> , | <i>Good men are rare</i> , |
| 2. <i>Cæsar misit suos (militēs)</i> | <i>Cæsar sent his soldiers.</i> |
| 3. <i>Cocles transiit ad suos</i>
<i>(cives)</i> | <i>Cocles swam over to his fellow-citizens.</i> |
| 4. <i>Labor vincit omnia (negotia)</i> | <i>Labor overcomes all things.</i> |
| 5. <i>In posterum (tempus)</i> | <i>In time to come,—for the future.</i> |
| 6. <i>In eo (loco) ut.</i> | <i>In such a situation that.</i> |

20. Adjectives commonly used without a substantive, (but still belonging to a substantive understood,) may be regarded as substantives. They are such as *mortales*, *boni*, *mali*, *supèri*, *infèri*, *Græcus*, *Românus*, &c. (See § 98, Obs. 5.); as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Mali odêrunt bonos</i> , | <i>The wicked hate the good.</i> |
| 2. <i>Græcos Români vicêrunt</i> , | <i>The Romans conquered the Greeks.</i> |

21. Adjective words when partitives, or used partitively, take the gender of the noun expressing the whole, and govern it in the genitive plural, (if a collective noun, in the genitive singular,) § 107, RULE X. In this case verbs and adjectives agree with the partitive as if it were a noun; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Aliquis philosophorum</i> | <i>Some one of the philosophers</i> |
| <i>dixit,</i> | <i>said.</i> |
| 2. <i>Una musarum veniet,</i> | <i>One of the muses will come.</i> |
| 3. <i>Multi nobilium juvenum,</i> | <i>Many noble young men.</i> |

22. The comparative degree not followed by an ablative, or the conjunction *quam*, (than) is usually translated by the positive with *too* or *rather* prefixed. For explanation see § 120, Obs. 5.; as,

1. *Iracundior est*, (scil. *æquo*,) He is too (or rather) *passionate*.
 2. *Ægrius ferebat*, He took it rather *ill*.
 3. *Altius volavit*, He flew too *high*.

Obs. In a comparison, *ed* or *tanto* with a comparative in one clause, and *quod* or *quanto* in the other, may be rendered "the;" (See No. 44. 7. 8.) as,

4. *Quod plures, ed feliciōres*, The more the happier.

23. The superlative degree expressing comparison, is usually preceded by the article *the* in English, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Doctissimus Rōmanōrum*, The most learned of the Romans.
 2. *Fortissimus miles in exercitu*, The bravest soldier in the army

24. When the superlative does not express comparison, but only eminence or distinction, it is translated with the article *a* or *an* prefixed in the singular, and without an article in the plural; or by the positive, with *very*, *eminently*, &c., prefixed, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Homo doctissimus*, A most learned (or a very learned) man.
 2. *Homines doctissimi*, Most learned (or very learned) men.

25. *Alius* repeated with a different word in the same clause, renders that clause double, and requires it to be translated as in the following examples:

1. *Alius aliā viā*, One by one way, another by another.
 2. *Aliud aliis videtur*, One thing seems good to some, another to others, i. e. Some think one thing, and some another. (See other varieties. § 98. Obs. 11.)

The same usage occurs with words derived from *alius*. See Gr. § 98, Obs. 12.

26. The distributive numeral adjectives are usually translated by the cardinal number indicated, with "each," or "to each," annexed; sometimes by repeating the cardinal thus, "one by one;" "two by two," &c., § 24, 11; as,

1. *Consules binas naves habebant*, The consuls had *each* two ships, or, had two ships *each*.
 2. *Quō singūli carri ducuntur*, Where wagons could be led *one by one*.
 3. *Tigna bina*, Beams *two by two*, or in pairs.
 4. *Singūlis singulas partes distribuit æquales*, He distributed equal parts, *one to each*.
 5. *Singulis mensibus hoc fecit*, This he did *every* (or *each*) month.
 6. *Plures singuli uxōres habent*, They have *each* many wives.

Pronouns.

27. 1st. The adjective pronoun, *hic, hæc, hoc*, with a noun following, is used as an adjective, and means, in the singular, "*this*,"—in the plural, "*these*."—*Ille, illa, illud*,—*is, ea, id*,—*iste, ista, istud*, with a noun, in the singular, mean "*that*,"—in the plural, "*those*."

2d. Without a noun following they are all used substantively, and mean, in the singular, *he, she, it*; in the plural, *they*; thus,

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Hic vir</i> , This man. | 4. <i>Hic fecit</i> , He did it. |
| 2. <i>Ille femina</i> , That woman. | 5. <i>Ille venit</i> , She came. |
| 3. <i>Ea urbe</i> , That city. | 6. <i>Ea (Dido) condidit eam</i> , She built it, (Carthage.) |

Obs. In sentences containing an enumeration of particulars, the same pronoun is sometimes used in successive clauses, but they require to be translated differently, (§ 98. *Obs.* 12.); thus,

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| 7. <i>Hic</i> , | } "one," "the one." | — <i>hic</i> , | } "another," "the other." |
| 8. <i>Is</i> , | | — <i>is</i> , | |
| 9. <i>Ille</i> , | | — <i>ille</i> , | |
| 10. <i>Alter</i> , | | — <i>alter</i> , | |

When antithesis or contrast is stated, *hic* is translated "*this*," and refers to the nearer antecedent, *ille*, "*that*," and refers to the more distant; as,

11. *Hic minor natu est, ille major*, This is the younger, that, the older.

28. *Is, ea, id*, followed by *ut*, or the relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, in the next clause, means "*such*," and implies comparison. The relative after it may be translated, *that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c.*, according as the antecedent requires, or it may be translated *as*, and its verb by the infinitive (§ 31, *Obs.* 2.); thus,

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Is homo erat ut, &c.</i> , | He was <i>such</i> a man that, &c. |
| 2. <i>Neque is sum qui terrear</i> , | I am not <i>such</i> that I may be frightened. Or better thus, I am not <i>such</i> a one as to be frightened. |

Obs. The adverb *eò* with *ut* following it means "*so far*," "*to such a degree*," "*to such a point*," "*in such a state*;" as,

3. *Eò pervenit ut*,
- "He came *so far*, (i. e. made such progress.) that;"

Possessive Pronouns.

29. The possessive pronoun is equivalent in meaning to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, and may often be so translated; as,

1. *Beneficio suo populiq; Romani,* By the kindness of himself and of the Roman people.
2. *Cum mea nemo scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis,* Since no one reads the writings of me, fearing to recite them publicly.

30. The possessives, *suius*, *sua*, *suum*, in Latin, agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun denoting the *object possessed*, but in English must be translated by a pronoun denoting the *possessor*; thus,

1. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his children.
2. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love their offspring.
3. *Frater diligit suam sororem,* A brother loves his sister.
4. *Soror diligit suum fratrem,* A sister loves her brother.

Obs. In the first sentence, "*suos*," agrees with "*liberos*," but must be translated "*his*," denoting "*pater*," the possessor. In the second, *suam*, though singular, to agree with *sobolem*, must be translated "*their*," so as to denote the possessors, "*parentes*," &c.

Usage of Sui, Suus;—Ille, Iste, Hic, Is.

31. The reflexive, *sui*, and its possessive, *suius*, generally refer to the subject of the leading verb* in the sentence; *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, never refer to that subject, but to some other person or thing spoken of; thus,

1. *Cato occidit se,* Cato killed himself.
2. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his (own) children.
3. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love their (own) offspring.
4. *Dicit se valere,* He says that he is well.

Obs. In the second and third sentence, *suos*, "*his*," and *suam*, "*their*," referring to some other person than *pater* or *parentes*, would be made by the genitive of *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*. In the first and fourth, *se* would be made *eum*. For the difference between these words usually translated "*he*," see Gr. § 28, Obs. 3.

* See Gr. § 28, Obs. 3, 1st., with note.

Note. If a second subject and verb be introduced, the reflexive governed by that verb will belong to the new subject, unless the whole clause refer to the words, wishes, or actions, of the first subject; as,

5. *Scipio civitatibus Italia reddidit omnia quæ sua recognoscibant,* Scipio restored to the States of Italy, all the things which they recognised as *their own*.

Usage of Ipse.

32. *Ipse* renders the word with which it is joined emphatic, whether expressed or understood, and is equal to the English, *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *themselves*, &c., annexed to it; sometimes to the word *very* prefixed. With *numbers* it denotes exactness, and sometimes it is used by itself as a reflexive instead of *sui*, § 28, Obs. 3, 2d.; as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ipse faciam,</i> (i. e. <i>ego ipse</i>), | I will do it <i>myself</i> . |
| 2. <i>Ipse fruëris otio,</i> (i. e. <i>tu ipse</i>), | Thou <i>thyself</i> enjoyest ease. |
| 3. <i>Jactulo cadit ipse,</i> (i. e. <i>ille ipse</i>), | He <i>himself</i> falls by a dart. |
| 4. <i>Cæsar ipse venit,</i> | Cæsar <i>himself</i> came. |
| 5. <i>Tempus ipsum convenit,</i> | The <i>very</i> time was agreed on. |
| 6. <i>Ad ipsas portas,</i> | To the <i>very</i> gates. |
| 7. <i>Decem ipsi dies,</i> | Ten <i>whole</i> days. |
| 8. <i>Precatus est ut ipsum liberaret,</i> | He begged that he would liberate <i>him</i> . |
| 9. <i>Donum ipsi datum,</i> | A present given to <i>him</i> . |

33. When joined with the personal pronouns, used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, it sometimes agrees with them in case, but more commonly with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative. It is always, however, to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word *self*, or simply of emphasis; thus,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Se ipse interfecit</i> (or <i>se ipsum</i>), | He slew <i>himself</i> . |
| 1. <i>Nosce te ipse</i> (or <i>te ipsum</i>), | Know <i>thyself</i> . |
| 2. <i>Mihi ipse</i> (or <i>ipsi</i>), <i>faveo</i> , | I favor <i>myself</i> . |
| 3. <i>Agam per me ipse,</i> | I will do it <i>myself</i> . |
| 4. <i>Virtus est per se ipsa laudabilis,</i> | Virtue is to be praised for <i>itself</i> . |
| 5. <i>Se ipsos omnes naturâ diligunt.</i> | All men naturally love <i>themselves</i> . |

RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

General Principle.

34. Every sentence containing a relative and its antecedent, is a compound sentence, of which the relative with its

clause forms one of the parts, and is used further to describe or limit its antecedent word in the other part. That word may be the subject, or belong to the predicate, or to some circumstance connected with either. But to whichever of these it belongs, the relative and its clause must all be translated *together*, and in immediate connexion with its antecedent word. Hence the following

General Rule of Arrangement.

35. The relative with its clause should be placed immediately after, or as near as possible to the antecedent, and, unless unavoidable, another substantive should not come between them; thus,

Latin Arrangement.

1. *Urbi immānet mons, qui ad Arcadiam procurrit.* Here "*qui*" with its clause, "*ad Arcadiam procurrit*," belongs to, and further describes the antecedent subject, "*mons*." As then the subject with all that belongs to it must be taken before the verb, (Gr. § 152, Direct. 2, 2d, 3d,) the above sentence should be arranged for translation, thus: *Mons qui procurrit ad Arcadiam, immānet urbi*, A mountain, which extends to Arcadia, hangs over the city.

Or, the English order may be inverted, thus: *Urbi immānet mons, qui procurrit ad Arcadiam*, Over the city hangs a mountain, which, &c.

But not, *Mons immānet urbi, qui, &c.*, because this arrangement would place "*urbi*" between the antecedent, "*mons*," and the relative, "*qui*," and so lead to a false translation. The following sentence also affords an example:

2. *Proxīme urbem Eurōtas fluvius delabitur, ad cuius ripas Spartāni se exercere solēbant.* Arrange, *Proxīme urbem delabitur, &c.*, Close to the city flows; or, *Eurōtas fluvius, ad cuius ripas, &c.*

36. When another noun necessarily comes between the relative and its antecedent, there is more danger of ambiguity in English than in Latin, as the gender and number of the Latin relative will generally direct to the proper antecedent, to which in English we are directed chiefly by the

sense. The following sentence affords an example of this kind: *Ad Byzantium fugit, oppidum naturâ munitum et arte, quod copiâ abundat.*

37. The antecedent in Latin is often understood when the English idiom requires it to be supplied. It is generally understood, and should be supplied in the proper case:

1st. When it is intentionally left indefinite, or is obvious from the gender and number of the relative, and the connexion in which it stands, as in No. 19; as,

1. *Sunt (homines) quos juvat,* There are men whom it delights
2. *Hic est (id) quod querimus,* That which we seek is here.
- “ *Hic sunt, (ea) quæ querimus* Those things which we seek are here.
3. *(Is) qui cito dat, bis dat,* (He) who gives promptly, gives twice.

Note. In the preceding sentences the antecedent supplied is in parentheses.

2d. The antecedent is usually understood before the relative, when it is expressed after it, and in the same case, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 2d.); as,

4. *(Pars) quæ pars terræna fuit,* The part which was earthy.
5. *(Locus) in quem locum venit,* The place into which he came.
- “ *Apud Actium (locum) qui lo-* At Actium a place which is, &c.
cus est, &c.

Note. 1. When the antecedent word is expressed in the relative clause, as in the examples Nos. 4, and 5, or is repeated, as in the following, No. 6, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 3d.,) it is omitted in translating; as,

6. *Erant omnino duo itinera, qui-* There were only two ways by
bus itineribus domo ex- which they could go from
ire possent, home.

Note. 2. *Quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid,* (and also *quicumque, quæcunque, quodcunque,*) “whoever, whatever,” used as a relative without an antecedent, includes a general or indefinite antecedent, in such case as the construction requires, and is equivalent to *omnis*, or *quivis qui*,—*omne*, or *quidvis quod*; as,

7. *Fortunam quæcunque (i. e. They would hazard whatever*
quamvis fortunam quæ) fortune (i. e. any fortune
accidat experiantur, which) might happen.
8. *Quidquid tetigerat aurum* Whatever (i. e. every thing which)
fiabat, he had touched became gold.

Note 3. When the antecedent is a proposition, or clause of a sentence, § 99, Exp., the relative is put in the neuter gender, and sometimes has *id* before it referring to the same clause; as,

9. *Servi, quod (or id quod) nunquam ante factum, manumissi et milites facti sunt;* The slaves, which never had been done before, were set free and made soldiers.

38. In the beginning of a sentence, a relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, and referring to some word, clause, or circumstance, in a preceding sentence, usually has the antecedent word repeated, or, if evident, understood; and instead of *who* or *which*, may be rendered *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, or, *and this*, *and that*, &c., according as the closeness of the connexion may require, (§ 99, Obs. 8.); as,

1. *Qua urbs quum infestaretur,* And since (or because) *this* city was infested.
 " *Qui legati quum missi essent,* When *these* ambassadors had been sent.
 2. *Qua contentio cuncta permiscuit,* This contention threw all things into confusion.
 3. *Quibus nuntiis acceptis,* These tidings being received.
 4. *Quod quum ille cerneret,* And when he saw *this*.
 5. *Quo facto,* This being done (or accomplished)
 6. *Qua dum omnia contemplantur,* And while they were contemplating all *these* things.
 7. *Quod quum impetrasset,* And when he had obtained *this*.
 8. *A quo consilio quum revocaret.* When he recalled him from *this* design.
 9. *Quo ictu ille extinctus est,* And by *this* blow he was killed.

Note. To this construction belongs *quod*, (apparently for *propter* or *ad quod*, § 128,) in the beginning of a sentence, referring to something previously stated, and meaning, "on account of, with respect to, or as to, **THIS THING**;" as,

10. *Quod diis gratias habeo,* On account of *this*, (for *this thing*, wherefore,) I give thanks to the gods.
 11. *Quod diceret se venturum,* As to what (as to that thing which) he said, that he would come.

39. When the antecedent word is not repeated, as in No. 38, the relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, may be rendered *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, or *and he*, *and she*, &c., according as the antecedent word requires, (§ 99, Obs. 8.); as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Qui quum admitteret,</i> | <i>And when he admitted.</i> |
| 2. <i>Quæ quum vidisset,</i> | <i>And when she had seen.</i> |
| <i>Quæ quum visa esset,</i> | <i>When she had been (or was) seen.</i> |
| 3. <i>Quam quum dare nollet,</i> | <i>And when he would not give it</i> |
| 4. <i>Quibus quum occurrisset,</i> | <i>When he had met them.</i> |
| 5. <i>Qui (quæ; pl. qui, quæ,) res-</i>
<i>pondit,</i> | <i>And he, (she, they) replied.</i> |
| 6. <i>Qui (or quæ) quum ades-</i>
<i>sent.</i> | <i>And when they were present.</i> |
| 7. <i>Quem Meleager interfecit,</i> | <i>And Meleager slew him.</i> |
| 8. <i>Quam quum duceret,</i> | <i>And when he was leading her.</i> |
| 9. <i>Ad quem quum venissent,</i> | <i>And when they had come to him.</i> |
| 10. <i>Quem ut vidit,</i> | <i>As soon as, (or when) he saw him.</i> |

40. When the relative in any case is followed by the subjunctive mood, and the two clauses, viz: the antecedent and relative, involve a *comparison*; or the latter expresses the *purpose, object, or design*, of something expressed by the former, the relative is better translated by the conjunction *that* and the personal pronoun; thus, *that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c.*, as the antecedent word may require, (See Gr. § 141, R. II. and Explanation,);

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Misus sum qui te adducërem,</i> | <i>I have been sent that I might bring you.</i> |
| 2. <i>Neque is qui facias id,</i> | <i>You are not such a person that you should do that.</i> |
| 3. <i>Quis est tam lynceus qui, &c.</i> | <i>Who is so sharp sighted that he.</i> |
| 4. <i>Misit legatos qui cognoscerent,</i> | <i>He sent ambassadors that they might find out.</i> |
| 5. <i>Fruges mandavit quæ disseminaret,</i> | <i>She gave him fruits that he might scatter them.</i> |

41. In the expressions, *quippe qui, ut qui, utpöte qui*, the relative is better translated by the personal pronoun which represents the antecedent, (§ 141, Obs. 4.); as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Quippe qui nunquam legërim,</i> | <i>For, (or because) I have never read them.</i> |
|---------------------------------------|--|

42. After *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, and the like, in the predicate, the relative and subjunctive mood may be rendered by the infinitive, (§ 141, Obs. 2. 1st.); as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Dignus qui ametur,</i> | <i>Worthy to be loved.</i> |
| 2. <i>Si dignum qui numeretur creaveritis,</i> | <i>If you shall elect a person worthy to be reckoned, &c.</i> |

43. Sometimes the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should generally be placed first; as,

1. *Qui bonis non recte utitur, ei* Good things become evil to him
bona mala fiunt, who does not use good things
 well.
 2. *Qui cito dat, (is) bis dat,* He gives twice who gives quickly

Correlative Adjectives.

44. The demonstratives, *tot*, so many, and *totidem*, just so many; *tantus*, as great, so great, as much, so much; *talis*, such; are followed by their relatives, *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, signifying *as*, to denote comparison; as,

1. *Tot homines quot,* As many men as.
 2. *Totidem naves quot,* Just so many ships as
 3. *Tantus exercitus quantus,* As great (or so great) an army as.
 4. *Talis homo qualis,* Such a man as.

So also the correlative adverbs.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 5. <i>Toties</i> | — <i>quoties,</i> | As often | — <i>as.</i> |
| 6. <i>Tam</i> | — <i>quam,</i> | So | — <i>as.</i> |
| 7. <i>Eo</i> | — <i>quo</i> | By so much | — <i>as.</i> |
| 8. <i>Tanto</i> | — <i>quanto,</i> | By so much | — <i>as; or</i> |
| | | In proportion | — <i>as.</i> |

45. Instead of the relative in such sentences, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, (§ 149, Obs. 6,) *ut*, and the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, are sometimes used and may generally be translated, "as," or "that."

1. *Honus talis paucis est delatus* Such honor has been bestowed
a c mihi, upon few persons, *as* upon me.
 2. *Cum totidem navibus atque* He returned with just as many
profectus erat, rediit, ships *as* he had departed with.
 3. *Nulla est tanta vis quæ non* No power is so great *as* (or, *that*
frangi possit, *it*) cannot be broken.

46. When the relative only is expressed in sentences implying comparison, the *demonstrative* (No. 44,) must be supplied and the sentence translated as above; as,

1. *Crocodilus parit (tanta) ova* The crocodile lays (*as large*) eggs
quantum tanta anseres, as geese lay.
 2. *(Tot) millia quot unquam* As many thousands *as* ever came
venere Mycenis, from Mycenæ.

47. Sometimes, as in No. 43, the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should be placed first; as,

1. *Quot homines tot causæ,* }
 arrange } *As many causes as there are men*
Tot causæ quot homines,

48. The relatives, *quot*, *quoties*, *quantus*, *qualis*, used *interrogatively*, or in an exclamation, or indefinitely, in the indirect interrogation, and without implying comparison, have no reference to an antecedent term either expressed or understood, and are translated respectively, "how many," "how often," "how great," or "how much," "what," or "of what kind;" as,

1. *Inter. Quot annos habet?* How many years has he? i. e. how old is he?
2. *Indef. Nescio quot,* I know not how many.
3. *Excl. Cum quantâ gravitate!* With how much gravity.
4. *Indef. Doce quales sint,* Tell us of what kind they are.

THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

General Principle.

49. Every finite verb (§ 95, 5,) has its own subject, expressed or understood, in the nominative case.

Obs. The subject of the verb is the person or thing spoken of, and may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, a *verb in the infinitive mood*, a *clause of a sentence*, or any thing which, however expressed, is the subject of thought or speech. (§ 101, Exp.)

General Rule of Arrangement.

50. The subject and all the words agreeing with it, governed by it, connected with it, or dependent upon it, must be arranged in the order of their connection and dependence, and translated before the verb.

1. *Canis latrat,* The dog barks.
2. *Ego scribo,* I write.
3. *Ludere est jucundum,* To play is pleasant.
4. *Dulce est pro patriâ mori,* To die for one's country is sweet.
5. *Totus Græcorum exercitus Aulide convenerat,* The whole army of the Greeks had assembled at Aulis.
6. *Vir sapiit qui pauca loquitur,* The man who speaks little is wise.

51. When the subject of a verb is the infinitive, either alone or with its subject; or a clause of a sentence, connected by *ut*, *quod*, or other conjunctive term, the English pronoun, *it*, is put with the verb referring to that infinitive or clause following it, and which is its proper subject; as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Facile est juberé,</i> | <i>It is easy to command.</i> |
| 2. <i>Nuntiátum est classem devinci,</i> | <i>It was announced that the fleet was conquered.</i> |
| 3. <i>Semper accidit ut absis</i> | <i>It always happens that you are absent.</i> |
| 4. <i>Quí fit ut metuas,</i> | <i>How happens it that you fear.</i> |
| 5. <i>Nunquam Románis placuisse</i> | <i>That it never had pleased the Ro-</i> |
| <i>imperatorem a suis</i> | <i>mans, that a commander should</i> |
| <i>militibus interfici,</i> | <i>be killed by his own soldiers.</i> |

52. The verb must always be translated in its proper tense, and in the same person and number with its nominative. (See paradigms of the verb, §§ 54-70.) But when it has two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular, taken together, or a collective noun expressing many as individuals, as its subject, the verb must be translated in the plural; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Et pater et mater venerunt,</i> | <i>Both his father and mother have come.</i> |
| 2. <i>Turba quoqueversum ruunt,</i> | <i>The crowd rush in every direction.</i> |

53. The nominative to a verb in the first or second person, being evident from the termination, is seldom expressed in Latin; but must be supplied in translating; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Scribo,</i> <i>I write.</i> | 3. <i>Scribimus,</i> <i>We write.</i> |
| 2. <i>Legis,</i> <i>Thou readest.</i> | 4. <i>Legitis,</i> <i>You read.</i> |

54. When the verb in the third person has no nominative expressed, it refers to some noun or pronoun evident from the connection; and, both in translating and parsing, the pronoun *ille*, or *is*, in the *nominative* case, and in the *gender* and *number* of the noun or pronoun referred to, must be supplied; as,

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>(Ille) scribit,</i> | <i>(He) writes.</i> | 2. <i>(Illi) scribunt,</i> | <i>(They) write.</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|

55. When the same word is the subject of several verbs closely connected in the same construction, it is expressed with the first and understood to the rest, both in Latin and English; thus,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Cæsar venit, vidit, et vicit,</i> | <i>Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.</i> |
| 2. <i>Dicitur Cæsarem venisse,</i> | <i>It is said that Cæsar came, saw,</i> |
| <i>vidisse, et vicisse,</i> | <i>and conquered.</i> |

Interrogative Sentences.

56. A question is made in Latin in four different ways as follows:

1st. By an interrogative pronoun; as, *Quis venit?* "Who comes?" *Quem misit?* "Whom did he send?" *Cujus pecus hoc?* "Whose flock is this?" &c.

2d. By an interrogative adverb; as, *Unde venit?* "Whence came he?" *Cur venit?* "Why did he come?"

3d. By the interrogative particles, *num*, *an*, and the enclitic, *ne*. Thus used these particles have no corresponding English word in the translation; they merely indicate a question; as, *Num venit*, or *an venit*, or *venitne?* "Has he come?" *Num videtur?* "Does it seem?"

4th. By simply placing an interrogation mark at the end of the question; as, *Vis me hoc facere?* "Do you wish me to do this?"

57. The interrogative pronoun or adverb, in all cases, is translated before the verb; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Quis fecit?</i> | <i>Who did it? or who has done it?</i> |
| 2. <i>Quem misit?</i> | <i>Whom did he send?</i> |
| 3. <i>Quanto constitit?</i> | <i>How much did it cost?</i> |
| 4. <i>Qualis fuit?</i> | <i>What sort of a man was he?</i> |

This is true also of the indirect question, i. e., when the substance of a question is stated but not in the interrogative form; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 5. <i>Nescio quanto constitērīt,</i> | <i>I know not how much it cost.</i> |
| 6. <i>Docuit quam firma res esset</i> | <i>He shewed them how firm a thing</i> |
| <i>concordia,</i> | <i>agreement was.</i> |

Note. When the verb in the direct or indirect question comes under § 103, R. V., the predicate, or nominative *after* the verb, is translated *first*, and the subject or nominative, in the direct question *after* the verb, as in Ex. 4; but in the indirect, before it, as in Ex. 6. Thus, in Ex. 4, *qualis* is the predicate, and *ille* understood, the subject; in Ex. 6, *res* is the predicate, and *concordia* the subject.

58. In all forms of interrogation not made by an interrogative pronoun, as in No. 57, the nominative or subject is translated *after the verb* in English, in the simple forms, and *after the first auxiliary* in the compound forms; as,

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Videsne?</i> | <i>Seest thou? or dost thou see?</i> |
| 2. <i>An venisti?</i> | <i>Hast thou come? or have you come?</i> |
| 3. <i>Scribetne?</i> | <i>Will he write?</i> |
| 4. <i>Num ibimus?</i> | <i>Shall we go?</i> |
| 5. <i>Nonne fecit?</i> | <i>Has he not done (it)?</i> |

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 6. <i>An egisset melius?</i> | Would he have done better? |
| 7. <i>Nosne alimus?</i> | Shall we support? |
| 8. <i>Nonne Dei est?</i> | Does it not belong to God? |
| 9. <i>Iste est frater?</i> | Is that your brother? |

59. When a sentence not interrogative is introduced by *nec* or *neque*, not followed by a corresponding conjunction, (See No. 124,) in a connected clause, the verb will be translated by an auxiliary, and the English nominative will stand after the first auxiliary; as,

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Neque hoc intelligo,</i> | Neither do I understand this. |
| 2. <i>Nec venisset,</i> | Neither would he have come. |
| 3. <i>Nec adeptus sum,</i> | Nor have I attained. |

The object of the verb.

60. In translating, the object of a transitive verb in the accusative is arranged after the verb, and as near to it as possible. That object may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or a *clause of a sentence*, (§ 116, Exp.); as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Romulus condidit urbem,</i> | Romulus built a city. |
| 2. <i>Vocavit eam Romam,</i> | He called it Rome. |
| 3. <i>Disce dicere vera,</i> | Learn to speak the truth. |
| 4. <i>Obtulit ut captivos redimerent,</i> | He offered that they should redeem the captives. |

61. The interrogative or relative pronoun is always translated before the verb that governs it; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quem mittemus?</i> | Whom shall we send? |
| 2. <i>Cui dedisti?</i> | To whom did ye give it? |
| 3. <i>Deus quem colimus,</i> | God whom we worship. |
| 4. <i>Cui omnia debemus,</i> | To whom we owe all things. |

62. When a transitive verb governs two cases, the immediate object in the accusative, according to the natural order, is usually translated first, and after that the remote object in the genitive, § 122; dative, § 123; accusative, § 124; or ablative, § 125; as,

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Arguit me furti,</i> | He accuses me of theft. |
| 2. <i>Comparo Virgilium Homero,</i> | I compare Virgil to Homer. |
| 3. <i>Poscimus te pacem,</i> | We beg peace of thee. |
| 4. <i>Onerat naves auro,</i> | He loads the ships with gold. |

Note. The accusative of the person after verbs of asking, is translated by *of*, or *from*; as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. <i>Pyrrhum auxilium poposcerunt,</i> | They demanded aid of (or from) Pyrrhus. |
|---|---|

63. But when the remote object is a *relative*, or when the immediate object is an *infinitive*, or a clause of a sentence, or a noun further described by other words, the remote object must be translated first; as,

1. *Cui librum dedimus,* To whom we gave the book.
2. *Da mihi fallere,* Give me to deceive.
3. *Dixit ei confiteor meum peccatum,* He said to him, I confess my fault
4. *Eum rogaverunt, ut ipsos defenderet,* They entreated him, that he would defend them.
5. *Docuit illos quam firma esset,* He shewed them how firm it was.
6. *Civitatem, antea sollicitatam, armis ornat,* He supplies with arms, the city already excited.

64. When a verb, which in the active voice governs two cases, is used in the passive form, that which was the immediate object in the accusative, becomes the subject in the nominative, and the remote object in its own case immediately follows the verb. Thus, the examples No. 62, may be arranged and translated as follows, § 126.

1. *Arguor furti,* I am accused of theft.
2. *Virgilius comparatur Homero,* Virgil is compared to Homer.
3. *Pax poscitur te,* Peace is begged of thee.
4. *Naves onerantur auro,* The ships are loading with gold.

So also the participles.

5. *Accusatus furti,* Accused of theft.
6. *Comparatus Homero,* Compared to Homer,
7. *Onerata auro,* Loaded with gold.
8. *Nudata hominibus,* Stripped of men.
9. *Ereptus morti,* Saved from death

Impersonal Verbs.

65. The impersonal verb has no nominative before it in Latin. It is translated by placing the pronoun *it* before it in English; as, (§ 85, 2.)

1. *Decet,* It becomes.
2. *Constat,* It is evident.
3. *Tonat,* It thunders.
4. *Pugnatur,* It is fought.
5. *Itur,* It is gone.
6. *Curritur,* It is run.

66. Impersonal verbs governing the dative or accusative in Latin, may be translated in a personal form by making the word in the dative or accusative the nominative to the English verb, taking care always to express the same idea (§ 85, 6, and § 113); thus,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Placet mihi,</i>	It pleases me ;	I am pleased.
2. <i>Licet tibi,</i>	It is permitted to you ;	You are permitted
3. <i>Decet eum,</i>	It becomes him ;	He ought.
4. <i>Pudet nos,</i>	It shames us ;	We are ashamed.
5. <i>Tædet vos,</i>	It wearies you ;	You are wearied.
6. <i>Favetur illis,</i>	Favor is done to them ;	They are favored.
7. <i>Noctetur hosti,</i>	Hurt is done to the enemy ;	The enemy is hurt.
8. <i>Misæret me tui,</i>	It moves me to pity of you ;	I pity you.
9. <i>Pœnitent eos,</i>	It repents them ;	They repent.
10. <i>Pœnitent me peccasse,</i>	It repents me, i. e.,	I repent of having sinned.

67. When the doer of an action denoted by an impersonal verb, or by a passive verb used impersonally, is expressed by the ablative with *a*, (§ 85, 6,) the verb may be translated personally in the active voice, and the doer, in the ablative, be made its English subject or nominative ; as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Pugnâtur a me,</i>	It is fought by me ;	I fight.
2. <i>Curritur a te,</i>	It is run by thee ;	Thou runnest.
3. <i>Favetur a nobis</i>	It is favored by us ;	We favor.
4. <i>Favetur tibi a nobis,</i>	It is favored to you by us ;	We favor you ; or you are favored by us.

Note. The doer in the ablative with *a*, is frequently understood, (especially when no definite person or thing is intended,) and must be supplied as the context requires ; as,

5. *Ubi perventum est (ab illis,)* When it was come by them, i. e., when they came.
6. *Descenditur (ab hominibus,)* Men (or people,) go down.
7. *Conveniebatur (ab hominibus,)* People assembled.

68. Some verbs, not impersonal, are used impersonally, when used before the infinitive of impersonal verbs, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) ; as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Potest credi tibi,</i>	It can be trusted to you ;	You can be trusted ; 66. 2.
2. <i>Non potest noceri hosti,</i>	It cannot be hurt to the enemy ;	The enemy cannot be hurt ; 66. 7.
3. <i>Ut fieri solet,</i>	As it is wont to be done ; or, As is usual.	

69. Verbs usually impersonal are sometimes used personally, and have their subject in the nominative, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) ; as,

1. *Doleo*, I grieve, (Impersonally *Dolet mihi*,) It grieves me,
2. *Candida pax homines decet*, Candid peace becomes men.
3. *Ista gesta mihi nostra sunt humeros decet*, These arms become my shoulders.

Usage of *Videor*. "I seem."

70. *Videor*, "I seem," though never impersonal in Latin, is often rendered impersonally in English; and the dative following it, seems properly to come under Rule XXXIII, § 126, to denote the person to whom any thing seems or appears, i. e., by whom it is seen; thus, *Videor tibi esse pauper*, I seem to you, (i. e., I am seen by you,) to be poor. *Videor mihi esse pauper*, I seem to myself, (i. e., I am seen by myself,) to be poor; or, I think that I am poor. So the following:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Videor esse liber</i> , | I seem to be free; or, <i>It seems</i> that I am free. |
| 2. <i>Videor mihi esse liber</i> , | I seem to myself to be free; or, <i>It seems</i> to me, (or, I think) that I am free. |
| 3. <i>Vidēris esse</i> , | You seem to be; or, <i>It seems</i> that you are. |
| 4. <i>Vidēris tibi esse</i> , | You seem to yourself to be; or, <i>It seems</i> to you, (i. e., you think) that you are. |
| 5. <i>Vidēris mihi esse</i> , | You seem to me to be; or, <i>It seems</i> to me, (i. e., I think) that you are. |
| 6. <i>Tu, ut vidēris, non scribis</i> , | You, as you seem, (or, as <i>it seems</i>) do not write. |

Obs. The third person singular of *videor* followed by an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative, or by a dependent clause after *ut*, or *quod*, may be said to be used impersonally; though strictly speaking, that infinitive with its accusative, or that clause, is the subject, (See No. 51.); as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 7. <i>Videtur mihi te valere</i> , | It appears to me that you are well; strictly rendered, That you are well appears to (or, is seen by) me. |
| 8. <i>Illi videtur ut valeat</i> , | It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (<i>another person</i>) is well. |
| 9. <i>Videtur sibi valere</i> , | It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (<i>himself</i>) is well. He seems to himself to be well. |

Verbs.—Indicative Mood.

71. Verbs in the indicative mood are translated as in the paradigm in the Grammar. Care must be taken, however, to notice when the sense requires the *simple*, or *emphatic*, or *progressive* form.

72. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event extending to, or connected with the present, in itself or in its consequences, it is used *definitely*, and must be rendered by the auxiliaries, *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; *as*,

1. *Regem vidi hodie*, I have seen the king to day.

73. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event, without reference to the present, it is used *indefinitely*, (Gr. § 44, III.) and cannot be rendered by *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; *as*,

1. *Regem vidi nuper*, I saw the king lately.

Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive mood is used in two different ways, viz: *subjunctively* and *potentially*. (Gr. § 42, II. and §§ 139–141.)

Subjunctive used subjunctively.

74. This mood is used subjunctively, but for the most part translated as the indicative, when it expresses what is actual and certain though not directly asserted as such. This it does,

1st. When it is subjoined to some adverb, conjunction, or indefinite term in a dependent clause, for the purpose of stating the existence of a thing, (without directly asserting it,) as something supposed, taken for granted, or connected with the direct assertion, as a cause, condition, or modifying circumstance, (§ 140, Obs. 4.); *as*,

1. *Eo cum ita sint discidam*, Since these things are so, I will depart.
 2. *Si adest*, If it is wet.
 3. *Quum Cæsar rediret*, When Cæsar returned—was returning.
 4. *Ita perterritus est ut mori-
retur*, He was so frightened that he died.
 5. *Gratulor tibi quod redieris*, I am glad that you have returned

6. *Si imperitaverint*, If they have commanded.
7. *Si reliquissem iniqui* If I had left him, &c.
dicerent,
8. *Quum Cæsar profectus* When Cæsar had departed.
esset,

Obs. In the first of the above examples the direct assertion, is *discēdam*, "I will depart." The dependent clause, *ea cum ita sint*, "since these things are so," expresses the existence of certain things referred to without directly asserting it, but taking it for granted as a thing admitted or supposed, but still affecting in some way the event directly asserted. This holds good of all the other examples above.

The dependent clause connected by *ut*, or *ubi*, "when;" *dum*, "whilst;" *priusquam*, "before;" *postquam*, "after;" and other conjunctions, (§ 140, *Obs.* 2 and 3,); and also by *quum* or *cum*, "when," (*Obs.* 4,) sometimes take the indicative mood.

2d. The subjunctive mood is used subjunctively, as above, after an interrogative word used indefinitely, in a dependent clause, or in what is called the *indirect* question, i. e., an expression containing the substance of a question without the form. All interrogative words may be used in this way, (See § 140, 5,); thus,

9. *Nescio quis sit—quid fiat*, I know not *who he is—what is doing*.
10. *Doce me ubi sint dii*, Tell me *where the gods are*.
11. *Nescio uter scriberet*, I know not *which of the two wrote*.
12. *Nescio quid scriptum esset*, I know not *what was written*.
13. *Scio cui, (a quo) scriptum esset*, I know *to whom (by whom) it was written*.
14. *An scis qui hoc fecerit?* Do you know *who has done this?*
15. *An scis a quo hoc factum fuerit?* Do you know *by whom this has been done?*
16. *Nemo sciebat quis hæc fecisset*, None knew *who had done these things*.
17. *Percunctatus quid vellet*, Having enquired *what he wished*

Note. The direct question requires the indicative; as, *Quis fecit?* "Who did it?" The indirect requires the subjunctive; as, *Nescio quis fecerit*, "I know not who did it."

75. This mood is used subjunctively, and usually translated as the indicative in a relative clause, after an indefinite general expression, (§ 141, R. I.) a negation, or a ques-

tion implying a negation, and also after the relative in oblique narration, (§ 141, R. VI.); as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Es qui dicat,</i> | There is one who says. |
| 2. <i>Nullus est qui neget,</i> | There is no one who denies. |
| 3. <i>Quis est qui hoc faciat?</i> | Who is there that does this? |
| 4. <i>Antonius inquit, artem esse</i> | Antonius says that art belongs to |
| <i>alium rerum quæ sciatur,</i> | those things which are known. |

The Subjunctive used Potentially.

76. The subjunctive mood is used *potentially*; 1st, in interrogative sentences; and 2d, to express a thing not as actual and certain, but contingent and hypothetical, (Gr. § 42, II. 2, and Obs. 3.) Thus used it is much less definite with respect to time, and is translated with some variety; as follows:

1. *Present*, by *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.*
2. *Imperfect*, by *might, could, would, or should.*
3. *Perfect*, by *may have, can have, must have, &c.*
4. *Pluperfect*, by *might have, could have, would have, should have,*
and denoting futurity, *should.*

The most usual renderings of each tense are the following:

77. *Present.* The present subjunctive used potentially expresses present liberty, power, will, or obligation, usually expressed by the English auxiliaries, *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.* (§ 45, 1.)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Licet eas,</i> | You may go. |
| 2. <i>An sic intelligat?</i> | Can he so understand it? |
| 3. <i>Men' moveat cimex Panti-</i> | Shall (or should) the insect Panti- |
| <i>lius?</i> | lius discompose me? |
| 4. <i>Quis istos ferat?</i> | Who could bear those men? |
| 5. <i>Si hic sis, aliter sentias,</i> | If you were here you would think |
| | otherwise. |

Imperatively.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 6. <i>Sic eat,</i> | Thus let her (or him) go |
| 7. <i>Eamus,</i> | Let us go. |
| 8. <i>Pugnētur, (Impersonally,)</i> | Let it be fought. |
| 9. <i>Dii faciant,</i> | May the gods grant. |

78. *Imperfect.* The imperfect subjunctive used potentially, is preceded by a past tense, and expresses *past* liberty, power, will, or duty, but still in its use expresses time very indefinitely. It is usually rendered by the English

auxiliaries, *might, could, would, should*, sometimes *had, would have, should have*; as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Legēbat ut disceret,</i> | He read that he <i>might</i> learn. |
| 2. <i>Quid facerem?</i> | What <i>could</i> I do? |
| 3. <i>Iret si juberet,</i> | He <i>would</i> go if you <i>should</i> order it. |
| 4. <i>Cur veniret,</i> | Why <i>should</i> he come. |
| 5. <i>Rogaverunt ut veniret,</i> | They entreated that he <i>would</i> come. |
| 6. <i>Si quis diceret, nunquam putarem,</i> | If any one <i>had</i> said it, I <i>would</i> not have thought it. |

Note. After verbs denoting to hinder, forbid, and the like, *quo minus* with the subjunctive, may be rendered by *from* and the present participle, (§ 45, II. 3.); thus,

7. *Impeditit quo minus iret,* He hindered him *from* going

Obs. An action or state which would, or would not exist, or have existed, in a case supposed, but the contrary of which is implied, is expressed in Latin by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, without an antecedent verb or conjunction, (§ 139, 2.); as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. <i>scriberem, si necesse esset,</i> | I <i>would</i> write, if it were necessary. |
| 9. <i>scripsissem, si necesse fuisset,</i> | I <i>would have</i> written, had it been necessary. |

79. *Perfect.* The perfect subjunctive properly expresses what is supposed to be past, but of which there exists uncertainty. Thus used it is commonly rendered by the auxiliaries *may have, can have, &c.* It is also used sometimes in a present and sometimes in a future sense, with much variety of meaning, according to its connection, (§ 45, III.); as,

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Fortasse erravērim,</i> | Perhaps I <i>may have</i> erred. |
| 2. <i>Etsi non scripsērit,</i> | Though he <i>cannot have</i> written. |
| 3. <i>Ut sic dixērim,</i> | That I <i>may</i> so speak. |
| 4. <i>Citius credidērim,</i> | I <i>would</i> sooner believe. |
| 5. <i>Facile dixērim,</i> | I <i>could</i> easily tell. |
| 6. <i>Quasi affuērim,</i> | As if I <i>had been</i> present. |

80. *Pluperfect.* The pluperfect (§ 45, IV.) is usually rendered by the auxiliaries, *might have, could have, would have, should have*, as in the paradigm of the verb. But when an action is related as having been future at a certain past time, it is expressed in Latin in the pluperfect subjunctive, and translated *should*; as,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Quodcumque jussisset me facturum dixi.</i> | I said that I <i>would</i> do whatsoever he <i>should</i> order. |
|--|--|

2. *Promisisti te scripturum, si* You promised that thou would
rogavissem; write, if I should desire it.
 3. *Dum convalescisset,* Until he should get well.

81. The pluperfect subjunctive active, with *quum*, in verbs not deponent, is used instead of a past participle active, (§ 49, 8,) and may be rendered by the compound perfect participle in English; as,

1. *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset* Cæsar having said these things;
 (literally, Cæsar, when he
 had said these things.)

82. When the subjunctive has a relative for its subject, and the relative and antecedent clause involve a comparison, they may be rendered as in No. 40, or the sense will be expressed if we render the relative by *as*, and the subjunctive by the infinitive; thus,

1. *Quis tam esset amens qui sem-* Who would be so foolish as to live
per viveret, always.
 2. *Neque tu es qui nescias,* You are not such a one as not to
 know.

83. When the relative and subjunctive follow such adjectives as *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, (§ 141, Obs. 2.) and the like; or when they express the end or design of something expressed in the antecedent clause, their meaning will be expressed as in No. 40, or by the infinitive alone, or preceded by the phrase "in order to;" thus,

1. *Dignum qui secundus ab Ro-* Worthy to be ranked next after
mulo numeretur, Romulus.
 2. *Legatos miserunt qui eum ac-* They sent legates to accuse (or, in
cusarent, order to accuse) him.
 3. *Virgas tuis dedit quibus* He gave them rods to drive, (in
agerent, order to drive; or, so that with
 these they might drive.).

84. The subjunctive with, or without *ut*, after verbs signifying to *bid*, *forbid*, *tell*, *allow*, *hinder*, *command*, and the like, (§ 140, 1, 3d, and Obs. 5,) may be rendered by the English infinitive preceded by the subject of the verb in the objective case; as,

1. *Precor venias,* I pray that you may come; i. e.
 I pray you to come.
 2. *Dic veniat,* Tell her to come.
 3. *Sine eat,* Permit him to go.
 4. *Non patieris ut eant,* You will not suffer them to go.
 5. *Non patieris ut vocemur,* You do not suffer us to eat.

85. When several verbs in the same mood and tense, have the same nominative, and are connected in the same construction, the *auxiliary* and "to," the sign of the infinitive, in the translation is used with the first only, and understood to the rest; as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Et vidisset et audivisset,</i> | He might have both seen and heard. |
| 2. <i>Et visus et auditus esset,</i> | He might have been both seen and heard. |
| 3. <i>Cupimus et vidēre et audire,</i> | We wish both to see and hear. |

The Infinitive Mood.

86. When the infinitive is without a subject, it is to be considered as a verbal noun, (§ 144,) and translated as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Volo scribere,</i> | I wish to write. |
| 2. <i>Dicitur didicisse,</i> | He is said to have learned |
| 3. <i>Dicitur iturus esse,</i> | He is said to be about to go. |
| 4. <i>Dicitur iturus fuisse,</i> | He is said to have been about to go. |

87. When the verbs *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries, *can*, *will*, *will not*, *will rather*, and sometimes, in the past tense, by *could*, *would*, &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as,

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Potest fieri,</i> | It can be done. |
| 2. <i>Volo ire,</i> | I will go. |
| 3. <i>Nolo facere,</i> | I will not do it. |
| 4. <i>Malo facere,</i> | I will rather do it. |
| 5. <i>Ut se volucrem facere vellet,</i> | That he would make her a bird. |
| 6. <i>Nihil jam defendi potuit,</i> | Nothing could now be defended. |
| 7. <i>Hoc facere non potuit,</i> | He could not do this. |
| 8. <i>Nolite timere,</i> | Do not fear. |

88. The present is generally translated as the perfect without "to," after the imperfect, perfect and pluperfect tenses of *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, when translated *could*, *would*, *would not*, *would rather*; and with "to" after the same tenses of *debeo*, and *oportet*, translated *ought*; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Melius fieri non potuit,</i> | It could not have been done better |
| 2. <i>Volui dicere,</i> | I would have said. |
| 3. <i>Sumere arma noluit,</i> | He would not have taken arms. |
| 4. <i>Maluit augere,</i> | He would rather have increased |
| 5. <i>Quam potuisset edere,</i> | Than he could have caused. |
| 6. <i>Debui mihi ignoscere,</i> | You ought to have pardoned me |
| 7. <i>Dividi oportuit,</i> | It ought to have been divided. |

Note. A strictly literal translation of most of the above sentences would not express the precise idea intended ; thus in the third sentence, "He would not have taken arms," and "He was not willing to take arms," manifestly do not mean the same thing.

89. After verbs denoting to *see, hear, feel*, and the like, the present infinitive is often translated by the English present participle ; as,

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Audivi eum dicere,</i> | I heard him saying. |
| 2. <i>Surgere videt lunam,</i> | He sees the moon rising. |
| 3. <i>Terram tremere sensit,</i> | He felt the earth trembling. |

Obs. So also when the infinitive alone, or as part of a clause, is the subject of another verb ; as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. <i>Morari periculösium est,</i> | Delaying is dangerous. |
| 5. <i>Morari periculösium (esse) arbitrantur,</i> | They think that delaying is dangerous. |

The Infinitive with a subject.

90. The infinitive with its subject in the accusative, though but seldom, is sometimes translated in the same form in English ; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Cupio te venire,</i> | I wish you to come. |
| 2. <i>Quos discordare novérat,</i> | Whom he had known to differ. |
| 3. <i>Hoc optimum esse judicávit,</i> | He decided this to be the best. |
| 4. <i>Eum vocári jussit,</i> | He ordered him to be called. |

91. The infinitive with a subject, usually is, and always may be, translated by the English indicative or potential, according to the sense intended. When so rendered, its subject must always be translated in the nominative; and this, if not a relative, is usually preceded by the conjunction *that*, (§ 145.); as,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Cupio te venire,</i> | I wish that you would come. |
| 2. <i>Dicit me scribere,</i> | He says that I write. |
| 3. <i>Eos ivisse putabat,</i> | He thought that they had gone. |
| 4. <i>Quem nunquam risisse ferunt,</i> | Who they say never laughed. |
| 5. <i>Rogávit quid faciendum (esse) putáret,</i> | He asked what he thought ought to be done. |

92. Both the Latin and the English infinitive, by their tenses, represent an act, &c., as present, past or future, at the time of the governing verb. Hence, when the one is translated by the other ; that is, the Latin infinitive by the English infinitive, (Nos. 86 and 90,) any tense of the one

will be correctly translated by the same tense in the other, (except as in No. 88,) no matter what be the tense of the governing verb; as,

1. Pres. <i>Dicitur,</i>	}	Pres.	Past.	Future.
2. Past, <i>Dicebatur,</i>		<i>habere;</i>	<i>habuisse;</i>	<i>habiturus esse.</i>
3. Fut. <i>Dicetur,</i>				
1. Pres. He is said	}	to have; to have had; to be about to have.		
2. Past, He was said				
3. Fut. He will be said				

93. But when the Latin infinitive, with its subject, is translated by the English *indicative* or *potential*, the tense used in these moods, must be that which will correctly express the time of the act expressed by the Latin infinitive as estimated, not from the time of the governing verb, as in Latin, but as estimated from the present. That is, events present at the same time, or past at the same time, will be expressed in English by the same tense; an event represented in Latin as prior to the present time, (perfect infinitive after the present tense,) will be expressed by the English imperfect or perfect indefinite; and an event represented in Latin as prior to a past event, (perfect infinitive after a past tense,) will be expressed by the English pluperfect; thus:

1. Pres. *Dicunt eum venire,* They say that he is coming, or comes.
2. Past, *Dixerunt eum venire,* They said that he came.
3. Pres. *Dicunt eum venisse,* They say that he came.
4. Past, *Dixerunt eum venisse,* They said that he had come.
5. Past, *Ceperunt suspicari illam venire,* They began to suspect that she came.

Note. The infinitive after the future does not follow this analogy, but is always translated in its own tense; as,

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| Pres. | Perf. | Future. |
| 6. <i>Dicent eum venire,</i> | <i>venisse,</i> | <i>venturum esse</i> |
| They will say that he comes, | has come, | will come. |

94. 1. Present, past, and future time, are variously expressed as follows:

- 1st. Present time is expressed by the *present tense*, and generally by the *perfect definite*.
- 2d. Past time is expressed by the *imperfect*, *perf. indefinite* and *pluperfect*.—by the *perfect participle*,—the *present infinitive after a past tense*,—the *present tense used to express a past event*, § 44, I, 3,—and by the *pre-*

sent participle, agreeing with the subject of the governing verb in any of these tenses, § 49, 5.

3d. Future time is expressed by the *future*, and *future perfect*.

2. The infinitive of deponent verbs, is translated in the same manner as the infinitive active in the following examples in Nos. 95 to 100.

3. After verbs denoting to *promise, request, advise, command*, and the like, implying a reference to something future, the present infinitive, with its subject, is usually translated as the future, by *should*, or *would*, (See No. 100, 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9,); as, *Jussit, eos per castra duci*, He ordered that they *should be led* through the camp.

4. The Latin words for "*he said*," "*saying*," or the like, introducing an oblique narration, are often omitted, and the infinitive takes the form of translation corresponding to the *time* expressed by the word to be supplied.

From these principles are deduced the following directions for translating the infinitive with a subject.

Present Infinitive after Present or Future time.

95. DIRECT. I. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, the *perfect* used definitely, or *future tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the present; as,

Active Voice.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dico eum laudare,</i> | I say that he <i>praises</i> . |
| 2. <i>Dixi eum laudare,</i> | I have said that he <i>praises</i> . |
| 3. <i>Dicam eum laudare,</i> | I will say that he <i>praises</i> . |

Passive Voice.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 4. <i>Dico eum laudari,</i> | I say that he <i>is praised</i> . |
| 5. <i>Dixi eum laudari,</i> | I have said that he <i>is praised</i> . |
| 6. <i>Dicam eum laudari,</i> | I will say that he <i>is praised</i> . |

Present Infinitive after Past time.

96. DIRECT. II. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the *imperfect*, or *perfect indefinite*; as,

Present Infinitive Active.

1. *Dicēbam eum laudāre*, I said that he *praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudāre*, I said that he *praised*.
3. *Dixēram eum laudāre*, I had said that he *praised*.
4. *Cœpi dicere eum laudāre*, I began to say that he *praised*.

Present Infinitive Passive.

5. *Dicēbam eum laudāri*, I said that he *was praised*.
6. *Dixi eum laudāri*, I said that he *was praised*.
7. *Dixēram eum laudāri*, I had said that he *was praised*.
8. *Cœpi dicere eum laudāri*, I began to say that he *was praised*.

Exc. I. When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the *present*, after any tense, § 44, I. 1; as

9. *Doctus erat deum guber- nārē mundum*, He had been taught that God *governs* the world.

Exc. II. When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated after any tense, by the potential with *should*; *would*; as,

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 10. <i>Jubet</i> | } <i>te ire</i> , | He orders | } that you <i>should go</i> . |
| 11. <i>Jussit</i> | | He ordered | |
| 12. <i>Jussērat</i> | | He had ordered | |

Perfect Infinitive after Present or Future time.

97. DIRECT. III. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the imperfect or perfect indefinite; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudavisse*, I say that he *praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I have said that he *praised*.
3. *Dicam eum laudavisse*, I will say that he *praised*.

Passive Voice.

4. *Dico eum laudātum esse*, I say that he *was praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudātum esse*, I have said that he *was praised*.
6. *Dicameum laudātum esse*, I will say that he *was praised*.
7. *Dico eum laudātum fu- isse*, I say that he *has been praised*.
8. *Dixi eum laudātum fu- isse*, I have said that he *has been praised*.
9. *Dicam eum laudātum fu- isse*, I will say that he *has been praised*.

Perfect Infinitive after Past Tenses.

98. DIRECT. IV. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the pluperfect; as,

Active Voice

1. *Dicebam eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
3. *Dixeram eum laudavisse*, I had said that he *had praised*.
4. *Capi dicere eum laudavisse*, I began to say that he *had praised*.

Passive Voice.

5. *Dicebam eum laudatum esse* I said that he *had been praised*.
6. *Dixi eum laudatum esse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
7. *Dixeram eum laudatum esse*, I had said that he *had been praised*.
8. *Capi dicere eum laudatum esse* I began to say that he *had been praised*.
9. *Dicebam eum laudatum fuisse* I said that he *had been praised*.
10. *Dixi eum laudatum fuisse* I said that he *had been praised*.
11. *Dixeram eum laudatum fuisse* I had said that he *had been praised*.
12. *Capi dicere eum laudatum fuisse* I began to say that he *had been praised*.

Future Infinitive after the Present Tense.

99. V. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, or *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the future infinitive with *esse*, is translated as the future indicative; and with *fuisse*, by *would have*, or *should have*, in the pluperfect potential in a future sense; and *fore*, for *futurum esse*, is translated by *will be*.

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudaturum esse* I say that he *will praise*.
2. *Dixi eum laudaturum esse* I have said that he *will praise*.
3. *Dicam eum laudaturum esse* I will say that he *will praise*.
4. *Dico eum laudaturum fuisse* I say that he *would have praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudaturum fuisse* I have said that he *would have praised*.
6. *Dicam eum laudaturum fuisse* I will say that he *would have praised*.

Passive Voice.

7. *Dico eum laudatum iri*, I say that he *will be praised*.
 8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri*, I have said that he *will be praised*.
 9. *Dicam eum laudatum iri*, I will say that he *will be praised*.

Future Infinitive after Past Tenses.

100. DIRECT. VI. When the preceding verb is of the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, the future of the infinitive with *esse*, is rendered by *would* or *should*; and with *fuisse*, by *would have*, and *should have*; and *fore* for *futurum esse* after any past tense, by *would be*; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dicebam eum laudatum iri* I said that he *would praise*.
esse,
 2. *Dixi eum laudatum, &c.* I said that he *would praise*.
 3. *Dixeram eum laudatum iri* I had said that he *would praise*.
 4. *Dicebam eum laudatum iri* I said that he *would have praised*.
fuisse,
 5. *Dixi eum laudatum, &c.* I said that he *would have praised*.
 6. *Dixeram eum laudatum iri* I had said that he *would have praised*.
fuisse,

Passive Voice.

7. *Dicebam eum laudatum iri* I said that he *would be praised*.
iri,
 8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri*, I said that he *would be praised*.
 9. *Dixeram eum laudatum iri* I had said that he *would be praised*.
iri,
 10. *Dicebam (dixi) eum fore tutum* I said that he *would be safe*.

Usage of Fore.

Obs. *Fore* is used for *futurum esse*, and, with a subject after present tenses means "*will be*," after past tenses "*would be*." Both of them when followed by a subjunctive with *ut* (§ 145, *Obs.* 6,) after a present tense, may be translated by the future indicative of that verb; and after a past tense, by the imperfect potential; as,

11. *Credo eum fore tutum*, I believe that he *will be safe*.
 12. *Credēbam, or credidi, (credideram) eum fore tutum*, I believed, (had believed) that he *would be safe*.
 13. *Credo fore (or futurum esse) ut discas*, I believe that you *will learn*.
 14. *Credēbam, or credidi (credideram) fore (or futurum esse) ut disceres*, I believed, (had believed) that you *would learn*.

Participles.

101. Participles are usually translated after their nouns, as in the paradigms of the verb; thus,

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Present active, | <i>Homo carens fraude,</i> | A man wanting guile. |
| 2. Future active, | <i>Homo scripturus,</i> | A man about to write. |
| 3. Perfect passive, | <i>Vita bene acta,</i> | A life well spent. |
| 4. ————, | <i>Cæsar coactus,</i> | Cæsar being (or having been) compelled. |
| 5. (Deponent,) | <i>Cæsar regressus,</i> | Cæsar having returned |
| 6. Future passive, | <i>Mala vitanda,</i> | Evils to be avoided,
i. e., which ought to be avoided. |

Exc. But when a participle is used as an adjective, (§ 49, 3,) it is translated, like the adjective, before its substantive; as,

7. *Tigrin ostendit mansuefactam.* He exhibited a tamed tiger.
8. *In ferventibus arenis insistens.* Standing on the burning sands.

Future Participle Active.

102. When the Future participle active is used to express a *purpose, end, or design* of another action, (§ 146, Obs. 3,) it is rendered by "to," or the phrase "in order to," instead of "about to;" as,

1. *Pergit consulturus ora cula,* He goes to consult (or, in order to consult) the oracle.

Obs. The present participle is also sometimes used in this sense; as,

2. *Venerunt postulantes cibum,* They came to (or, in order to) ask food.

Perfect Participle Passive.

103. As the Latin verb has no perfect participle in the active sense, (except in deponent verbs,) its place is usually supplied by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute, (§ 146, Obs. 8,); thus, "Cæsar having consulted his friends," rendered into Latin, will be, *Cæsar a mīcīs consultis*, literally, "Cæsar, his friends being consulted." Hence,

104. When the action expressed passively by the perfect participle in the case absolute, or agreeing with the object of a verb, is something done by the subject of the leading

verb in the sentence, the participle is rendered more in accordance with English idiom, by the perfect participle in the active voice, in English, agreeing with the subject of the verb, and followed by its noun in the objective case, (§ 49, 8, and § 146, Obs. 8.); thus,

1. *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, translated in the Latin idiom, *Cæsar, these things being said, departed.*
English idiom, *Cæsar, having said these things, departed.*
2. *Opère peracto, ludemus*,
Latin idiom, *Our work being finished, we will play.*
English idiom, *Having finished our work, we will play.*
3. *Pythiam ad se vocatum pecuniâ instruxit*,
Latin idiom, *He supplied with money Pythias being called to him,*
English idiom, *Having called Pythias to him, he supplied him with money.*

105. The perfect participle of deponent verbs having an active signification, accords with the English idiom, and is best translated literally; as,

1. *Nactus naviculum*, *Having found a boat.*
2. *Cohortatus exercitum*, *Having exhorted the army.*

106. When the perfect participle of deponent or common verbs, expresses an act nearly or entirely contemporaneous with the leading verb, it may be translated by the English present participle in *ing*, (§ 49, 5, Note.); as,

1. *Rex hoc factus miratus* The king, *admiring* this act, dismissed the youth.
2. *Columba delapsa refert sagittam*, The dove *falling* brings back the arrow.

The Future Participle Passive.

107. After verbs signifying to *give*, to *deliver*, to *agree* or *bargain for*, to *have*, to *receive*, to *undertake*, and the like, the participle in *dus* generally denotes *design* or *purpose*, and is rendered simply as in the paradigm, or with the phrase "in order to," prefixed, (§ 146, Obs. 4.); as,

1. *Testamentum tibi tradit legendum*, He delivers his will to you to (or in order to) be read.
2. *Attribuit nos tuncidando* He has given us over to Cethegus (in order) to be slain.

108. The participle in *dus*, especially when agreeing with the subject of a sentence or clause, generally denotes *propriety*, *necessity*, or *obligation*, and is rendered variously, as

the tense of the accompanying verb and the connection require, (§ 146, Obs. 5,); the following are examples :

1. *Legātus mittendus est*, An ambassador *must* (or *should*)
be sent.
2. *Legātus mittendus erat* or *An ambassador had to be sent.*
fuit,
3. *Legātus mittendus erit*, An ambassador *will have to be sent*
4. *Legātum mittendum esse*, That an ambassador *should be sent.*
5. *mittendum fuisse*, ———— *ought to* (or
should) *have been sent.*
6. *Dissimulanda loquitur*, He speaks things that *ought to be*
concealed.
7. *Dissimulanda loquebatur*, He spoke things which *ought to*
have been concealed.
8. *Qua dissimulanda erunt*, Which *will have to be concealed.*
9. *Dic, quid statuendum sit*, Say, what is *to be* (or *must be*)
thought.

Ablative Absolute.

109. When a participle stands with a substantive in the ablative absolute, R. LX., the substantive is translated without a sign, No. 9, and after it the participle, as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

1. *Romūlo regnante*, Romulus *reigning.*
2. *Hac oratione habita*, This oration *being delivered.*
3. *Cæsare venturo*, Cæsar (being) *about to come.*
4. *Præceptis tradendis*, Rules *being to be delivered.*
5. *Bello orto*, War *having arisen.*

Note. The future participles, Ex. 3, 4, are seldom used in the case absolute.

110. When two nouns,—a pronoun and a noun,—a noun or a pronoun and an adjective, are used in the ablative without a participle, (§ 146, Obs. 10,) they are translated in the nominative without a sign, and the English participle “*being*,” inserted between them; as,

1. *Adolescentulo duce*, A young man *being* leader.
2. *Mario consule*, Marius *being* consul.
3. *Me suasore*, I *being* the adviser.
4. *Annibali vivo*, Hannibal *being* alive.
5. *Se invito*, He *being* unwilling.

Gerunds and Gerundives.

111. The gerund, being a verbal noun, is translated in

the same manner as other nouns of the same case, and at the same time may govern the case of its own verb, § 147; as,

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. N. <i>Petendum pacem,</i> | Seeking peace. |
| 2. G. <i>Petendi pacem,</i> | Of seeking peace. |
| 3. D. <i>Utendo libris,</i> | To (or for) using books |
| 4. Ac. <i>Obliviscendum injuriarum,</i> | Forgetting injuries. |
| 5. Abl. <i>Parendo magistratui,</i> | By obeying the magistrate. |
| 6. Abl. <i>Petendo pacem,</i> | With, from in, by seeking peace. |

112. Of verbs that govern the accusative, instead of the gerund in the oblique cases, the Latins commonly used the participle in *dus*, in the sense of the gerund, and agreeing with its object in gender, number and case; the case being governed by the same word that would have governed the gerund. When thus used it is called a *gerundive*. (§ 147, R. LXII.)

Gerunds.

Gerundives.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ars librum legendi,</i> | 5. <i>Ars libri legendi,</i>
The art of reading a book. |
| 2. <i>Utile vulnēra curando,</i> | 6. <i>Utile vulneribus curandis.</i>
Useful for healing wounds. |
| 3. <i>Ad litteras scribendum,</i> | 7. <i>Ad litteras scribendas,</i>
For writing a letter. |
| 4. <i>De captivos commutand-
do,</i> | 8. <i>De captivis commutan-
dis,</i>
Respecting exchanging captives. |

113. When the gerund is the subject of the verb *est*, governing the dative, it implies necessity, and is variously translated into the English idiom, as the tense of the verb requires, (§ 147,) ; as,

Latin Idiom.

English Idiom.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Legendum est mihi,</i>
Reading is to me; i. e., | I must read; I ought to read;
I should read. |
| 2. <i>Legendum erat (fuit) mihi.</i>
Reading was to me; | I had to read; I ought to have
read; I should have read. |
| 3. <i>Legendum fuerat mihi,</i>
Reading had been to me; | I had been obliged to read. |
| 4. <i>Legendum erit mihi,</i>
Reading will be to me; | I will have to read; It will be
necessary for me to read. |
| 5. <i>Dicit legendum esse mihi.</i>
He says that reading is to me; | He says that I must read—
ought to read—should read. |
| 6. <i>Dicit legendum fuisse mihi,</i>
He says that reading was to me; | He says that I had to read—
ought to—or should—have
read. |

Obs. The dative is frequently omitted, and generally when it denotes persons or things, in a general or indefinite

sense. In such cases, *homīni*, *homīnibus*, *nobis*, or the like, must be supplied ; as,

7. *Vivendum est recte* (*scil. homīni-* Living honestly, is viz : to men ;
bus,) i. e., men ought to live honestly.
8. *Dicit vivendum esse recte*, (*scil. He says that living honestly is,*
homīni,) viz : to a man ; i. e. a man
ought to live honestly.

Supines.

114. The Supines are rendered without variation, as in the paradigm, and under the rules, (§ 148,) ; as,

1. *Abiit deambulatum*, He has gone to walk.
2. *Facile dictu*, Easy to tell, or to be told.

Passive Voice.

115. The passive voice, in the indicative mood, is translated as in the paradigms. The subjunctive mood is subject to all the variety of construction and translation used in the active voice, Nos. 74–84, acting on the verb *to be*, which as an auxiliary with the perfect participle, makes up the passive form of the verb in English.

In the compound tenses, (§ 53, 3,) when two or more verbs in a sentence are in the same tense, and have the same nominative, or are in the same construction, the verb *sum* is commonly expressed with the last and understood to the rest, as in the following Ex. 1. But when the nominative is changed, the verb “to be” should be repeated as in Ex. 2.

1. *Nisus a Minōe victus et occisus* Nisus was conquered and killed
est, by Minos.
2. *Tres naves capte, decem de-* Three ships were taken, ten sunk ;
mersæ, duo millia hostium two thousand of the enemy were
capte, tredecim millia occisa taken, thirteen thousand killed
sunt.

Passive Voice in a Middle Sense.

116. The Latin passive voice is often used to represent its subject, not as acted upon by another, but as acting on itself, or for itself, or intransitively, by its own impulse ; and so corresponds in sense to the middle voice in Greek. Thus used, it is best translated by the active voice followed by the reflexive pronoun as an object, or by an intransitive

verb expressing the idea intended, (§ 41, Obs. 3.) The following are examples.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Paludibus abditi sunt,</i> | They concealed themselves in the marshes. |
| 2. <i>Cum omnes in omni genere scelerum volutentur,</i> | Since all give themselves up to every kind of wickedness. |
| 3. <i>Fertur in hostes,</i> | Rushes against the enemy. |
| 4. <i>Volutati super poma,</i> | Rolling themselves over the apples. |
| 5. <i>Cingitur armis,</i> | Girds himself with his armor. |
| 6. <i>Sternuntur tumulo,</i> | Throw themselves on the grave. |
| 7. <i>Gallus victus occultatur,</i> | The cock, when conquered, hides himself. |

117. The verb *sum* governing the genitive by R. XII., § 108, may generally be translated by the phrase "belongs to," "is the part," "is the property," &c. See explanation under Rule; as,

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Est regis,</i> | It belongs to the king. |
| 2. <i>Pecus est Melibœi,</i> | The flock belongs to Melibœus. |
| 3. <i>Prudentia est senectutis,</i> | Prudence is the characteristic of old age. |

118. The verb *sum*, (also *desum*.) in the third person, governing the dative by § 112, Rule II., may generally be translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "to have," with the Latin dative for its subject, and the Latin subject for its object; as,

- | | <i>Latin Idiom.</i> | <i>English Idiom.</i> |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Liber est mihi,</i> | A book is to me, | I have a book. |
| 2. <i>Liber erat mihi,</i> | A book was to me, | I had a book. |
| 3. <i>Liber fuit mihi,</i> | A book was (or has been) to me, | I had, or have had a book. |
| 4. <i>Liber fuerat mihi,</i> | A book had been to me, | I had had a book. |
| 5. <i>Liber erit mihi,</i> | A book will be to me, | I will have a book. |
| 6. <i>Libri sunt mihi,</i> | Books are to me, | I have books. |
| 7. <i>Est mihi,</i> | It is to me, | I have it. |
| 8. <i>Liber deest mihi,</i> | A book is not to me, | I have not a book. |

119. When a compound verb, rendered by the simple verb and a preposition, is followed by two cases, the simple verb with the immediate object (always in the accusative,) is usually translated first, and then the preposition with the remote object.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Flumen copias transduxit,</i> | He led his forces across the river. |
| 2. <i>Circumdare mania opido,</i> | To build walls around the city— |
| 3. <i>Caput dejecit saxo,</i> | He threw the head down from the rock. |

120 An adverb, adverbial phrase, or clause expressing some circumstance in translating, may often be arranged in different situations in a sentence, due regard being paid to the sense and harmony of the whole; thus, *Magna debemus suscipere dum vires suppētunt*, may be arranged variously for translating, as follows:

1. *Debemus suscipere magna, dum vires suppētunt*; or,
2. *Dum vires suppētunt, debemus suscipere magna*; or,
3. *Debemus, dum vires suppētunt, suscipere magna*.

121. The negative conjunction *ne*, is variously rendered *lest*, *lest that*, *that-not*, *not*; and after verbs signifying to *fear*, *forbid*, and the like, it is translated *that*, while *ut* in the same situation, means *that not*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ne quis eat,</i> | <i>Lest (or that not) any one may go.</i> |
| 2. <i>Orat ne se perdat,</i> | She entreats <i>that</i> he would <i>not</i> destroy her. |
| 3. <i>Egi ne interessem,</i> | I managed <i>that</i> I should <i>not</i> be present. |
| 4. <i>Dum ne veniat,</i> | Provided he do <i>not</i> come. |
| 5. <i>Respondit ne cogitata quidem latent.</i> | He replied <i>that not</i> even the thoughts are concealed. |
| 6. <i>Vereor ne cadas,</i> | I am afraid <i>that</i> you may fall. |
| 7. <i>Timui ut veniret,</i> | I feared <i>that</i> he would <i>not</i> come. |

Note 1. But when the fear expressed, refers to such things as we wish, *ne* means *that-not*; as, *Paves ne ducas illam*, You are afraid *that* you do *not* get her to wife.

Ne, after a command implying a negative, or prohibition, is often omitted; as, *cave titūbes*, take care *that* you do *not* stumble.

Note 2. *Ne quidem*, (always separate,) is an emphatic negative, and has the emphatic word between; as, *ne hoc quidem*, not even *this*; *ne tum quidem*, not even *then*.

122. When a verb is translated into English by the aid of an auxiliary, an adverb, or clause modifying it, will often have to be placed *between* the auxiliary and the verb, (Eng. Gr. § 74,); as,

1. *Dixit ne ob hoc alios con-* He said that we should not *on this*
temnāmus, *account* despise others.

123. Some prepositions are variously translated according to the meaning of the words, or the case with which they are connected; thus,

1. *In* followed by an accusative, means *to, into, towards, for, against*. &c., (§ 136, R. L.)
2. *In*, followed by the ablative, means *in, upon, among, in. in the case of*, (§ 136, R. LI.)
3. *Inter*, referring to two, means *between*; to more than two, *among*.
4. *Sub* means *under, at the foot of, close up to*.
5. *Præ* means *before, in comparison of*;—sometimes, *more than*.

124. When the following conjunctions, adjectives, and adverbial particles, are placed, one before each of two successive words or clauses, the first is commonly translated differently from the second, and usually in the following manner, (§149, Obs. 5.)

1. <i>Et</i>	— <i>et</i> ,	Both	— and.
2. <i>Que</i>	— <i>que</i> ,	Both	— and.
3. <i>Aut. vel,</i>	{ — <i>aut, vel,</i> }	Either	— or.
<i>sive,</i>			
4. <i>Nec</i>	— <i>nec.</i>	Neither	— nor.
5. <i>Neque</i>	— <i>neque,</i>		
6. <i>Sive, seu</i>	— <i>sive, seu,</i>	Whether	— or.
7. <i>Tum</i>	— <i>tum</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
8. <i>Cum</i> or <i>quum</i>	— <i>tum,</i>	{ Both	— and.
9. <i>Jam</i>	— <i>jam,</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
10. <i>Nunc</i>	— <i>nunc,</i>		
		{ Both	— and.
11. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>simul,</i>	{ Now	— then.
		{ At one time	— at another.
		{ Not only	— but also.
		{ No sooner	— than.
		{ As soon as	— instantly.
12. <i>Modo, alias</i>	— <i>modo, alias,</i>	{ At one time	— at another
		{ Sometimes	— sometimes.

Corresponding Conjunctive Terms.

13. <i>Ne</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
14. <i>Utrum</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
15. <i>Ita, sic, tam, adeo</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	So	— that; so — as.
16. <i>Talis, tantus</i>	— <i>ut.</i>	Such, so great	— that.
17. <i>Is, ejusmodi</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	Such, of such a kind	— that.
18. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>ac, or atque,</i>	As soon	— as.
19. <i>Tamdiu</i>	— <i>quandiu,</i>	As long	— as.
20. <i>Ut</i>	— <i>sic,</i>	As	— so.

Ne is frequently omitted with the first word or clause, and must be supplied when *an* stands with the second; as,

21. *Rectè an perpèram,* (Whether) right or wrong.

General Rules for Accentuation.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first, or penult; as, *pă'-ter*, *mă'-sa*, *au'-rum*.

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short, they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *a-mă'-cus*, *dom'-i-nus*.

3. When the enclitics, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, are added to a word the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pă'-ter*, *pă'-ter'-que*; *dom'-i-nus*, *dom-i-nus'-ve*.

General Rules for the Quantity of Syllables.

1. A vowel before another vowel, is short; as, *via*, *Dēus*.

2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as, *arma*, *fallo*, *axis*.

3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (*l*, *r*), is common, i. e. either long or short; as, *volūcris*, or *volūcris*.

4. A diphthong is always long; as, *aurum*, *Cæsar*.

Note. In this work when the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked, otherwise it is marked.

Explanation of References.

The references at the foot of each page, to which a section mark (§) is prefixed, are to the sections and their subdivisions in the Grammar, and are intended chiefly to explain the construction.

In those references which have no section mark prefixed, the first number directs to the same number in the preceding Introduction, and the second, to the example under that number. Thus for example, in p. 53, § 38, 8; the number 38 refers to Introduction 38, (p. 22,) which shows how the relative in the beginning of a sentence is to be translated; and the number 8 refers to example 8, *A quo consilio*, &c., showing that the relative *quā* is here to be translated "this," and *Quā de causā*, "for this cause." These references are intended to explain particular phrases and idioms, and to give an example of the mode of translating them.

The references made by figures are to the notes on the text, commencing p. 207, where it will be observed that all the notes belonging to a page are contained in one paragraph, at the beginning of which is the number of the page to which the notes refer.

N. B. In the text the reference letter stands *after*, and the reference figure stands *before* the word or words to which they respectively belong.

C. JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

BOOK I.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. General description of Gaul—Chap. 1. II. The war with the Helvetii—Chap. 2-29. III. War with Ariovistus—Chap. 30-54

1. GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, ¹ quarum ^a unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, ² qui ipsorum lingua Celtæ, ^b nostrâ Gallj, ^c appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, ^e institutis, ^f legibus ⁴ inter se ^d differunt. ⁵ Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum ^a omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a ⁶ cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissimè absunt, ⁷ minimèque ad eos mercatores sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos ⁸ animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, ^f qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: quâ ⁹ de causâ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute ^c præcedunt, quod ferè quotidianis præliis ^b cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis ¹ finibus ⁸ eos prohibent, aut ⁹ ipsi in ¹⁰ eorum finibus bellum gerunt. ¹¹ Eorum una pars, quam Gallos ^k obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumnâ flumine, ^h Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; ¹² vergit ad septentriones.

^a Gr. 355, R. X.

^o Gr. 707, R. LXII, & ^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^b Gr. 319, R. V.

Id. 112, 7.

¹ Id. 31, 3.

^o Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.

^f Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^k Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^d Gr. 118, 5.

⁸ Id. 38, 8.

Belgæ ¹ ab extrēmis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; ² spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnâ flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani, quæ est ³ ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriones.

2. Apud Helvetios longē nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco Pisōne ⁴ Consulibus, ⁵ regni cupiditate ⁶ inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et ⁷ civitati ⁸ persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: ⁹ perfacile ¹⁰ esse cū virtute omnibus præstare, ¹¹ totius Galliæ imperio ¹² potiri. Id hoc facilius eis ¹³ persuasit, quodd undique loci ¹⁴ naturâ ¹⁵ Helvetii continentur: unâ ex parte flumine Rheno, ¹⁶ latissimo ¹⁷ atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit: alterâ ex parte, monte ¹⁸ Jurâ altissimo, ¹⁹ qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiâ, lacu Lemanno, ²⁰ et flumine ²¹ Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ²² ut et minùs latè vagarentur, ²³ et minùs facilè finitimis ²⁴ bellum inferre possent: ²⁵ quâ de causâ homines bellandi ²⁶ cupidi magno dolore ²⁷ afficiebantur. ²⁸ Pro multitudīne autem hominum, et pro gloriâ ²⁹ belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere ³⁰ arbitrabantur, ³¹ qui in longitudinem millia ³² passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta patēbant.

3. ³³ His rebus ³⁴ adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituērunt ³⁵ ea, quæ ad ³⁶ proficiscendum ³⁷ pertinerent, ³⁸ comparare; ³⁹ jumentorum et ⁴⁰ carrorum quàm maximum ⁴¹ numerum coēmēre; ⁴² sementes quàm maximas ⁴³ facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppetēret; ⁴⁴ cum proxi-

¹ Id. 110, 2.

² Id. 24.

³ Gr. 104, 5.

⁴ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

⁵ Gr. 720, R. LXV.

⁶ Id. 54.

⁷ Id. 63.

⁸ Id. 51.

⁹ Gr. 704.

¹⁰ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

¹¹ Gr. 627, 1, 4th.

¹² Gr. 656.

¹³ Gr. 270.

¹⁴ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

¹⁵ Gr. 663, R. LVII.

¹⁶ Gr. 630.

¹⁷ Gr. 702.

¹⁸ Gr. 591, 3d.

¹⁹ Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

²⁰ Id. 96, 1.

²¹ Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

mis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas^a biennium sibi satis esse^b duxerunt; ¹ in tertium annum perfectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas^a Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi^c legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico,^d Catamantalēdis filio,^e Sequāno, cujus pater regnum in Sequānis multos annos^f obtinuērat, et a senātu Popūli Romāni amicus^g appellātus erat, ut regnum in civitate suā² occupāret,^h quod pater antē habuērat; itemque Dumnorigi^d Æduo, fratriⁱ Divitiaci, qui eo tempore¹ ³ principātum in civitate obtinēbat,^k ac maxīmē plebi^l acceptus erat, ut idem^m conarēturⁿ persuādet, eique^c filiam suam in matrimonium dat. ⁴ Perfacile^o factu^o esse,^b illis^d probat, conātā^m perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtentūrus esset: non esse dubium, quin^p ⁵ totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent: se^q suis copiis^r suoque exercitū illis^c regna conciliatūrum, confirmat. Hac oratione adducti, ⁶ inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant, et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos⁷ populos totius Galliae^s sese^q potiri posse⁸ sperant.

4. ⁹ Ea res ut est Helvetiis^t per ¹⁰ indicium enunciata, moribus^r suis Orgetorigem ex ¹¹ vinculis causam dicere cogerunt: ¹² damnatum poenam^u sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur.^v Die^l constituta causae dictionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam ¹³ familiam, ¹⁴ ad hominum^w millia decem, undique coegit; et omnes clientes, obæratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per eos, ne causam diceret,^x se eripuit. Cum civitas, ob eam

^a Id. 112, 7.^d Gr. 565, R. XL.^r Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^b Id. 94, 3.^k Gr. 160, 2.^s Gr. 486.^c Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^l Gr. 382, R. XVI.^t Gr. 522.^d Id. 63.^m Id. 19, 4.^u Gr. 423, Exc. III.^e Gr. 251, R. I.ⁿ Gr. 270.^v Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^f Gr. 565, R. XLI.^o Id. 114, 2.^w Gr. 104, 5.^g Gr. 319, R. V.^p Gr. 627, 3.^x Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^h Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^q Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

rem incitāta, armis jus suum exsequi conarētur,^a multitudi nemque hominum ex agris¹ magistrātus cogērent,^a Orgetōrix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut^c Helvetii arbitrantur, ²quin^b ipse sibi^d mortem conscivērit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihilo minūs Helvetii id, quod constituērant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.^e Ubi jam se^f ad eam rem parātos^g esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numēro^h ad duodēcim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, prāter quod^h secum portatūri erant, combūrent; ut, domumⁱ reditiōnis spe^k sublātā, paratiōres ad omnia pericūla subeunda^l essent:^m ⁴trium mensium molitaⁿ cibaria sibi^d quemque domoⁱ efferre jubent. Persuādent Raurācis,^d et Tulingis, et Latobrigis, finitimis, utl, eōdem^o usi consilio,^a oppidis suis vicisque exustis,^o unā cum iis profisciscantur:⁷ Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluērant, et in agrum Noricum transiērant Noreiamque oppugnārant, receptos^o ad se, socios^p sibi^d adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīno itinēra duo, quibus itineribus^q domo exire possent:^r unum^r per Sequānos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodānum,⁸ vix quā singūli^r carri ducerentur;^r mons autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facilē perpauci prohibēre possent:^u altērum per⁹ Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius,¹⁰ propterea quod Helvetiōrum inter fines, et Allobrōgum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodānus fluit, isque nonnullis locis^v ¹¹vado transitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrōgum est, proximumque Helvetiōrum finibus,^w Genēva. Ex eo oppido pons ad

^a Gr. 681, & 160, 2.

^b Gr. 627, 3.

^c Gr. 628.

^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^e Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^f Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^g Gr. 322.

^h Id. 37, 2.

ⁱ Gr. 558.

^k Gr. 690, R. LX. &

Id. 109.

^l Id. 112, 7.

^m Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

ⁿ Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

^o Id. 104, 1, 2.

^p Gr. 252.

^q Id. 37, 6.

^r Id. 19, *iter*, and

Gr. 251, R. I.

^s Id. 26, 2.

^t Gr. 655, and 626.

^u Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^v Gr. 611.

^w Gr. 382 R. XVI.

Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros,^a quodd nondum ¹ bono animo ^b in Populum Romanum viderentur,^c existimabant; vel vi coacturos,^a ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.^d Omnibus rebus ad profectiōnem comparatis,^e ² diem dicunt, quā die ^f ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: ³ is dies erat ³ ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, ⁴ Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.^h

7. Cæsari ¹ cum id nuntiātum esset,^k eos per Provinciam nostram iter facere conāri, maturat ² ab urbe proficisci, et, quāmaximis¹ potest itineribus, in ⁶ Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genēvam pervēnit: ⁷ Provinciæ ^m toti quāmaximum¹ militum numērum impērat (erat omnino in Galliā ulteriōre legio una); pontem, qui erat ⁸ ad Genēvam, jubet rescindi.ⁿ Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii ⁹ certiōres facti sunt, legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitātis,^o cujus legatiōnis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinēbant,^p qui dicērent,¹⁰ “sibi ^q esse ^r in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facere, propterea quodd aliud iter habērent ^c nullum: rogāre,^s ut ejus ¹¹ voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.”^t Cæsar, quodd memoriā tenēbat, Lucium Cassium Consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum, et ¹² sub jugum missum, ¹³ concedendum ^u non putābat: neque homīnes inimico animo,^b datā facultāte per Provinciam itinēris faciundi,^v temperatūros ab injuriā et maleficio existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset,^d dum milites, quos imperavērat, convenirent, legātis respondit, “diem se ad deliberandum sumtūrum; si quid vellent,^x ¹⁴ ante diem Idus Aprilis reverterentur.”^y

^a Id. 100, 1. ~^k Gr. 630.^r Id. 51, 5.^b Gr. 339, R. VII.^l Gr. 591, 3d.^s Id. 94, 4.^c Gr. 655.^m Gr. 501, R. XXIX. & ¹ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^d Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

Id. 5, 1.

^u Id. 113, Obs. & 8.^e Id. 104, 1.ⁿ Id. 90, 4.^v Id. 112, 2.^f Gr. 565, R. XL.^o Gr. 356.^w Gr. 656.^g Gr. 641.^p Gr. 312, R. i.^x Gr. 627, 2.^h Id. 110, 2.^q Gr. 394, R. ii.^y Id. 78, 3.ⁱ Gr. 522.

8. Interea eâ legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex Provinciâ convenērant, a lacu Lemanno, ¹ qui in flumen Rhodānum influit, ² ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis dividit, ³ millia ^a passuum decem novem murum, in altitudinem pedum ^b sedēcim, fossamque perdūcit. Eo opēre perfecto, ^c præsidia dispōnit, ^d castella commūnit, quò facilius, si ^e se invito transire conarentur, ^d prohibēre possit. ^e Ubi ea dies, quam constituērat cum legātis, venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, ^f negat, se ^f more ^g et exemplo ^g Popūli Romāni posse iter ulli ^h per Provinciam dare; et, si vim ⁱ facere conēntur, ^d prohibitūrum ^k ostendit. Helvetii, eâ spe ⁱ dejecti, ⁷ navibus ^g junctis, ratibusque ^g compluribus factis, alii vadis ^g Rhodāni, ⁸ quā minīma altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdū, sæpius noctu, si ⁹ per-rumpere possent, ^d conāti, opēris munitione ^g et militum concursu ^m et telis repulsi, hoc conātu ⁿ destitērunt.

9. Relinquebātur una per Sequānos via, quā, ⁸ Sequānis ^h invitīs, propter angustias ire non potērant. His ^h cūm suā ⁱ sponte persuadere non possent, ^d legātos ad Dumnorīgem Ædum mittunt, ut eo ¹⁰ deprecātore ^g a Sequānis impetrārent. ⁱ Dumnorix ¹¹ gratiā ^g et largitiōne apud Sequānos plurimum potērat, et Helvetiis ^h erat amicus, quòd ex eâ civitate Orgetorigis filiam, ¹² in matrimonium duxerat; et, cupiditate ^g regni adductus, ¹³ novis rebus ⁱ studēbat, et quā plurimas ^h civitates suo sibi ⁱ beneficio habere obstrictas volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequānis impētrat, ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiantur; obsidesque uti inter sese

^a Gr. 573, R. XLII. & ^h Gr. 501, R. XXIX. ^p Id. 30, 2.

Gr. 104, 5.

ⁱ Gr. 90, (§ 15) 12.

^q Gr. 231.

^b Gr. 832, R. VI.

^k Gr. 179, Note 1, &

^r Gr. 627, 1. 3d

^c Id. 104, 1, & 109.

Id. 100, 1.

^s Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^d Gr. 627, 2.

^l Gr. 613, R. LII.

^t Gr. 403.

^e Gr. 627, 1

^m Gr. 720, R. LXV

^u Gr. 591, 3d.

^f Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

ⁿ Gr. 611, (ab.)

^v Gr. 522.

^g Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^o Id. 110, 5.

dent, perficit: ¹ Sequāni, ² ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; ³ Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant.^a

10. ^a Cæsari renunciatur ^b Helvetiis ^c esse in animo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facere, qui non longē a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in Provinciā. Id si fiēret, ^d intelligēbat magno cum Provinciæ periculō futurum, ^e ut homīnes bellicōsos, Popūli Romāni inimicos, ^f locis ^g patentibus maximēque frumentariis finitimos habēret.^h Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, ⁱ quam fecerat, Titum Labiēnum legātum præsēcit: ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscribit, et tres, quæ circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit; et, quæ ^j proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes, et Graiocēli, et Caturigēs, locis superioribus occupatis, ^k itinēre ^l exercitum prohibēre conantur. Compluribus his prœliis pulsis, ^m ab Ocēlo, ⁿ quod est citeriōris Provinciæ extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Provinciæ die septimo ^o pervēnit; inde in Allobrōgum fines: ab Allobrogibus in Segusiānos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciam trans Rhodānum primi.^a

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxerant, et in Æduōrum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, cū se ^p suāque ^q ab iis defendere non possent, ^r legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt rogātum ^s auxilium: “ita se ^t omni tempore ^u de Popūlo Romano meritos esse, ut pæne in conspectu exercitūs nostri agri vastari, libēri eōrum in servitūtem abdūci, oppida ex-

^a Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^b Id. 100 Obs. & 14.

^c Id. 31.

^d Id. 51, 2.

^e Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^f Id. 19, (*negotia.*)

^g Gr. 394.

^h Id. 104, 2.

ⁱ Gr. 631.

^j Gr. 627, 2.

^k Gr. 611, (*in.*)

^l Id. 114, 1.

^m Gr. 179, Note 1.

ⁿ Gr. 565, R. XL.

^o Gr. 671, R. LVIII, &

^p Gr. 251, R. I.

^q Id. 19, (*populi.*)

Id. 94, 4.

^r Gr. 382, R. XVI

pugnari non debuērunt." ^a Eōdem tempore Ædui Ambarri, ¹ necessarii ^b et consanguinei Æduorum, Cæsarem certiorē faciunt, sese, ^c depopulatis agris, ^d non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere: item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fugā se ad Cæsarem recipiunt, et demonstrant, ² sibi ^e præter agri solum nihil ^e esse reliqui. Quibus ^f rebus ^h adductus Cæsar, non expectandum ^c sibi ⁱ statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnis ^d sociorum consumtis, in Santōnos Helvetii pervenirent.

12. ³ Flumen ^k est Arar, quod per fines Æduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, ⁴ incredibili lenitate, ^h ita ut oculis, ^h ⁱ in utram partem fluat, ⁱ judicari non possit. ⁶ Id Helvetii ratibus ^h ac lintribus ^h junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Cæsar certior ^m factus est, tres jam copiarum partes ⁿ Helvetios ^c id flumen ⁿ transduxisse, ^o quartam verò partem ^c citra flumen Ararim reliquam ^m esse; ⁷ de tertiā vigiliā cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit, quæ nondum flumen ^p transierat. Eos ⁸ impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eorum partem concidit: reliqui fugæ ^q sese mandarunt atque ⁹ in proximis sylvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: ^k nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo ^r exisset, ^s patrum nostrorum memoriā, ⁴ Lucium Cassium Consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive ^u casu, ^h sive consilio Deorum immortalium, quæ ^v pars civitatis Helvetiæ insignem calamitatem Populo ⁴ Romano intulerat, ea ¹⁰ princeps ^w pœnas persolvit. Quā ⁵ in re Cæsar non solum publicas, sed etiam

^a Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^b Gr. 251, R. I.

^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^d Id. 109, 2.

^e Gr. 394, R. II.

^f Gr. 332, R. VI.

^g Id. 88.

^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

ⁱ Gr. 699, R. LXI, &

Id. 113.

^k Gr. 319, R. V.

^l Gr. 627, 5.

^m Gr. 322.

ⁿ Id. 119, 1.

^o Id. 98, 2.

^p Gr. 613, R. LII.

^q Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^r Gr. 558, R. XXXIX.

^s Gr. 631.

^t Gr. 611, (in.)

^u Id. 124, 6.

^v Id. 43, & 37, 2d, 4.

^w Gr. 274.

privātas injurias ultus est, quòd ejus socēri Lucii Pisōnis^a avum, Lucium Pisōnem legātum,^a Tigurīni eòdem prœlio,^b quo^b Cassium,¹ interfecērant.

13. Hoc prœlio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiōrum ut²consequi posset,^c pontem in Arāre faciendum^d curat atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repentinò ejus adventu^e commōti, cūm id, quod ipsi diēbus^f viginti ægerrimè confecērant, ut flumen transirent,^g uno illum die^f fecisse intelligērent,^h legātos ad eum mittunt: cujusⁱ legatiōnis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello^b Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuērat. Is⁵ita cum Cæsāre agit: “Si pacem Popūlus Romānus cum Helvetiis faceret,^k in eam partem itūros¹ atque ibi futūros¹ Helvetios,^m ubi eos Cæsar constituissetⁿ atque esseⁿ voluisset: sin bello^o persēqui perseverāret,^k reminiscerēt^o et⁶vetēris incommōdi^p Popūli Romāni et pristinæ virtūtis^p Helvetiōrum. Quòd improvīsò unum pagum adortus esset,^q cūm ii, qui flumen transissent,^q suis^q auxilium ferre non possent,^h ne ob eam rem aut suæ magno opēre virtūti⁷tribuēret^o aut^r ipsos despiceret: se^m ita a patrīb^{us} majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte,^o quàm dolo^o aut insidiis, niterentur.ⁱ ⁸Quare ne committeret,^o ut is locus, ubi constitiassent,^q ex calamitatē Popūli Romāni et interneciōne exercitūs nomen capēret,ⁱ aut^r memoriā prodēret.”

14. ⁹His Cæsar ita respondit: “Eo sibiⁿ minus^m dubitatiōnis^v dari, quòd eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorāssent,^q memoriā tenēret: ^v atque eo^x gravius ferre, quo^x minùs merito^o Popūli Romāni accidissent; ¹⁰qui^v si alicujus

^a Gr. 251 R. I.^k Gr. 627, 2.^r Gr. 720, R. LXV.^b Gr. 611 (*in.*)¹ Gr. 179, Note 1.^o Gr. 469.^c Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^m Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^h Gr. 627, 1. 3d.^d Id. 108, 4.ⁿ Id. 90.ⁿ Gr. 522.^e Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^o Gr. 627, 1, 3d, & 632.^v Gr. 343, R. VIII.^f Gr. 565, R. XLL.^p Gr. 373, R. XIV. &^v Gr. 634.^g Gr. 636.

Id. 7, 1.

^x Id. 22, 4, or 44, 7.^h Gr. 631.^q Gr. 501, R. XXIX. &^v Id. 39.ⁱ Id. 38.

Id. 19.

injuriae sibi^a conscius fuisset,^b non fuisse^c difficile^d cavere,^e sed eo deceptum,^f quod neque commissum a se intelligeret,^f quare timeret;^f neque sine causa^g timendum^h putaret.ⁱ Quod si veteris contumeliae^b oblivisci vellet;^h numⁱ etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo^k invito iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent,^f quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent,^f memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur,^f quodque tam diu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur,^f eodem^l pertinere;^c consuesse enim Deosⁱ immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant,^m quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint,ⁿ his^o 7 secundiore interdu[m] res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere.^p Cum ea ita sint,^q tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi^r dentur,^b uti ea, quae polliceantur,ⁿ facturos intelligat,^q et si Aeduis^r de injuriis, quas ipsis^o sociisque eorum intulerint,ⁿ item si Allobrogibus^r satisfaciant,^b seseⁱ cum iis pacem esse facturum.” Divico respondit: “Ita Helvetios a majoribusⁿ suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consueverint: ^m ejus rei Populum Romanumⁱ esse^g testem.” Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postero die^r castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Caesar; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum^r habebat, praemittit, qui videant,^s quas in partes noctes iter faciant.^r Qui,^s 10 cupidius^{aa} novissimum agmen

^a Gr. 382, R. XVI.^b Id. 56, 3.^c Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^b Gr. 627, 2.^k Id. 110, 5.^d Gr. 897, R. III.^c Id. 51, 5.ⁱ Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^e Gr. 580.^d Gr. 270.^m Gr. 627, 1.^h Gr. 565, R. XL.^e Gr. 179, 6.ⁿ Gr. 656.^l Gr. 681, R. LIX.^f Gr. 634.^o Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^x Gr. 641.^g Id. 113, 8, (sibi.)^p Gr. 663, R. LVII.^y Gr. 627, 5.^h Gr. 373, R. XIV. &^q Gr. 631, & Id. 74, 1.ⁱ Id. 39, 5.

Id. 7, 1.

^r Gr. 522.^{aa} Id. 22, 3.

insecuti, aliēno loco cum equitatu Helvetiōrum praelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo praelio sublāti Helvetii, quōd quingentis^a equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulserant, audaciū8 subsistere, nonnunquam ex¹ novissimō agmine praelio^a nostros^b lacessere, cōpērunt. Cæsar suos^b a praelio continēbat, ac² satis habēbat in præsentiā^a hostem rapinis,^c pabulationibus,^c populationibusque, prohibēre. Ita dies^d circiter quindēcim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimū hostium agmen et³ nostrum primum^e non amplius^d quinīs^f aut senis millibus^g passuum interesset.

16. Interim quotidie Cæsar Æduos^h frumentum,^h quod essentⁱ publicē polliciti, flagitare:^k nam propter^l frigōra, quōd Gallia⁷ sub septentrionibus, ut antē dictum est, posita est, non modō frumenta in agris mātūra non erant, sed ne pabūli quidemⁱ satis magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem^o frumento,^m quod flumīneⁿ Arāre navibusⁿ subvexerat, propterea uti minū8 potērat, quōd iter ab Arāre Helvetii avertērant, a quibus discedere nolēbat. Diem ex die ducēre^k Ædūi;⁹ conferri,ⁿ comportari, adesse dicēre.^k Ubi¹⁰ se diutiū8 duci^o intellexit, et diem instāre,^o quo die^p frumentum militibus metiri oportēret;^q convocātis eōrum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiāco^r et Lisco,¹¹ qui summo magistratū^r præerat (quem Vergobretum appellant Ædūi, qui creatur annuus,ⁱ et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestātem,) graviter eos accūsāt, quōd, cū neque emi,^u neque ex agris sumi posset,^v tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevētur;^w præsertim cū magnā ex parte eōrum precī-

^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^b Gr. 508, R. XXX.^c Gr. 423 Exc. III.^d Id. 19, (*multes*.)^e Gr. 656.^f Gr. 251 R. I.^g Gr. 611, (*ab*.)^h Gr. 669.ⁱ Gr. 393, R. I.^j Gr. 565, R. XLI.^k Id. 121, Note 2.^l Gr. 274.^m Id. 19, (*agmen*.)ⁿ Gr. 484, R. XXVI.^o Id. 87.^p Gr. 107, 11, &^q Gr. 663, R. LVII.^r Gr. 631.^s Id. 26, 1^t Id. 96, 6.^u Gr. 655.^v Gr. 467, R. XXIV.^w Id. 37, Note 1, 6.^x Id. 19, (*tempora*.)

bus^a adductus bellum suscepērit: ^b multo^c etiam gravior, quod sit destitutus,^d queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratione^a Cæsaris adductus, quod^e antea ¹ tacuerat, proponit: "Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem ² plurimum valeat;^d qui ³ privati plus possint, quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosā atque improbā oratione^a multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant,^f quod præstare debeant.^g Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint,^h Gallorum, quam Romanorum imperia perferre, satius esse; neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint^h Romani, unā cum reliquā Galliā Æduisⁱ libertatem sint erepturi.^k Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quæque in castris gerantur,^l hostibus^m enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod ⁴ necessario rem coactus Cæsariⁱ enuntiari,^l intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit,ⁿ et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit,^l tacuisse."

18. Cæsar hac oratione^a Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem,^o ⁵ designari sentiebat: sed, quod ⁶ pluribus^p presentibus eas res jactari nolēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quærit ex ⁷ solo ea, quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secretò ab aliis quærit; repērit esse vera. "Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audaciā,^q magnā apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiā,^q cupidum rerum ^r novarum: complures annos^s portoria, reliquæque omnia Æduorum vectigalia, parvo pretio ⁸ redempta^t habere, propterea quod, illo licente,^p contra liceri audeat^l

^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^b Gr. 627, 2.

^p Gr. 690, R. LX, &

^b Gr. 630, & Id. 74.

¹ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

Id. 9.

^c Gr. 580.

² Gr. 170, 1, & 627, 3.

^q Gr. 339, R. VII, &

^d Gr. 655.

³ Gr. 634.

Id. 6, 1.

^e Id. 37, 2.

^m Gr. 522.

^r Gr. 349, R. IX.

^f Gr. 627, 1 3d, &

⁴ Gr. 627, 5, &

^s Gr. 565, R. XII.

Id. 77.

Id. 74, 2d.

^t Gr. 633.

^g Gr. 656.

^o Gr. 251, R. I.

nemo. His rebus^a et suam rem familiarem auxisse,^b et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse:^b magnum numerum equitatus suo sumtu^c semper alere^d et circum se habere:^d neque solum domi,^e sed etiam apud finitimas civitates^f largiter posse: atque hujus potentiae causam matrem in Biturigibus, hominibus^f illic nobilissimis,^g ac potentissimis, collocasse:^b ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere:^d sororem ex matre, et propinquas suas nuptum^h in alias civitates collocasse:^b favere etⁱ cupere Helvetiisⁱ propter eam affinitatem: odisse etiam suo nomine^k Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu^k potentia ejus diminuta,^k et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.^k "Si quid accadat^l Romanis,^m summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendiⁿ venire; imperio^o Populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat,^k gratiam desperare.^d Reperiebat etiam^p inquirendo^p Caesar, quod praelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus^q esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus" (nam^r equitatu,^r quem auxilio^s Caesari^s Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praerat), "eorum fugam reliquum esse equitatum perterritum."

19. Quibus^t rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones⁷ certissimae res accederent,^u quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset,^k quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset,^k quod ea omnia non modo^v injussu suo^v et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset,^k quod a magistratu Aeduorum^w accusaretur: satis esse causae^w arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret,^x aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.^x

^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ⁱ Gr. 403, R. V.

^b Id. 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d. ^k Gr. 634.

^c Gr. 581, R. XLIV. ^l Gr. 627, 2.

^d Id. 96, 2, & 94, 1, 2d. ^m Gr. 399, R. iv.

^e Gr. 558, R. XXXIX. ⁿ Id. 112, 5.

^f Gr. 501, R. XXIX. ^o Gr. 611, (sub.)

^g Id. 24, 1.

^p Gr. 705.

^h Gr. 714.

^q Gr. 565, R. XL.

^r Gr. 393, R. I.

^s Gr. 427, R. XIX.

^t Id. 38, 3.

^u Gr. 631.

^v Id. 29, 1.

^w Gr. 592, R. XLVI.

^x Gr. 627, 5.

His omnibus rebus ^a unum repugnabat, quod Divitiāci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se ¹ voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ^b ejus supplicio ^c Divitiāci animum offenderet, ^d verebatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam conareretur, ^e Divitiācum ad se vocari ^f jubet, et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem ^g suum, cui ^h summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul ⁱ commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ^j ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit, ^k petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ^l ipse de eo, ^m causam cognitam, statuatur, ⁿ vel civitatem statuere jubeat. ¹

20. Divitiācus multis cum lacrymis, Caesarem complexus, obaescere coepit, ⁵⁴ "ne quid gravius" in fratrem statuere: ¹ scire se, illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quam se, doloris ² capere, propterea quod, cum ⁶ ipse gratiam plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ⁷ ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus ⁸ opibus ⁹ ac nervis, non solum ad minuendam ⁴ gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore ³ fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ⁷ ei ¹ a Caesare gravius ^m accidisset, ² cum ⁶ ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, ¹ non suam voluntate factum; quae ex re futurum, ² ut totius Galliae animi a se averterentur." Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, ¹ Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus

^a Gr. 403, R. v.

^b Gr. 634

^c Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^d Gr. 627, 1.

^e Gr. 627, 4.

^f Id. 90, 4.

^g Gr. 251, R. I.

^h Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

ⁱ Gr. 627, 5.

^j Id. 124, 3.

^k Gr. 627, 1, 8d.

^l Id. 22.

^m Gr. 343, R. VIII.

ⁿ Id. 38,

^o Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

^p Id. 112, 7.

^q Gr. 899, R. iv.

^r Gr. 627, 2, & Id. 80, 2.

^s Id. 100, 2.

^t Id. 51.

^u Id. 74, 1st, 3.

regat, finem orandi faciat: ^a tanti ^b ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicæ injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. ^c Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem ¹ adhibet; quæ in eo reprehendat, ^d ostendit. quæ ipse intelligat, ^d quæ civitas queratur, ^d proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; ^e præterita ^f se ² Divitiaco ³ fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi ⁴ ³ custodes ponit, ut, quæ agat, ^d quibuscum loquatur, ^d scire possit. ^b

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte ⁴ consedissee ¹ millia ^k passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset ^d natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscere, ¹ misit. Renunciatum est, ⁵ facilem esse. ^m De tertiâ ⁶ vigiliâ Titum Labienum, ⁷ legatum pro ⁸ prætore, cum duabus legionibus, ⁹ et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ^d ostendit. Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris ⁿ peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullæ, et postea ¹⁰ in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus præmittitur.

22. ¹¹ Primâ luce, ^o cum summus ^p mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, ^q ¹² ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, ^q neque, ut postea ex captivis compertit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset; ^q Considius, ¹³ equo ^r admisso, ad eum accurrit: dicit, montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; ^q id se a Gallicis armis ^t atque insignibus cognovisse. ^u Cæ-

^a Gr. 627, 1, 3d, & 632. ^g Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^o Gr. 565, R. XL.

^b Gr. 339, R. VII, or ^h Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^p Gr. 273, & Id. 17, 2.

Gr. 495, R. XXVIII. ¹ Id. 98, 2.

^q Gr. 631.

^c Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^k Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^r Gr. 690, R. LX.

^d Gr. 627, 5, & Id. 74, 9. ¹ Gr. 643, 4th.

^u Id. 96, 6, & 94, 1, 2d.

^e Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^m Id. 96, 6.

^t Gr. 545.

^f Id. 19.

ⁿ Gr. 349, R. IX.

^u Id. 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

sar suas copias in proximum collem subducit,^a aciem instruit.^a Labiēnus, ut erat ei^b praeceptum^c a Cæsare ne praelium committeret,^d nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra^e visae essent,^f ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret,^g monte occupato nostros expectabat praelioque abstinēbat. ¹ Multo denique die per exploratores Cæsar cognovit, et montem a suis tenēri,^h et Helvetios castra movisse,ⁱ et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset,^j ²pro viso sibi renunciāsse.¹ Eo die, ³quo^k consuērat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria, ab eorum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diēi,¹ quod omnino biduum supererat, cum ⁴exercitu frumentum metiri oporteret,^m et quod a Bibracte, oppido Æduorum longè maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibusⁿ passuum octodēcim abērat, ⁵rei^o frumentariae prospiciendum^p existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte^q ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii, ⁶decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus^r nunciatur. Helvetii, seu,^r quod timore perterritos Romanos ⁷discedere a se existimarent,^s eo magis, quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis,^t praelium non commovissent;^u sive eo, quod re^t frumentaria intercludi posse ⁸confiderent;^u commutato^v consilio atque itinere converso,^v nostros a novissimo agmine insēqui ac lacessere cœperunt.

24. Postquam id ⁹animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit,^a equitatumque, ¹⁰qui sustineret^v hostium impetum, misit. Ipse intērim, in colle medio,^w

^a Gr. 157, 3.

¹ Id. 98, 2.

^p Id. 118.

^b Gr. 522, R. iii.

^k Id. 37, 2d, 4, &

^q Gr. 553, R. XXXVII

^c Id. 51.

Note 1.

^r Id. 124, 6.

^d Gr. 627, 1, 3, &

¹ Gr. 592, R. XLVI.

^s Gr. 629.

Id. 121, 3.

^m Gr. 631 & 423.

^t Gr. 611, (ab.)

^e Gr. 611, (ad.)

Exc. III.

^u Id. 104, 1.

^f Gr. 656.

ⁿ Gr. 467, R. XXIV, &

^v Gr. 643, 4th.

^g Gr. 627, 1, 2.

Id. 6, 3.

^w Gr. 273, & Id. 17.

^h Id. 96, 6.

^o Gr. 403, R. v.

triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quatuor veteranarum, ita, uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in ¹ Gallia citeriore proximè conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocaret; ac totum montem hominibus ^a ² compleri, ^b et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, ^b et ³ eum ab his, qui in superioriore acie constituerant, muniri ^b jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt: ipsi, ⁴ confertissimâ acie, ^c rejecto ^d nostro equitatu, phalange factâ, ^d ^e sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Cæsar, primum ⁶ suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis ^d equis, ut, æquato omnium ⁷ periculo, spem fugæ tolleret, cohortatus suos, prælium commisit. Milites, e loco superioriore pilis missis, ^d faciliè hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Eâ disjectâ, ^e gladiis ^f dstrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis ⁸ magno ad pugnam erat ^h impedimento, ⁸ quòd, pluribus eorum ⁸ scutis ^e uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, ⁱ neque evellere, neque, sinistrâ impedîtâ, ^e satis ⁹ commode pugnare poterant; multi ut, diu jactato brachio, præoptarent ^k scutum manu ^l emittere, et ¹⁰ nudo corpore ^f pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et ¹¹ pedem referre, et quòd mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eò se recipere cœperunt. Capto monte, ^e et succedentibus nostris, ^e Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus ^f circiter quindécim ¹² agmen hostium claudēbant, et novissimis ⁸ præsidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere ^m aperto aggressi, circumvenēre: et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et prælium redintegrare cœperunt. Romani conversa signa ¹³ bipartito intulerunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summotis resisteret; ⁿ tertia, ut venientes exciperet. ⁿ

^a Gr. 524, R. v.

^f Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^k Gr. 627, 1, 1st, (ita.)

^b Id. 94, 3, or 90, 4.

⁸ Gr. 427, R. XIX, &

^l Gr. 613, R. LII.

^c Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

Id. 8, 1.

^m Gr. 611, (ab.)

^d Id. 104, 1.

^h Id. 51, 1.

ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^e Id. 109.

ⁱ Gr. 631.

26. Ita ¹incipiti praelio ^adiu atque acriter pugnatum est.^b Diutius cum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent,^c ²alteri ^dse, ut cœperant, in montem recepērunt; alteri ^dad impedimenta et carros suos se contulērunt. Nam hoc toto praelio,^e cum ab ³horâ septimâ ad vesp̄um pugnatum sit,^e ⁴aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. ⁵Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecērant, et e loco superiore in nostros ^fvenientes tela conjiciēbant,^f et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, ⁶matras ac tragulas subjiciēbant ^gnostrosque vulnerābant.^g Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis ^hcastrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia, atque unus e filiis ⁱcaptus est. Ex eo praelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuērunt, eaque totâ nocte ^ocontinenter iērunt: nullam partem ^onoctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto ^kpervenērunt, cum, et ^lpropter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum,^f nostri, triduum ^omorati, eos sequi non potuissent.^c Cæsar ad Lingonas literas nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento, neve aliâ re juvarent: ^m ⁷qui si juvissent,ⁿ ⁸se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi cœpit.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopiâ adducti, legatos de ditione ^had eum miserunt. ⁹Qui,^o cum eum in itinere convenissent,^c seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos ^pin eo loco, quo tum essent,^q suum adventum expectare ^rjussisset, paruērunt. Eo postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent,^s poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur, et conferun-

^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

⁸ Gr. 160, 2.

^m Gr. 627, 2.

^b Id. 65, 5.

^h Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

^o Id. 89, 5.

^c Gr. 680.

ⁱ Gr. 360.

^p Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^d Id. 27, Obs. 10.

^k Gr. 565, R. XL.

^q Gr. 656.

^e Gr. 565, R. XLI, & 566.

^l Id. 124, 1.

^r Id. 94, 3, or 90, 4.

^m Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^s Gr. 636, R. i.

^f Id. 19, (milites.)

tur, nocte intermissâ, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus^a appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne, armis traditis, supplicio afficerentur,^b sive spe salutis inducti, quod, in tantâ multitudine deditiôrum, suam fugam^c aut^d occultari,^d aut^e omnino ignorari posse existimarent,^e primâ nocte ex castris Helvetiôrum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanôrum contendêrunt.

28. Quod^f ubi Cæsar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his,^h uti conquirentⁱ et reducèrent, si sibi purgati^d esse vellent,^k imperavit: reductos^l in hostium numëro^m habuit: reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditiônem accêpit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, revertiⁿ jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domi^o nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent,^o Allobrogibus^h imperavit, ut iis^p frumenti copiam facerent:ⁱ ipsos^c oppida vicosque, quos incendêrant, restituere jussit. Id eâ maxime ratione^q fecit, quod noluit, eum locum,^c unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare;^r ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiôrum fines transirent,^b et finitimi^a Galliæ provinciæ^r Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Æduis,^h quod egregiâ virtute^s erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent,ⁱ concessit: quibus^h illi agros dedêrunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque^t ipsi erant, receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiôrum⁹ tabulæ repertæ sunt, 10 litëris Græcis confectæ et ad Cæsarem relatæ, quibus^u in tabulis nominatim¹¹ ratio confecta erat, qui numërus domo exisset^v

^a Gr. 819, R. V.^h Id. 63.^p Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^b Gr. 627, 1, 2d.ⁱ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^q Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^k Gr. 627, 2.^r Gr. 382, R. XVI.^d Id. 87, 6.^l Id. 19, (eos.)^s Gr. 339, R. VII.^e Gr. 655.^m Id. 94, 3, or 90, 4.^t Gr. 728.^f Id. 17, 1.ⁿ Gr. 558, R. XXXIX.^u Id. 37, Note 1, 6.^g Id. 38, 4.^o Gr. 636 R. i.^v Gr. 627, 5.

eōrum, qui arma ferre possent:^a et item separatim puēri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum^b omnium rerum summa erat, ^ccapitum Helvetiōrum millia^c ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingōrum millia triginta sex, Latobrigōrum quatuordēcim, Rauracōrum viginti tria, Boiōrum triginta duo: ex his, qui arma ferre possent,^a ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium^d fuērunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, ^ecensu^e habito, ut Cæsar imperavērat, repertus est numērus millium centum et decem.

30. Bello^e Helvetiōrum confecto, totius fere Galliæ legātī, principes civitātum, ad Cæsārem^ggratulātum^f convenērunt: “intelligēre sese,^g tametsi, ^hpro veteribus Helvetiōrum injuriis Popūli Romāni, ab iis pēnas bello repetisset,^h tamen eam remⁱ non minūs ex usu terræ Galliæ, quā Popūli Romāni accidissee: propterea quōd eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliæⁱ bellum inferrent,^k imperiōque potirentur,^k locumque domicilio^l ex magnā copiā deligērent,^k quem ex omni Galliā opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicāssent,^a reliquasque civitatē stipendiarias habērent.” Petiērunt, “ut sibi^m concilium totius Galliæ in diem certam indicēre, idque Cæsāris voluntāte facēre,ⁿliceret:” sese^o habēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ab eo petēre vellent.” Eā re permissā, diem concilio^l constituērunt, et jurejurando, ^pne^p quis enunciāret,ⁿnisi quibus^q commūni consilio mandātum esset, inter se sanxērunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitātum, qui antē fuērunt ad Cæsārem, revertērunt, petieruntque, uti sibi secrētō de suā^r omniumque salūte cum eo agēre liceret.”

^a Gr. 630.

^b Id. 38.

^c Gr. 104, 5.

^d Id. 19.

^e Id. 109, 2.

^f Id. 114.

^g Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^h Gr. 627, 3.

ⁱ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^k Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^l Gr. 427, R. XIX, and

432, (sibi.)

^m Gr. 409, R. XVIII.

ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^o Gr. 656.

^p Id. 121.

^q Gr. 522, R. iii.

^r Id. 29, 1.

Eā re impetrātā,^a sese^b omnes flentes Cæsari^c ad pedes projecērunt: ¹non minùs se ^did contendēre et laborāre, ne ea, quæ dixissent,^e enunciarentur,^f quān uti ea, quæ vellent, impetrārent,^f propterea quòd, si enunciātum esset,^g summum in cruciātum se ventūros vidērent."^h Locūtus est pro his Divitiācus Æduus:ⁱ "Galliæ totius factiōnes^d esse duas: ²harum alterius principātum tenēre Æduos,^d alterius Arvernos. ³Hi cū tantopēre de potentātu inter se multos annos contendērent,^k factum esse^l uti ab Arvernīs Sequanisq̃ue Germāni mercēde arcesserentur."^m ⁴Horum primò circiter millia^d quindēcim Rhenumⁿ transisse: posteaquam agros, et cuitum, et ⁵copias Gallōrum homīnes feri ac barbāri ad-amāssent,^h transductos plures:^d nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et viginti millium numērum: cum his Æduos^d eorumque clientes semel atque itērum armis contendisse;^o magnam calamitātem pulsos accepisse,^o omnem nobilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amisisse.^o Quibus^p præliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suā virtūte, et Popūli Romāni hospitio atque amicitia, plurimum antē in Galliā potuissent,^h coactos esse Sequānis obsides dare, nobilissimos civitātis,^q et jurejurando civitātem obstringēre, sese neque obsides repetitūros,^r neque auxilium a Popūlo Romāno imploratūros,^r ⁶neque recusatūros,^r quo minùs perpetuò sub illōrum ditiōne atque imperio essent.^s ⁷Unum se esse ex omni civitāte Æduōrum, qui addūci^t non potuērit,^h ut jurāret,^u aut liberos suos obsides daret.^u Ob eam rem se^d ex civitāte profugisse,^o et Romam^v ad senātum venisse, auxilium postulātum,^w quòd solus neque jurejurando^x neque

^a Id. 109.ⁱ Id. 94, 4.^r Id. 100, 2.^b Id. 81, 1.^k Gr. 631.^s Gr. 627, 3.^c Gr. 380 & 381.^l Id. 51, 4.^t Id. 87.^d Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^m Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^u Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^e Gr. 656.ⁿ Gr. 613, R. LII.^v Gr. 553, R. XXXVII^f Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^o Id. 98, 2.^w Id. 114, 1.^g Gr. 627, 2.^p Id. 38, 9.^x Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^h Gr. 634.^q Gr. 355, R. X. & 356.

obsidibus^a teneretur.^b Sed pejùs victoribus Sequāniis,^c quàm Æduis^c victis, accidisse:^d propterea quòd Ariovistus, rex Germanòrum, in eòrum finibus consedisset,^b tertiamque partem agri Sequāni, qui esset^e optimus totius Galliæ, occupavisset,^a et nunc de altèrà parte tertià Sequānos decedère jubèret;^b propterea quòd, paucis mensibus^f antè, Harūdum millia hominū viginti quatuor ad eum venissent;^b ¹ quibus^g locus ac sedes pararentur.^e ² Futurum^h esse paucis annis^f uti omnes ex Galliæ finibus pellerentur,ⁱ atque omnes Germāni Rhenum transirent:^j ³ neque enim conferendum^k esse Gallicum cum Germanòrum agro, neque hanc consuetudinē victis cum illā comparandam.^k Ariovistum autem, ⁴ ut semel Gallòrum copias praelio vicèrit,^e quod praelium^l factum sit^b ad Magetobriam, superbè et crudeliter imperāre, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscère, ⁵ et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edère, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit:^m hominem esse barbàrum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperiaⁿ diutius sustinèri. ⁶ Nisi si quid in Cæsare Populòque Romāno sit auxilii,^o omnibus Gallis^p idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecèrint,^e ⁷ ut domo emigrant,ⁱ aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germānis, petant,ⁱ fortunamque, quæcumque accidat,^e experiantur.ⁱ “Hæc si enunciata Ariovisto sint,^m non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint,^o gravissimum supplicium sumat.^q Cæsarem vel auctoritate^a suā^r atque exercitū, vel recenti victoriā, vel nomīne Populi Romāni deterrère posse, ne major multitudo Germanòrum Rhenum transducatur,^q Galliāque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriā posse defendère.”

^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^b Id. 51, 5.^a Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^b Gr. 634, & Id. 74.¹ Gr. 627, 1 4th.^o Gr. 343, R. VIII.^c Gr. 409, R. XVIII.^k Id. 108.^p Gr. 699, R. LXI.^d Id. 98, 2.¹ Id. 37, Note 1 6.^q Gr. 627, 3.^e Gr. 655.^m Gr. 627, 2, &^r Id. 29, 1.^f Gr. 565, R. XL.

Id. 74, 1st.

^a Gr. 627, 1.^g Gr. 522, R. iii.

32. Hâc oratiōne ab Divitiâco ¹habîtâ, omnes, qui adērant, magno fletu auxilium a Cæsare petere cōpērunt. Animadvertit Cæsar, unos ² ex omnibus Sequānos ³ nihil eārum rerum facere, ⁴ quas cetēri facerent; ⁵ sed tristes, capite ⁶ demisso, terram intuēri. Ejus rei causa quæ esset, ⁷ mirātus, ⁸ ex ipsis quæsiuit. Nihil Sequāni respondere, ⁹ sed in eādē tristiâ taciti ¹ permanere. Cū ab iis sæpius quæreret, ² neque ullam omnino vocem ³ exprimere posset, ⁴ idem Divitiâcus Æduus respondit: ⁵ “Hoc esse miserōrem gravioremque fortunam Sequanōrum, ⁶ præ ¹ reliquōrum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri, neque auxilium implorare auderent, ² absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset ³ horrerent: ⁴ propterea quod reliquis ⁵ tamen ⁶ fugæ facultas darētur; Sequānis ⁷ vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, ⁸ quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, ⁹ omnes cruciātus essent perferendi.”

33. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar Gallōrum animos verbis ¹ confirmāvit, pollicitusque est, ² sibi ³ eam rem curæ futuram: magnam se habere spem, et beneficio ⁴ suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis facturum. Hâc oratiōne habîtâ, concilium dimisit; et ⁵ secundum ea multæ res eum hortabantur, quare sibi ⁶ eam rem ⁷ cogitandam ⁸ et suscipiendam putāret; ⁹ in primis quod ¹ Æduos, fratres consanguineosque sæpenumero ab Senātu appellātos, in servitute atque in ditione vidēbat Germanōrum tenēri, ² eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequānos intelligēbat: quod ³ in tanto imperio Populī Romāni turpissimum ⁴ sibi ⁵

¹ Id. 16, 4.

² Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

³ Id. 96, 2.

⁴ Gr. 656.

⁵ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

⁶ Gr. 627, 5.

⁷ Id. 106, 1.

⁸ Gr. 669.

¹ Gr. 274.

² Gr. 631.

³ Gr. 612.

⁴ Gr. 627, 2.

⁵ Gr. 522, R. & Id. 19.

⁶ Gr. 523, R. XXXIII,

& 531.

⁷ Id. 108.

⁸ Gr. 427, R. XIX, &

Id. 8.

⁹ Id. 100, 2.

¹ Gr. 629.

² Id. 37, Note 3.

³ Gr. 322.

⁴ Gr. 382, R. XVI.

et reipublicæ esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, Populo Romano periculösium vidēbat: neque sibi^a homines feros ac barbāros temperatūros^b existimābat, quin, cūm omnem Galliam occupāssent,^c ut antē Cimbri Teutonīque fecissent,^d in Provinciam exirent,^e atque inde in Italiam contendērent;^f præsertim cūm Sequānos a Provinciā nostrā Rhodānus dividēret.^g Quibus^h rebusⁱ quā^l maturrinē^l occurrēdum^h putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spirītus, tantam arrogantiam sumsērat, ut ferendus non videretur.^k

34. Quamobrem^a placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legātos mitteret,^l qui ab eo postulārent,^m uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio dicēret:ⁿ velle sese de reipublicā^a et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legatiōni^o Ariovistus respondit: ⁴Si quid ipsi^p a Cæsāre^o opus esset, sese ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid^q ille se^r velit, illum^s ad se venire oportere. Præterea se neque sine exercitū in eas partes Galliæ venire audere, quas Cæsar possidēret;^t neque exercitū^u sine magno commeātu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahere posse: sibi autem mirum vidēri,^v quid in suā Galliā, quam bello vicisset,^v aut Cæsāri,^w aut omnino Populo Romano^x negotii^x esset.”

35. His responsis ad Cæsārem relātis, iterum ad eum Cæsar legātos cum his mandātis mittit: “Quoniam tanto suo^y Populique Romāni beneficio affectus (cūm in consulātu suo rex atque amicus a Senātu appellātus esset), hanc sibi

^a Id. 31 Note.^l Gr. 591, 3d.^r Gr. 611, (a.)^b Id. 100, 1.^k Gr. 627, 1, 1st, &^s Gr. 423, Exc. III.^c Gr. 631.

Id. 70.

^t Gr. 634.^d Gr. 656.^l Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^v Id. 70 & Obs.^e Gr. 627, 3.^m Gr. 643, 4th.^w Gr. 655.^f Gr. 630.ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^x Gr. 394, R. ii.^g Id. 38.^o Id. 63.^y Gr. 343, R. VIII.^h Gr. 699, R. LXI, &^p Gr. 382 R. XVI.^z Id. 29, 1.

700, & Id. 113, (sibi.)

^q Gr. 458.^z Gr. 399, R. iv.

Populōque Romāno ¹gratiam referret,^a ut in colloquium venire invitātus gravarētur,^b ²neque ^cde commūni re ³dicendum sibi^d et cognoscendum putāret;^b hęc ^eesse, quę ab eo postulāret:^f primū, ne ⁴quam homīnum multitudīnem ampliū trans Rhenum in Galliam transduceret:^g deinde obsides, quos habēret^f ab Æduis, redderet,^h Sequanisque permittēret,^g ut, quos illi habērent,^f voluntāte ejus reddere illis liceret;^h neve Æduos ⁵injuriā lacesseret,^g neve his sociisve eōrum bellum inferret:^h si id ita fecisset,^h sibiⁱ Populōque Romāno perpetuam gratiam^e atque amicitiam cum eo futūrā:^k si non impetrāret,^h sese ^e(quoniam Marco Messālā, Marco Pisōne Consulibus, Senātus censuisset,^a uti quicumque Galliam provinciamⁱ obtinēret,^m ⁶quod commōdoⁿ reipublicę facere posset,^f Æduos ceterosque amīcos Popūli Romāni defenderet),^g sese Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum.”^k

36. Ad hęc Ariovistus respondit: “Jus esse belli, ut, qui^o vicissent,^m iis,^p quos vicissent,^f quemadmodum vellent,^q imperārent:^r ⁷item Popūlum Romānum^e victis^p non ad alterius pręscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre consueſse.” Si ipse Popūlo Romāno non pręscribēret,^h quemadmodum suo^e jure uterētur;^q non ⁸oportere sese a Popūlo Romāno in suo jure impediri. Æduos^e sibi,^t quoniam belli fortunam tentāssent^a et armis congressi ac superāti essent,^a stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Cæsarem^e injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret.^a Æduis^v se obsides redditūrum non esse, neque iis,^v neque eōrum sociis^v injuriā bellum illatūrum, si in eo manērent,^h quod convenisset,^f stipendiumque quotannis pendērent: si

^a Gr. 634.^b Gr. 627, 2.^p Gr. 408, R. v.^b Gr. 627, 1.ⁱ Gr. 394, R. II.^q Gr. 627, 5.^c Gr. 242, 1.^k Id. 100, 2.^r Id. 98, 6.^d Gr. 699 & 700, Id. 113, 5.ⁱ Gr. 251, R. L.^s Id. 31, Note.^m Gr. 636, R. i.^t Gr. 382, R. XVI.^e Gr. 671, R. LVIII.ⁿ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^u Gr. 645, R. iii.^f Gr. 650, R. vi.^o Id. 37, 3.^v Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^g Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

id non fecissent,¹ longè iis^a fraternum nomen Populū Romāni abfutūrum. ²Quod^b sibi Cæsar denunciāret, se Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum; neminem^c secum sine suā^d perniciē contendisse.^e Cūm vellet,^f congregerētur;^g intellectūrum, quid invicti Germāni, exercitatissimi in armis, qui^h inter annos quatuordēcim tectum non subissent,^h ⁴virtute possent.”ⁱ

37. Hæc eōdem tempore Cæsari^k mandāta referebantur, et legāti ab Æduis et a Treviris veniebant: ^lÆdui^l questum,^m quod Harūdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportāti essent,ⁿ fines eōrum popularentur,ⁿ sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse: ^oTreviri^o autem, pagos centum Suevōrum ad ripas Rheni consedissee, qui Rhenum transire conarentur;^p iis^a præesse Nasuam et Cimmerium fratres: Quibus^a rebus Cæsar vehementer commōtus, maturandum^c sibi^c existimāvit, ⁷ne, si nova manus Suevōrum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset,^p minùs facilè resisti posset.^q Itaque^r re frumentariā, quā^r celerrimè potuit, comparātā,^s magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cūm^s tridui viam^v processisset,^f nunciātum est ei,^h Ariovistum^c cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum^t Verontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanōrum,¹⁰ contendere,^h triduique viam^v a suis finibus processisse.^o Id ne accideret,^q magno opère sibi^c præcavendum^c Cæsar existimābat: namque omnium rerum, quæ ad bellum usui^v erant,¹¹ summa erat in eo oppido facultas; idque naturā loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam¹² ad ducendum bellum daret^x fac-

^a Gr. 393, R. I.

^b Id. 38, Note 11.

^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^d Id. 31, Note.

^e Id. 98, 2.

^f Gr. 631.

^g Gr. 634.

^h Gr. 655.

ⁱ Gr. 627, 5.

^k Gr. 522, R. III.

^l Gr. 308.

^m Gr. 712, R. LXIII.

ⁿ Id. 38.

^o Id. 113.

^p Gr. 627, 2.

^q Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^r Gr. 591, 3d.

^s Id. 104, 1.

^t Id. 112, 7.

^u Id. 96, 2.

^v Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^w Gr. 427, R. XIX, & 432.

^x Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

uitatem, propterea quòd flumen Dubis ¹ ut circiño circumductum, pæne totum oppidum ^a cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est ² non amplius pedum ^a sexcentòrum, quà flumen intermittit, mons ³ continet magnà altitudìne, ^b ita ut radices ejus montis ex utrâque parte ripæ fluminis contingant. ^c Hunc ^d murus circumdatus arcem ^d efficit et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Cæsar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, ^e occupatòque oppido, ibi præsidium collocat. ^e

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontiònem, rei frumentariæ commeatûsque causâ, moratur, ^e ex percunctatiõe nostròrum vocibusque Gallòrum ac mercatòrum, qui ingenti magnitudìne ^b corpòrum Germānos, incredibìli virtùte ^b atque exercitatiõe in armis esse prædicābant, ^f sæpenumëro sese, ^g cum eis congressos, ne ^h vultum quidem atque aciem oculòrum ferre potuisse, ^h tantus subitò timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut non mediocrìter omnium mentes animosque perturbāret. ^c Hic ⁱ primùm ortus est a ⁷ Tribūnis militum, præfectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitiae causâ Cæsarem secuti, non magnum in re militari usum habebant: ⁸ quorum ^k alius, ^l alià ^m causâ illatâ, quam ⁿ sibi ⁿ ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dicèrent, ^o petebant, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret: ^p nonnulli, pudore adducti, ut timoris suspiciònem vitarent, ^q remanēbant. Hi neque ⁹ vultum fingere, neque interdum lacrymas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis, aut suum ^r fatum querebantur, ^f aut cum familiaribus suis ^r commūne pericūlum miserabantur. ^f Vulgò totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. ^f Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, ^s qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites ^s centurionesque, quique equitatu præerant, pertur-

^a Gr. 332, R. VI, & 336, (*spatio*.)

^b Gr. 339, R. VII, & Id. 6, 1.

^c Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^d Gr. 440.

^e Gr. 157, 3.

^f Gr. 160, 1.

^g Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^h Id. 98, 2.

ⁱ Id. 19, (*timor*.)

^k Gr. 355, R. X.

^l Gr. 318.

^m Id. 25, 1, & Gr. 275.

ⁿ Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^o Gr. 655.

^p Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^q Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^r Id. 30, 2.

^s Gr. 251, R. I.

babantur. ¹ Qui ^a se ex his minùs timēdos existimāri ^b volēbant, non se hostem verēri, ^c sed angustias itinēris et magnitudinem silvārum, quæ intercedērent ^d inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut ^e satis commōdè supportāri posset, timēre ^e dicēbant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsāri renunciābant, cū castra movēri ac signa ferri jussisset, ^f non fore ^g dicto audientes milites, nec propter timōrem signa latūros.

40. Hæc cū animadvertisset, ^h convocāto ⁱ consilio, omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis ^j centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit; "primū, quōd, aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur, ^k ^l sibi ^m quærendum aut cogitandum putārent. ⁿ Ariovistum, se ^o consule, cupidissimè Popūli Romāni amicitiam appetisse; ^p cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessūrum judicāret? ^q ^r Sibi ^s quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis ^t postulātis atque æquitāte conditionum perspectā, eum neque suam, ^u neque Popūli Romāni gratiam repudiātūrum. Quōd si, furōre atque amentitiā impulsus, bellum intulisset, ^v quid tandem vererentur? ^w aut cur de ^x suā virtūte, aut de ipsius diligentia, desperārent? ^y Factum ejus hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cū, Cimbris et Teutōnis a Caio Mario pulsus, non minorem laudem exercitus, quā ipse imperātor, meritus videbatur; ^z factum etiam nuper in Italiā ^{aa} servili tumultu, quos ^{ab} tamen aliquid ^{ac} usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevārent. ^{ad} Ex quo judicāri posset, ^{ae} quantum habēret ^{af} in se boni constantia; propterea quōd, quos ^{ag} aliquamdiu inermos sine causā timuissent, hos postea armatos

^a Id. 87, (ii.)

^b Id. 94, 3.

^c Id. 96, 1.

^d Gr. 634.

^e Id. 121, 7, & Gr.

633.

^f Id. 80, 1.

^g Id. 104, 1.

^h Gr. 627, 5.

ⁱ Id. 113.

^j Id. 110, 2.

^k Id. 98, 2.

^l Gr. 522, R. iii.

^m Id. 29, 1.

ⁿ Gr. 627, 2.

^o Gr. 653, 1st.

^p Gr. 287.

^q Gr. 442.

^r Id. 43.

ac victōres superāssent. Denique hos^a esse eosdem, quibus-
cum sæpenumēro Helvetii congressi, non solūm in ¹ suis, sed
etiam in illōrum finibus, plerumque superārint,^b qui tamen
pares esse nostro exercitū^c non potuērunt. Si ² quos adver-
sum prœlium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret,^d hos, si quæ-
rērent,^e reperire posse, diuturnitāte belli defatigātis Gallis,^f
Ariovistum,^g cū multos menses^h castris se ac paludibus
tenuisset, ³ neque sui potestātem fecisset, desperantes jam
de pugnā et dispersos subitō adortum, magis ⁴ ratiōneⁱ et
consilio, quā virtūte,^j vicisse. Cui^k ratiōni^l contra homi-
nes barbāros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hāc, ne ipsum^m
quidem sperāre, nostros exercitusⁿ capi posse. ⁵ Qui^o suum^p
timōrem in rei frumentariæ simulatiōnem angustiasque itin-
erum conferrent,^q facere arroganter, cū aut de officio im-
peratōris desperāre, aut præscribere viderentur.^r Hæc sibi^s
esse curæ;^t frumentum Sequānos,^u Leucos, Lingōnas sub-
ministrāre;^v jamque esse in agris frumenta matūra: de
itinere ipsos^w brevi tempore judicatūros.^x ⁶ Quod^y non
fore dicto audientes milites, neque^z signa latūri dicantur,^{aa}
nihil^{ab} se eā re commovēri: ⁷ scire enim, quibuscumque ex-
ercitus dicto audiens non fuērit,^{ac} aut, malē re^{ad} gestā, fortū-
nam defuisse; aut, aliquo facinore^{ae} comperto, avaritiam
esse conjunctam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felici-
tātem Helvetiōrum bello, esse perspectam.^{af} ⁸ Itaque se,^{ag}
quod in longiorem diem collatūrus esset,^{ah} repræsentatūrum,^{ai}
et proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra motūram, ut quā
primū intelligere posset,^{aj} utrū^{ak} apud eos pudor atque
officium, an timor valeret.^{al} Quod si præterea nemo sequatur,^{am}

^a Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^b Id. 87, (eos.)^c Id. 98, 6.^d Gr. 634.¹ Id. 80, 2.² Gr. 214, 8.^e Gr. 382, R. XVI.^m Gr. 631.³ Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^f Gr. 627, 2.ⁿ Gr. 427, R. XIX.^v Id. 124, 14.^g Id. 109, 2.^o Id. 94, 8, & 96,^w Gr. 627, 5.^h Gr. 565, R. XLI.

Exc. II.

^z Gr. 627, 2, and Id.ⁱ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^p Id. 100, 2.

77, 5.

^j Id. 88.^q Id. 38, Note 11.^x Gr. 242, 1.^k Gr. 378, R. XV.^r Gr. 442.

tamen se cum solâ decimâ legiōne itūrum, de quâ non dubitâret; ^a sibi que eam ^b prætoria cohorte ^c futuram." Huic legiōni ^c Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè, et propter virtutem ^d confidēbat maximè.

41. Hâc oratiōne habîtâ, mirum in modum conversæ ^e sunt omnium mentes, summâque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi ^e innâta ^d est, ^e princepsque ^f decima legio, per tribunos ^e militum, ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset; ^f seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmâvit. Deinde reliquæ legiōnes, per tribunos ^e militum et primorum ordinum centuriōnes, ^g egērunt, uti Cæsari ^h satisfacērent: ⁱ se neque unquam dubitâsse, ^k neque timuisse, neque de summâ belli suum ^l iudicium, sed imperatoris ^m esse, existimâsse. ^k Eōrum ⁿ satisfactiōne acceptâ, et itinēre ^o exquisito per Divitiacum, ^p quod ex aliis ei ^q maximam fidem habēbat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum ducēret, ^r de quartâ vigiliâ, ut dixērat, profectus est. Septimo die, cū iter non intermittēret, ^o ab exploratoribus ^s certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris ^p millibus ^q passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognito Cæsaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: ^r quod ^s antea de colloquio postulâsset, ^t id per se fieri licēre, quoniam propiūs accessisset: ^u seque id sine periculō facēre posse existimâre. Non respuit conditionem Cæsar: jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cū id, quod antea petenti denegâsset, ^v ultro polliceretur; ^w magnamque in spem veniēbat, pro suis ^x tantis Populi que Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis ^y postulâtis, ^z fore, ^{aa} uti pertinaciâ de-

^a Gr. 655.

^b Gr. 480.

^c Gr. 403.

^d Gr. 164, Note.

^e Id. 112, 5.

^f Gr. 274.

^g Gr. 530.

^h Gr. 397, R. iii.

ⁱ Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^k Id. 98, 2.

^l Id. 29, 1.

^m Gr. 364, R. XII.

ⁿ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^o Gr. 631.

^p Id. 19, (copiis.)

^q Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^r Id. 43.

^s Gr. 634.

^t Gr. 656.

^u Gr. 678, & Id. 160,

14.

sistēret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Interim, cū saepe ultro citrōque legāti inter eos mitterentur,^a Ariovistus postulāvit, ¹ ne quem peditem ad colloquium Cæsar adducēret: ^b verēri^c, ne ^d per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret: ^e aliā ratiōne se non esse ventūrum. Cæsar, quod neque colloquium^e interpositā causā ² tolli^f volēbat, neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitatu^g committere audēbat, ³ commodissimum^h esse statuit, ⁴ omnibus equisⁱ Gallis equitibus^k detractis, eò legionarios milites legiōnis decimæ, cui quā maxime confidēbat, imponere,^l ut præsidium quā amicissimum, ⁵ si quid opus facto esset, habēret.^m Quodⁿ cū fieret,ⁿ non irridiculē quidam ex militibus^o decimæ legiōnis dixit: “plus, quā pollicitus esset,^p Cæsarem ei facere; pollicitum, se in cohortis prætoris loco decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ⁶ nunc ad equum rescribere.”

43. Planities erat magna, et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus æquo ferē spatio^q ab castris utrisque abērat. Eò, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Legiōnem Cæsar, quam equis^r devexerat, passibus^s ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo^t constitērunt. Ariovistus, ⁷ ex equis ut colloquerentur^b et, præter se, denos^u ut ad colloquium adducērent,^b postulāvit. ⁸ Ubi eò ventum est,^t Cæsar, initio oratiōnis, sua Senatūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, “quod rex appellātus esset a Senātu, quod munera amplissima missa: quam^v rem et paucis^w contigisse,^v et pro magnis hominum officiis consuēsse tribui” docēbat: “illum, cū neque aditum,

^a Gr. 631.¹ Id. 109.^q Gr. 573, R. XLII.^b Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^k Gr. 522, R. iii.^r Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^c Id. 94, 4.^l Gr. 663, R. LVII, and 664, Note.^s Gr. 107, 11, & Id. 26, 1.^d Gr. 633, Id. 121, 6.^m Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^t Id. 67, Note 5.^e Gr. 671, R. LVIII.ⁿ Id. 38.^u Id. 19 and Gr. 399,^f Id. 96, Exc. II, 11.^o Gr. 360.

R. iv.

^g Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^p Gr. 656.^v Id. 98, 2.^h Gr. 270.

neque causam postulandi justam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate suâ ac Senâtûs ea præmia consecutum." Docēbat etiam, "quâm vetēres, quâmq̃ue justæ causæ¹ necessitudinis ipsis² cum Æduis intercederent,³ quæ Senâtûs consulta, quoties, quâmq̃ue honorifica in eos facta essent:⁴ ut omni tempore totius Galliæ principatûm Ædûi tenuissent,⁵ prius etiam quâm nostram amicitiam appetissent:⁶ Popûli Români hanc⁷ esse consuetudinem, ut socios⁸ atque amicos non modò⁹ sui nihil deperdere,¹⁰ sed gratiâ, dignitatē, honore¹¹ auctiores velit¹² esse: quod vero ad amicitiam Popûli Români attulissent, id iis¹³ eripi, quis pati posset?"¹⁴ Postulavit deinde eâdem, quæ legâtis in mandâtis dedērat, "ne aut Æduis, aut eorûm sociis bellum inferret;¹⁵ obsides redderet: si nullam partem Germanorûm domum¹⁶ remittere posset,¹⁷ at ne¹⁸ quos ampliùs Rhenum transire pateretur."

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Cæsaris pauca respondit; de suis virtutibus multa prædicavit: "Transisse¹ Rhenum² sese, non suâ sponte, sed³ rogatum⁴ et arcessitum⁵ a Gallis; non sine magnâ spe, magnisque præmiis, domum propinquosque reliquisse;⁶ sedes habere⁷ in Galliâ, ab ipsis concessas;⁸ obsides ipsorûm voluntate datos; stipendium capere⁹ jure belli, quod victores victis¹⁰ imponere consuērint; non sese¹¹ Gallis, sed Gallos¹² sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliæ civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse,¹³ ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno prælio fusas ac superatas esse; si iterum experiri velint,¹⁴ iterum paratum sese decertare; si pace¹⁵ uti velint, iniquum esse, de stipendio recusare, quod suâ voluntate ad id tempus pependērint.

¹ Gr. 399, R. iv.

² Gr. 627, 5.

³ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

⁴ Gr. 627, 4.

⁵ Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

⁶ Id. 90.

⁷ Gr. 634.

⁸ Gr. 522, R. iii.

⁹ Gr. 558, R. XXXIX.

¹⁰ Gr. 627, 2.

¹¹ Id. 98, 2.

¹² Gr. 613, R. LII.

¹³ Id. 101, 4.

¹⁴ Id. 96, 2.

¹⁵ Gr. 501, R. XXIX,

& Id. 19.

¹⁶ Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

Amicitiam Populi Romani sibi^a ornamento^a et praesidio, non detrimento, esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per Populum Romanum stipendium remittatur,^b et dedititii subtrahantur,^b non minus libenter sese recusaturum Populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit.^c ¹ Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam transducatur,^d id se sui muniendi,^e non Galliae impugnandae^e causam facere; ejus rei testimonium^f esse,^e quod, nisi rogatus, non venerit,^e et quod bellum non intulerit,^e ² sed defenderit.^e Se prius in Galliam venisse, quam Populum Romanum.^h Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum Populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines^g egressum. ³ Quid sibi vellet?^e Cur in suas possessiones veniret?^e Provinciam suam^h hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsiⁱ concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret,^b sic item nos esse iniquos,^h qui in suo jure se interpellaremus.^k ⁶ Quod^l fratres^f a Senatu Aeduos appellatos diceret,^e non se tam barbarum,^m neque tam imperitum^m esse rerum,ⁿ ut non sciret,^e neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis^p auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent,^q auxilio^r Populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari, simulatam Cæsarem amicitiam, quod exercitum in Galliam habeat,^e sui opprimendi^e causam habere. Qui^s nisi decedat^b atque exercitum deducat^b ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum: quod si eum interfecerit,^b multis^r sese nobilibus^t principibusque Populi Romani gratum esse facturum; id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum^u habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque ami-

^a Gr. 427, R. XIX.^b Gr. 470, 1st.^p Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^b Gr. 627, 2.^l Gr. 409, R. XVIII.^q Gr. 655.^c Gr. 634.^k Gr. 645, R. iii.^r Gr. 484, R. XXVI.^d Gr. 655.^l Id. 38, 11, Note.^s Id. 39.^e Id. 112, 5.^m Gr. 322.^t Gr. 382, R. XVI.^f Gr. 319, R. V.ⁿ Gr. 349, R. IX.^u Gr. 683.^g Id. 51.^o Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

citiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset,^a ac liberam possessionem Galliae sibi^b tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et, quaecumque^c bella geri vellet,^d sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum."

45. Multa ab Caesare¹ in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset,^e et "neque suam,^f neque Populi Romani consuetudinem^g pati, uti optime meritos socios desereret:^h neque se judicare, Galliam potius esse Ariovisti,ⁱ quam Populi Romani.^j Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus^k Populus Romanus ignovisset,^l neque in provinciam redegisset;^m neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimumⁿ quodque tempus^o spectari oporteret,^p Populi Romani justissimum^q esse in Gallia imperium: si judicium^r Senatūs observari oporteret,^s liberam^t debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus^u uti^v voluisset."

46. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari^o nuntiātum est, equites^g Ariovisti^h propius tumulum accedere,^p et ad nostros adequitare,^p lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit^q seque ad suos recipit,^q suisque^k imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent.^h Nam, etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu praerium^s fore videbat, tamen committendum^r non putabat, ut, pulsus hostibus, dici posset,^s eos^s ab se⁶ per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in⁷ vulgus militum elatum est, ⁸quā arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset,^e impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent^e eaque res colloquium ut diremisset:^e multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitu⁹ injectum est.

^a Gr. 627, 2.^b Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^c Gr. 293.^d Gr. 634.^e Gr. 627, 5.^f Id. 29, 1.^g Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^h Gr. 627, 1, 3d.ⁱ Gr. 364, R. XII.^k Gr. 403, R. v.^l Gr. 655.^m Gr. 322.ⁿ Gr. 484, R. XXVI.^o Gr. 522, R. iii.^p Id. 96, 2.^q Gr. 157, 3.^r Id. 113, & Gr. 671.^s Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Cæsarem legātos mittit,^a velle^b se de his rebus, quæ inter eos agi cœptæ, ^c neque perfectæ essent,^c agere cum eo: uti aut itērum colloquio diem constituēret;^d aut, si id minùs vellet,^e ex suis aliquem ad se mittēret.^d Colloquendi Cæsari^f causa visa non est; et eo magis, quòd pridie ejus diēi^g Germāni retinēri non poterant, ^h quin^h in nostrosⁱ tela conjicērent. Legātum ex suisⁱ sese magno cum periculō ad eum missūrum, et hominibus feris objectūrum, existimābat. Commodissimum visum est, Caium Valerium Procillum, Caji Valerii Cabūri filium,^j summā virtūte^k et humanitāte adolescentem^l (cujus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitatē^m donātus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicæ scientiam, quā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā consuetudinēⁿ utebātur, et quòd in eo ^o peccandi Germānis^o causa non esset,^p ad eum mittere, et Marcum Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovisti usus erat. His^q mandāvit, ut, quæ dicēret^r Ariovistus, cognoscērent^d et ad se referrent.^d Quos^s cū apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset,^t exercitū suo præsente, conclamāvit: "Quid ad se venīrent?^c An^u ^v speculandi causā?" Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catēnas conjecit.

48. Eōdem die castra promōvit, et millibus^v passuum sex a Cæsaris castris sub monte consēdit. Postridie ejus diēi^g præter castra Cæsaris suas copias transduxit, et millibus^v passuum duōbus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio,ⁿ uti frumento commeatūque, qui ex Sequānis et Æduis supportarētur,^r Cæsarem intercluderet.^c Ex eo die dies continuos

^a Id. 94, 1, 2d, & 4.^b Gr. 627, 3, & Id. 78, ^p Gr. 655.^b Id. 96, 2.

7, Note.

^q Gr. 501, XXIX.^c Gr. 634.ⁱ Id. 19.^r Gr. 656.^d Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^k Gr. 339, R. VII.^s Id. 38.^e Gr. 627, 2.^l Gr. 251, R. I.^t Gr. 631.^f Id. 70.^m Gr. 524, R. v.^u Id. 56, 3d.^g Gr. 592, R. XLVI.ⁿ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^v Gr. 573, R. XLII.^o Gr. 394 R. ii.

quinque Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet^a Ariovistus prælio contendere^b ei^c potestas non deesset.^d Ariovistus his omnibus diebus^e exercitum castris continuit; equestri prælio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc^f erat pugnae, quo se Germāni exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex: totidem numero^g pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi; ^h quos ex omni copia singuli singulos,ⁱ suae salutis causa, delegerant. Cum his in præliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius,^k concurrerant: si qui,^l graviore vulnere accepto, equo decidérat, circumstiterant: ^m si quod erat longius prodeundum,ⁿ aut celerius recipiendum,^o tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut, júbis^p equorum sublevati, ^q cursum adaequarent.^r

49. Ubi eum^a castris se tenere Cæsar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur,^b ultra eum locum, ^c quo in loco^d Germāni consederant, circiter passus^e sexcentos ab eis, castris^f idoneum locum delegit, aciemque triplici instructa, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse,^g tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus^h sexcentos, ut dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sexdecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, ⁱ quæ^j copiae nostros perterrèrent^k et munitione prohiberent. Nihilò secius Cæsar, ut antè constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare,^l tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum: quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

^a Gr. 627, 2.^b Id. 22.^c Id. 37, 6, Note 1.^d Gr. 394, R. ii.^e Gr. 128.^f Gr. 602, R. XLVIII.^g Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^h Id. 113, 2.ⁱ Gr. 382, R. XVI.^j Gr. 565, R. XLI.^k Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^l Id. 90, 4.^m Gr. 319, R. V.ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^o Id. 40, 4.^p Gr. 535, R. XXXIV. ^q Gr. 671, R. LVIII. ^r Gr. 643, 4th.^s Id. 26.

50. Proximo die,^a ¹ instituto ^b suo, Cæsar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque ² a majoribus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque ^c pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire ^d intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quæ castra minora oppugnaret,^e misit: acriter utrinque usque ad vespærum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus,^f in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quæreret ^g Cæsar, quam ob rem Ariovistus prælio non decertaret,^h hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānos ea consuetudo esset,ⁱ ut matres familiæ eorum ² sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent,^k utrum prælium committi ⁴ ex usu esset,^h nec ne: eas ita dicere, ⁵ “Non esse ¹ fas, Germānos superare, si ante novam lunam prælio contendissent.”^m

51. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar præsidio ⁿ utrisque castris, quod ^o satis esse visum est, reliquit; ⁶ omnes alarios in conspectu hostium ⁷ pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudīne militum legionariōrum pro hostium numēro valēbat, ut ⁸ ad speciem alariis uteretur.^p Ipse, triplici instructā acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariō Germāni suas copias castris eduxerunt, ⁹ generatimque constituerunt paribusque intervallis Harūdes, Marcomānos, Triboccos, Vangiōnes, Nemētes, Sedusios, Suēvos, omnemque aciem suam ^q ¹⁰ rhedis ^b et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fugā relinqueretur.^p ¹¹ Eō muliēres imposuerunt, quæ in prælium proficiscentes milites passis crinibus flentes implorābant, ne se in servitūtem Romānis traderent.^r

^a Gr. 565, R. XL.^g Gr. 631.ⁿ Gr. 427, R. XIX.^b Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^h Gr. 627, 5.^o Id. 87, 2, (id.)^c Gr. 501, R. XXIX,ⁱ Gr. 655.^p Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

& Id. 68, 5.

^k Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^q Id. 30, 2.^d Id. 96, 2.^l Id. 51.^r Gr. 627, 1, 3d, & Id.^e Gr. 643, 4th.^m Gr. 627, 2.

121, 2.

^f Id. 109, 2.

52. Cæsar ¹ singulis ^a legionibus ^b singulos legatos et quæstorem præfêcit, uti eos testes suæ quisque virtutis haberet.^c Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem ² minimè firmam hostium esse animum adverterat, prælium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi ^d non daretur.^e Rejectis pilis,^f cominus gladiis pugnatum est: at Germâni, celeriter ex consuetudine suâ ³ phalange ^g factâ, impetus gladiorum excepērunt. Reperti sunt complures ^f nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent,^h et scuta manibus revellērent,ⁱ et desuper vulnerarent.^j Cùm hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudinē ^b suorum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cùm animadvertisset ¹ Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu ^k præerat, quod ⁴ expeditior erat, quàm hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris ¹ subsidio ^l misit

53. Ita prælium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertērunt, ⁵ neque prius fugere destitērunt, quàm ad flumen Rhenum millia ^m passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenērunt.ⁿ Ibi perpauci aut, viribus ^o confisi, transnatāre contendērunt, aut, linitibus inventis, sibi ^b salutem reperērunt. ⁶ In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus,^p eā profūgit: reliquos omnes consecuti equites nostri interfecērunt. Duæ fuērunt Ariovisti uxōres, una ^q Sueva natione, quam ab domo secum eduxerat; altēra Norica, regis Vocionis soror,^q quam in Galliā ^r duxerat, a fratre missam: utræque in eā fugâ periērunt. ⁸ Duæ filiæ ^r harum, altēra ^r occisa, altēra ^r capta est. Caius Valerius Proculus,

^a Id. 26.^f Id. 17.^m Gr. 602, R. XLVIII.^b Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^g Gr. 638.ⁿ Gr. 627, 4.^c Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^o Gr. 408, R. v.^d Id. 112, 1.ⁱ Gr. 631.^p Id. 105, 1.^e Id. 109, & Gr. 690, R. LX.^k Gr. 393 R. i.^q Gr. 251, R. I.^l Gr. 427, R. XIX.^r Gr. 257.

cùm a custodibus in fugâ trinis catēnis^a vinctus traherētur,^b
¹ in ipsum Cæsārem, hostes equitatu^a persequentem, incidit
 Quæ^c quidem res Cæsāri^d non minōrem, quā ipsa victo-
 ria,^e voluptātem attūlit; quòd homīnem honestissimum pro-
 vincia Gallia, suum familiārem^f et hospitem, ereptum e
 manibus hostium, sibi^g restitutum vidēbat, neque ejus ca-
 lamitāte^a de tantā voluptāte et gratulatiōne quicquam for-
 tūna deminuērat. Is, se præsente,^h de se ter sortibus^a con-
 sultumⁱ dicēbat, utrū^k igni statim necarētur,^l an in aliud
 tempus reservarētur: sortium^m beneficio^a se esseⁿ incolū-
 mem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus, et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc praelio trans Rhenum nunciāto, Suevi, qui ad ri-
 pas Rheni venērant, domumⁿ reverti cōpērunt: quos Ubii,
 qui^o proximi^o Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecūti, mag-
 num ex his numērum occidērunt. Cæsar, unā æstāte^p duō-
 bus mājimis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quā tempus
 anni postulābat, in hiberna in Sequānos exercitum deduxit:
 hibernis^d Labiēnum præposuit: ipse^q in citeriōrem Galliam
 ad conventus agendos^q profectus est.

^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^g Gr. 522, R. iii.^m Id. 96, 2.^b Gr. 631.^h Id. 110, 5.ⁿ Gr. 558, R. XXXIX.^c Id. 38, 2.ⁱ Gr. 179, 6 & Id.^o Gr. 611, (ad.)^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

98, 2.

^p Gr. 565 R. XLI.^e Gr. 469.^k Id. 124, 14.^q Id. 112, 7.^f Gr. 251, R. I.^l Gr. 627, 5.

BOOK II.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Confederacy of the Belgæ. Cæsar's war with them—Chap. 1–14. II. War with the Nervii—Chap. 15–28. III. War with the Aduatici—Chap. 29–33. IV. Expedition of Publius Crassus into Armorica—Chap. 34. V. Transactions subsequent to the reduction of the Belgæ—Chap. 35.

1. ¹ CUM esset Cæsar in citeriøre Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti suprà demonstravimus, ² crebri ad eum rumôres afferebantur, literisque item Labiëni certior fiēbat, omnes Belgas, quam ³ tertiam esse Galliæ partem ⁴ dixerāmus, contra Populum Romanum conjurāre, ⁵ obsidesque inter se dare: ⁶ conjurandi has esse causas: primū, quòd vererentur, ⁷ ne, ⁸ omni pacatâ Galliâ, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur: ⁹ deinde, quòd ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, ¹⁰ partim qui, ut Germānos diutius in Galliâ versari noluērant, ita Populi Romani exercitum hiemāre atque inveterascere in Galliâ molestè ferēbant; ¹¹ partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis ¹² imperiis studēbant: ¹³ ab nonnullis etiam, quòd in Galliâ a potentioribus ¹⁴ atque his ¹⁵ qui ad ¹⁶ conducendos homines facultates habēbant, vulgò regna occupabantur, qui minùs facillè ¹⁷ eam rem in imperio nostro consēqui potērant.

2. Iis nuntiis literisque commōtus, Cæsar duas legiōnes in citeriøre Galliâ novas conscripsit, et, ¹⁸ in ita æstāte, in interiōrem Galliam qui deducēret, ¹⁹ Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cū primū pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit: ²⁰ dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis ²¹ erant, uti ea, quæ apud eos gerantur, ²² cognoscant, ²³ seque de his rebus certiōrem faciant.¹

^a Gr. 289.

^b Id. 96, 2.

^c Gr. 638.

^d Gr. 655.

^e Gr. 656.

^f Gr. 408, R. v.

^g Id. 19, (*hominibus*.)

^h Id. 112, 7.

ⁱ Gr. 643, 4th.

^k Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^l Gr. 627 1, 3d.

Hi constanter omnes nunciavērunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum condūci. Tum verò dubitandum non existimāvit, ¹quin ad eos proficiscerētur.² Re frumentariā provisā, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindēcim ad fines Belgārum pervēnit.

3. Eò cūm de improvīso ³celeriusque omnium opiniōne⁴ venisset, Remi, qui proximī Galliæ ex Belgis⁵ sunt, ad eum legātos, Iccium et Antebrogium, primos civitatīs,⁶ misērunt, qui dicērent,⁷ se suāque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem Popūli Romāni permittēre:⁸ ⁹neque¹⁰ se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra Popūlum Romānum omnino conjurāsse: paratosque esse et obsīdes dare, et imperāta¹¹ facēre, et oppīdis recipēre, et frumento ceterisque rebus juvāre: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium¹²furōrem, ut ne Suessiōnes quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eōdem jure¹ et eisdem legīb²us utantur,³ unum imperium unumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant,⁴ deterrēre potuērīnt,⁵ quin cum his consentīrent.⁶

4. Cūm ab ⁷his quæreret, quæ civitatēs, ⁸quantæque in armis essent,⁹ et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germānis: Rhenumque antiquitus transductos, propter loci fertilitātem ibi consedissee, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolērent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutōnos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingrēdi prohibuērīnt.¹⁰ Quā ex re fiēri, uti eārum rerum memoriā magnam sibi auctoritatem, magnosque spīritus in re militāri sumērent.¹¹ De numero eōrum ¹²omnia se habēre explorāta,¹³ Remi dicēbant;

^a Gr. 627, 3.⁵ Id. 124, 5.^m Gr. 627, 3, & Id. 78,^b Gr. 467, R. XXIV.^h Id. 19, (*negotia*.)

7, Note.

^c Gr. 360.ⁱ Gr. 484, R. XXVI.ⁿ Gr. 627, 5.^d Gr. 356.^k Gr. 643, R. iv.^o Gr. 655.^e Gr. 643, 4th.^l Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^p Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^f Gr. 675.^q Gr. 683.

propterea quòd propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit,^a cognoverint.^b Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute,^c et auctoritate,^c et hominum numero,^c valere: hos posse conficere armata millia centum: pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi^d postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos, latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostram etiam memoriâ¹ Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum^e magnae partis harum regionum, tum^e etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuerit:^b nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc, propter justitiam prudentiamque, totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero^c duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem^f Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur^h longissimèque absint:^b quindécim millia Atrebatres: Ambiani decem millia: Morinos viginti quinque millia: Menapios novem millia: Calètes decem millia: Velocasses et Veromandos totidem: Aduatucos viginti novem millia, Condrusos, Eburones, Ceraesos, Pæmānos, qui^d uno nomine Germāni appellantur,^g arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

5. Cæsar, Remos cohortatus^g liberaliterque oratione persecutus, omnem senatum^h ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsidesⁱ ad se adduci jussit. Quæ^k omnia ab hisⁱ diligenter^g ad diem facta sunt. Ipse, Divitiacum Æduum^j magno opere cohortatus, docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit,^a manus hostium distineri,^m ne^g cum tantâ multitudine uno tempore configendum sit.ⁿ Id fieri posse, si suas copias Ædui in fines Bellovacorum intro-

^a Gr. 627, 5.^f Id. 19, (*militēs*.)^k Id. 38.^b Gr. 634.^g Gr. 653, 2d.^l Gr. 530.^c Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^h Id. 90, 4.^m Id. 94, 3.^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX.ⁱ Gr. 251, R. I.ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^e Id. 124, 8.

duxerint,^a et eorum agros populāri cœperint.^a His mandātis, eum ab se dimittit. Postquā omnes Belgārum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venīre^b vidit, neque jam longē abesse ab his, quos misērat, exploratoribus,^c et ab Remis cognōvit, flumen^d Axōnam, quod est in extrēmīs Remōrum finibus, exercitum^d transducere maturāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. ¹Quæ^e res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniēbat, et post eum quæ^f essent, tuta ab hostibus reddēbat, et, commeātus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine pericūlo ad eum portāri posset,^g efficiēbat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi præsidium ponit, et in altērā parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legātum cum sex ²cohortibus reliquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodēcim vallo,^h fossāque ³duodeviginti pedum,ⁱ munire jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remōrum, nomīne^k Bibrax, abērat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impētū^b Belgæ oppugnare cœperunt. Ægrē eo die^l sustentātum est.^m ⁴Gallōrum eādē atqueⁿ Belgārum oppugnatio est hæc. Ubi, circumjectā multitudīne homīnum totis mœnibus^o undīque lapīdes in murum jaci cœpti sunt, murusque defensoribus^p nudātus est, testudīne factā portas^q succēdunt murumque subruunt. ⁵Quod tum facilē fiēbat. Nam, cū tanta multitudo lapīdes ac tela conjicerent, ⁶in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.^r Cū finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, Remus, summā nobilitate^l et gratiā inter suos, qui tum oppido ⁷præerat, unus ex his qui legāti de pace ad Cæsārem venērant, nuncios ad eum mittit,^s nisi subsidium sibi^o submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

7. Eō ⁸de mediā nocte Cæsar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuncii ab Iccio venērant, Numīdas et Cretas sagittarios, et

^a Id. 79.^g Gr. 627, 1, 3d.ⁿ Gr. 728.^b Id. 89, 3.^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^o Gr. 522, R. iii.^c Gr. 611, (ab.)ⁱ Gr. 339, R. VII.^p Gr. 524, R. v.^d Id. 119, 1.^k Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^q Gr. 402.^e Id. 38, 2.^l Gr. 565, R. XLI.^r Gr. 394, R. ii.^f Gr. 286, 4th, (loca.) ^m Id. 66.^s Id. 94, 4.

funditōres Baleāres, subsidio ^a oppidānis mittit: quorum ad-
ventu et Remis, ^b cum spe defensiōnis, studium propugnandi
accessit, et hostibus ^c eādē de causā spes potiundi ^d oppidi
discessit. Itāque, paulisper apud oppidum morāti, ^e agrōs-
que Remōrum depopulāti, ^f omnibus vicis aedificiisque, ^g quos
adire potērant, incensis, ad castra Cæsāris omnibus copiis
contendērunt, ^h et ab ⁱ millibus ^j passuum minūs duōbus cas-
tra posuērunt; quæ castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabā-
tur, ampliūs millibus ^k passuum octo in latitudīnem patēbant.

8. Cæsar primò, et propter multitudīnem hostium, et
propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis, ^l prælio supersedēre
statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus præliis, quid hostis vir-
tute posset, et quid nostri auderent, ^m sollicitationibus peri-
clitabātur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiōres intellexit, loco ⁿ
pro castris, ad aciem instruendam natūrā opportūno atque
idoneo (quòd is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex
planitie editus, tantum ^o adversus in latitudīnem patēbat,
quantum loci ^p acies instructa occupāre potērat, atque ^q ex
utrāque parte latēris dejectus habēbat, ^r et, frontem ^s leniter
fastigātus, paulatim ad planitiem redibat), ab utrōque latere
ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum ^t
quadringentōrum; et ^u ad extrēmas fossas castella constit-
uit, ibique ^v tormenta collocāvit, ne, cū aciem instruxisset,
hostes, ^w quòd tantum multitudīne potērant, ab lateribus pug-
nantes ^x suos circumvenire possent. ^y Hoc facto, duābus le-
gionibus, ^z quas proximè conscripsērat, in castris relictis, ut,
^{aa} si quā opus esset, subsidio ^{ab} duci possent, ^{ac} reliquas sex
legiōnes pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas co-
pias ex castris eductas instruxērunt.

^a Gr. 427, R., & 429.

^s Gr. 578.

^m Gr. 538.

^b Gr. 399, R. iv.

^h Gr. 467, R. XXIV,

ⁿ Gr. 339, R. VII.

^c Gr. 611, (ab.)

& Id. 6, 3.

^o Id. 17, 2.

^d Id. 112, 5.

ⁱ Gr. 611, (in.)

^p Id. 101, 1.

^e Id. 105, 1.

^j Id. 44, 3.

^q Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^f Gr. 291, & 613, R. LII.

^k Gr. 343, R. VIII.

^r Id. 109, 2.

9. ¹ Palus erat non magna inter nostrum ^a atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes ² expectabant nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos ^c aggredierentur, ^b parati in armis erant. Interm praelio equestri inter duas acies contendebarunt. ^d Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, ^e secundiore equitum praelio nostris, ^e Cæsar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra ^f demonstratum est. Ibi vadis ^f repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, ^g castellum, cui ^h præerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscindērent; ⁱ ^h si minùs potuissent, ^g agros Remorum popularentur, ⁱ qui magno nobis ^k usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatūque nostros prohibērent.

10. Cæsar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum, et levis armaturæ ^l Numidas, funditores ^m sagittariosque, pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. ^d Hostes ⁶ impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos, audacissimè transire conantes, multitudinē telorum repulerunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando ⁿ oppido, et de flumine transeundo, ⁿ spem se fefellisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causā viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere cepit, concilio convocato ^f constituerunt, optimum esse, domum ^o suam quemque reverti, ut, ⁷ quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ^p ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ^q et potius in suis, quàm in alienis finibus, docerentur, ^q ^q et domesticis copiis ^r rei frumentariæ uterentur. ^q

^a Id. 29, 1.^f Id. 109.^m Id. 119, 1.^b Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^g Gr. 627, 2.ⁿ Id. 112, 8.^c Id. 19, (eos.)^h Gr. 393, R. i.^o Gr. 558, R. XXXIX.^d Id. 65.ⁱ Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^p Gr. 656.^e Gr. 380, *Rule*, & Id. ^k Gr. 427, R. XIX.^q Gr. 627, 1, 4th.

19.

^l Gr. 339, R. VII.^r Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, ¹ hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quòd Divitiacum atque Æduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare ^a cognovērant. ² His ^b persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur, ^c neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigiliâ ^d magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris ^e egressi, ^f nullo certo ordine neque impio, ^g cùm sibi ^h quisque primum itinēris locum petēret, et domum ⁱ pervenire properāret, fecērunt, ut consimilia fugæ profectio viderētur. ^j Hâc re ^k statim, Cæsar, per speculatores cognitâ, ^l insidias veritus, quòd, quâ de causâ discederent, ^m nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris ⁿ continuit. Primâ luce, ^o confirmatâ re ^p ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen morarētur, ^q præmiserit. His ^r Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos præfecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsēqui jussit. Hi, novissimos adorti, et multa millia ^s passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, ^t cùm ab extrēmo agmine, ad quos ^u ventum erat, ^v consistērent, ^w fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinērent; ^x prioresque (quòd abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ullâ necessitatē neque imperio continerentur), exaudito clamore, ^y perturbatis ordinibus, ^z omnes in fugâ sibi præsidium ponērent. ^{aa} Ita sine ullo periculo, ^{ab} tantam ^{ac} eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium: sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castrâ, ut erat imperatum, recepērunt.

12. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar, priusquàm se hostes ex terrore ac fugâ recipērent, ^{ad} in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et, magno itinēre ^{ae} confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinēre oppug-

^a Id. 96, 2.

^b Gr. 522, R. iii.

^c Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^d Gr. 565, R. XL.

^e Gr. 611, & 615.

^f Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^g Gr. 558, R. XXXIX. ^h Id. 67, 5, Note,

ⁱ Id. 109.

^j Gr. 627, 5.

^k Gr. 643, 4th.

^l Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^m Gr. 292.

ⁿ Gr. 631.

^o Gr. 655.

^p Id. 44, 3.

^q Gr. 627, 4.

hāre conātus, quōd ¹ vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiēbat propter latitudinem fossæ murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnāre non potuit. Castris munitis, ² vineas agere, quæque ad oppugnandum usui ³ erant, comparare cœpit. Intērim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudo in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis ⁴ ad oppidum actis, ⁵ aggere jacto, ⁶ turribusque constitutis, magnitudine ⁷ opērum, quæ neque vidērant antē Galli neque audiērant, et celeritate Romanōrum permōti, legātos ad Cæsarem de deditiōne mittunt, et, ⁸ petentibus Remis ⁹ ut conservarentur, ¹⁰ impētrant.

13. Cæsar, obsidibus ¹ acceptis, primis ² civitātis atque ipsius ³ Galbæ regis duobus filius, armisque ⁴ omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditiōnem Suessiōnes accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovācos duxit. Qui ⁵ cū se suāque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, ⁶ atque ab eo oppido Cæsar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes ⁷ majores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Cæsarem tendere, et voce significare cœperunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire, ⁸ neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cū ad oppidum accessisset, ⁹ castrāque ibi ponēret, puēri mulieresque ex muro ¹⁰ passis manibus, ¹¹ suo more, ¹² pacem ab Romanis ¹³ petiērunt.

14. Pro his Divitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dimissis Æduōrum copiis, ¹ ad eum revertērat) ² facit verba: Bellovācos ³ omni tempore in ⁴ fide atque amicitia civitātis Æduæ fuisse: ⁵ impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicērent, ⁶ Æduos, a Cæsare in servitūtem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, ⁷ et ab Æduis defecisse, ⁸ et Populo Romano bellum intulisse. ⁹ Qui ¹⁰ hujus consilii

* Gr. 432, (ei.)

† Id. 32.

‡ Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

‡ Id. 109, 2.

§ Id. 39, 6.

¶ Id. 98, 2.

• Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

‡ Gr. 631, & Id. 74, 8.

¶ Gr. 634.

‡ Gr. 627, 1, 3.

§ Id. 96, 2.

• Id. 37, 1st, (eos.)

• Gr. 251, R. & Id. 19.

‡ Gr. 511.

principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent,^a in Britanniam profugisse.^b Petere¹ non solum Bellovacos,^c sed etiam pro his Æduos,^c ut suā clementiā ac mansuetudinē in eos utatur.^d Quod^e si fecerit, Æduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatūrum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērint,^f sustentare consuērunt.”^g

15. Cæsar, honoris^h Divitiāci^h atque Æduorum causā, sese eos in fidem receptūrum,ⁱ et conservatūrum, dixit: sed, quod erat civitas magnā inter Belgas auctoritate,^p atque hominum multitudinē^k præstābat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis, omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervēnit, qui se^l suāque omnia sine morā dedidērunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingēbant: quorum de naturā moribusque Cæsar cum^m quæreret, sic reperiebat: “Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus.^m nihil pati vini, reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium, inferri,ⁿ quod his rebus^o relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: ^s esse homines feros, magnæque virtutis: ^p increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se Populo Romano dedidissent,^q patriamque virtutem projecissent: ^r confirmare, sese neque legatos missuros,^r neque ullam^s conditionem pacis accepturos.”^t

16. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniēbat ex captivis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non ampliūs millia^r passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedissee,^b adventumque ibi Romanorum⁷ expectare, unā cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his^s utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam expectarentur): ^s expectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias, at-

^a Gr. 627, 5.^c Gr. 655.^m Id. 90, 4.^b Id. 98, 2.^d Gr. 335.^o Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII.ⁱ Id. 100, 2.^p Gr. 339, R. VII.^d Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^k Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^q Gr. 645, R. iii.^e Id. 37, Note, & 38.^l Id. 81, 5, Note.^r Gr. 573, R. XLII.^f Gr. 173, 2.^m Gr. 394, R. ii.^s Id. 63, 3.

que esse in itinēre: ¹ muliēres, quique ^a per ætātem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, ^b in eum locum conjecisse, quò propter palūdes exercitui ^c aditus non esset.

17. His rebus cognitis, exploratōres centurionesque præmittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. ^d Cūque ex dedititiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūres, Cæsārem secūti, unā iter facerent; ^e quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, ^f eōrum diērum ^g consuetudinē ^h itinēris ⁱ nostri exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervenērunt, atque iis ^b demonstrārunt, inter singūlas ^l legiōnes impedimentōrum magnum numērum intercedere, ^m neque esse quicquam negotii, ^k cū prima legio in castra venisset, ^l reliquæque legiōnes magnum spatium ^m abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: ⁿ ^o quā pulsā, ^f impedimentisque direptis, ^h futurum, ut reliquæ contrā consistere non auderent. ^o Adjuvābat ^p etiam eōrum consilium qui rem deferēbant, quòd Nervii antiquitūs, cū equitātū ^q nihil ^r possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ^s ei rei student, sed, quicquid ^s possunt, pedestribus ^t valent copiis), quò facilius finitimōrum equitātum, si prædandi causā ad eos venisset, ^t impedirent, ^u tenēris arboribus ^v ⁷ incisis atque inflexis, ^u crebris in latitudinem ramis ^v et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecērant, ut instar ^v muri hæ sepes munimenta præbērent; quò non modò ^w intrāri, sed ne perspicī quidem posset. His rebus cū iter agminis nostri impedirētur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii æstimavērunt.

18. ⁹ Loci natūra erat hæc, quem ^x locum nostri castris delegērant. Collis, ab summo æqualiter declivis, ad flumen Sabim, quod suprā nominavimus, vergēbat. Ab eo flumīne pari

^a Id. 37, 1st.

^l Id. 26, 5.

^r Gr. 442.

^b Gr. 655.

^k Gr. 343, R. VIII.

^s Id. 37, 8, Note 2 &

^c Gr. 394, R. ii.

^l Id. 80, 3.

Gr. 442.

^d Gr. 643, 4th.

^m Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^t Gr. 627, 2.

^e Gr. 159, & Id. 74, 3.

ⁿ Gr. 660, R. LVI.

^u Gr. 627, 1.

^f Id. 109, 2.

^o Gr. 627, 1, 4th.

^v Gr. 611, (ad.)

^g Gr. 335.

^p Id. 51.

^w Gr. 590.

^h Id. 63.

^q Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^x Id. 37, 6, Note 1.

acclivitate collis nascebatur, adversus huic^a et contrarius, passus^b circiter ducentos^c infimā apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspicī posset.^c Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto^d sese continēbant: in aperto loco, secundum flumen, paucæ stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.^e

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur omnibus copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis^f aliter se habebat, ac^g Belgæ ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine suâ Cæsar sex legiones^h expeditas ducēbat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duæ legiones, quæ proximè conscriptæ erant, totum agmen claudēbant, præsidioqueⁱ impedimentis^j erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu prælium commiserunt. Cùm se illi^k identidem in silvas ad suos recipērent,^l ac rursus ex silvâ in nostros impetum facerent,^m nequeⁿ nostri longiùs, quàm^o quem^p ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinēbant, cedentes insēqui auderent:^q intērim legiones sex, quæ primæ^r venērunt, opère dimenso, castra munire cœperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latēbant, visa sunt (^s quod tempus inter eos committendi prælii convenerat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituērunt, atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis^t provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerant. His faciliè pulsus ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decurrerunt, ut pæne uno tempore et ad silvas, et in flumine, et jam^u in manibus nostris hostes viderentur.^v Eadem autem celeritate^w adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos,^x qui in opère occupati erant, contendērunt.

^a Gr. 382, R. XVI.^f Gr. 611, (*cum.*)^l Id. 37, 2d, 5, Note 1.^b Gr. 573, R. XLII.^g Gr. 728.^m Gr. 274.^c Gr. 627, 1, 1st, (*ita.*)^h Gr. 427, R. XIX.ⁿ Gr. 720, R. LXV, &^d Gr. 236, 6.ⁱ Gr. 631, & Id. 74, 3.

721.

^e Gr. 576.^j Gr. 242, 1, (*and not.*)

20. Cæsari^a omnia uno tempore erant agenda: ^b 1 vexillum proponendum,^b quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrere oporteret: signum tubæ dandum: ^b ab opere revocandi ^b milites: ^a qui paulo longius ^c aggere petendi causâ processerant, arcessendi: ^b acies instruenda, ^b milites cohortandi, ^b signum dandum: ^b quarum ^d rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas, et ^a successus et incursus hostium impediēbat. His difficultatibus^e duæ res ⁴ erant subsidio,^f scientia atque usus militum, quod, superioribus præliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret,^g non minus commode ipsi sibi ^h præscribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere ⁵ singulisque ⁱ legionibus singulos ⁱ legatos Cæsar discedere, nisi munitionis castris, vetuerat. Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, ⁶ nihil jam Cæsaris imperium spectabant, sed ⁷ per se, quæ ⁸ videbantur, administrabant.

21. Cæsar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, ⁹ quam ^k in partem fors obtulit, decurrit, et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione ^l cohortatus, quam uti suæ pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent,^m neu ⁿ 10 perturbarentur ⁿ animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent; ⁿ quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quò telum adjici posset,^o prælii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causâ profectus, pugnantis ^p occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit ¹¹ exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda,^q sed etiam ad galeas induendas ^q scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit.^r Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constitit, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimitteret.^s

^a Gr. 531.^e Gr. 627, 5.ⁿ Gr. 242, 1, (and not.)^b Id. 108, 2.^h Id. 68.^o Gr. 627, 5.^c Gr. 473.ⁱ Id. 26, 5.^p Gr. 399, R. & Id. 19.^d Id. 38.^k Id. 37, 2d, 5, Note 1.^q Id. 112, 7.⁵ Gr. 611, (in.)^l Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^r Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^f Gr. 432, (nostris.)^m Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^s Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natūra, ¹ dejectusque collis, et ² necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis locis ^a legiones, aliae alia in parte, ^b hostibus resisterent, sepiusque ^c densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interjectis ³ prospectus impederetur: ^d neque ^e certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque, ⁴ in tanta rerum iniquitate, fortunae quodque eventus varii sequebantur.

23. Legionis nonae, et decimae milites, ut ⁵ in sinistra parte acie constituerant, pilis emissis, ^f cursu ac lassitudine ^c ⁶ exanimatos, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebates (⁷ nam his ea pars obvenerat), celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt; et, transire conantes insecuti gladiis, ^c magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen ⁸ non dubitaverunt; et, in locum iniquum progressi, rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes, redintegrato praelio, ^b ⁹ in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte ⁹ diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis ¹ fluminis ripis praeliabantur. ¹⁰ At tum, totis ferè a fronte, et ab sinistra parte, nudatis castris, ^h cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima, et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, ^d omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine, ^c duce Boduognato, ^k qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contendērunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars ¹¹ summum ¹ castrorum locum petere, cepit.

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri, ¹² levisque armaturae ^m pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, ¹³ quos ⁿ primo hostium impetu ^c pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra recipērent, ^d ¹⁴ adver-

^a Gr. 611, (in.)

^f Id. 104, 1.

^k Id. 110, 1.

^b Gr. 275, & Id. 25.

^g Gr. 613, R. LII.

¹ Id. 17, 2.

^c Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^h Id. 109, 2.

^m Gr. 339, R. VII.

^d Gr. 631.

¹ Id. 32, 6.

ⁿ Gr. 674, & Id. 91, 4.

^e Id. 124, 5.

sis hostibus occurrēbant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant: et ¹ calōnes, qui ab ² decumānā portā, ac summo jugo collis, nostros ^a victōres flumen transisse ^b conspexērant, prædandi causā egressi, cū respexissent et hostes in nostris castris ^c versārī ^c vidissent, ^d præcipites ^d fugæ sese mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cum impedimentis veniēbant, clamor fremitusque oriebātur, aliique aliam ^e in partem perterriti ferebantur.^f Quibus ^g omnibus rebus permōti equites Treviri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singulāris, qui auxilii causā ab civitatē missi ad Cæsarem venērunt, cū multitudīne ^h hostium castra ^a nostra complēri,^c legiōnes ^a premi ^c et pæne circumventas tenēri, calōnes,^a equites, funditōres, Numīdas, ^g diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugēre vidissent,ⁱ desperātis nostris rebus, domum contendērunt: Romānos ^a pulsos ^b superatosque, castris ^k impedimentisque eōrum hostes potitos,^b civitatī renunciavērunt.

25. Cæsar, ab decimæ legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos ^a ⁶ urgēri,^c signisque in unum locum collātis duodecimæ legiōnis confertos milites ^a sibi ^m ipsosⁱ ad pugnam esse impedimento; ^m quartæ cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus ferè centurionibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in his ⁷ primopīlo, Publio Sextio Bacūlo,ⁿ fortissimo viro,ⁿ multis gravibusque vulneribus ^o confecto, ut jam se sustinēre non posset; ^o reliquos ^a esse tardiōres, et nonnullos ab novissimis desertos ^p prælio ^q excedēre ac tela vitāre; hostes ^a neque ⁹ a fronte ex inferiōre loco ¹⁰ subeuntes intermittēre, et ab utrōque latēre instāre; et rem ^a esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset: ^a scuto ab novissimis uni militi ^r de-

^a Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^b Id. 98, 2.

^c Id. 96, 6.

^d Gr. 274.

^e Gr. 275, & Id. 25.

^f Id. 116, 3.

^g Id. 38, & Gr. 542, R. ⁿ Gr. 251, R. I.

^h Gr. 524, R. v.

ⁱ Gr. 631.

^k Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

¹ Id. 33, 1.

^m Gr. 427, R. XIX.

ⁿ Gr. 251, R. I.

^o Gr. 627, 1, 1st, (ita.)

^p Id. 101, 4.

^q Gr. 613, R. LII.

^r Gr. 522, & Id. 5, 1.

^s Gr. 636, R. i.

tracto (quòd ipse eò sine acuto venërat), in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis,^a reliquos cohortatus milites, ¹signa inferre et manipulos laxare^b jussit, quòd facilius gladiis^c uti possent.^d ²Cujus adventu spe illata militibus,^e ac redintegrato animo, cum^f pro se quisque, in conspectu imperatoris, et jam in extremis suis rebus, operam navare cuperent,^g paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

26. Cæsar cum septimam legionem,^h quæ juxta constitërat, item urgëriⁱ ab hoste vidisset, tribunos^k militum monuit, ut paulatim sese ⁴legiones conjungerent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius^l alii subsidium ferrent,^m neque timërentⁿ ne¹ aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare cœperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quæ in novissimo agmine præsidio^o impediementis fuerant, prælio nunciato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labiënus, castris^p hostium potitus, et ex loco superiore, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur,^q conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio^r nostris misit. Qui,^s cum ex equitum et calonum fugâ, quo in loco res esset,^t quantoque in periculo et castra, et legiones, et imperator^u versaretur,^v cognovissent,^w ⁷ nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent,^x scutis^y innixi, prælium redintegrarent; ⁸ tum calones, perterritos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis^z occurrerent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugæ virtute delerent,^{aa} ⁹ omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus præferrent. At hostes, etiam in extremâ spe salutis, tantam virtutem^{ab} præstit-

^a Id. 104, 1.^b Id. 90, 4, (eos.)^c Gr. 484, R. XXVI,

& Id. 7, 5.

^d Gr. 627, 1.^e Gr. 522, R. iii.^f Gr. 281, (illi.)^g Gr. 631.^h Gr. 671, R. LVIII.ⁱ Id. 96, 6.^k Id. 63, 3.^l Gr. 633.^m Gr. 427, R. XIX.ⁿ Gr. 627, 5.^o Id. 39, 2.^p Gr. 313.^q Gr. 644.^r Gr. 399, R. iv.^s Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^t Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

erunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insistèrent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his dejectis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, ¹ qui ^a superessent, ^b uti ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjicerent, ^c et pila intercepta remitterent: ^c ut non nequicquam tantæ virtutis ^d homines judicari debèrent ^e ausos esse ^f transire latissimum flumen, ^g ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: ^h quæ facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo ⁱ redegerat.

28. Hoc proelio facto, ^b et ⁴ prope ad internecionem gentem ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, ^h majores natu, quos ⁱ unâ cum puëris mulieribusque in ^g æstuaria ac paludes collectos ⁱ dixeramus, hæc pugnâ nunciâtâ, ^h cum victoribus ^g nihil ^k impeditum, ⁱ victis nihil ^k tutum ⁱ arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Cæsarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt; et, in commemorandâ ^m civitatis calamitate, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, ⁿ sese redactos esse ^f dixerunt. ⁷ Quos Cæsar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus ^o misericordiâ videretur, ^e diligentissimè conservavit, suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis ^p imperavit, ut ab injuriâ et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.^q

29. Aduatuci, de quibus suprâ scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio ^r Nervii venirent, hæc pugnâ ^h nunciâtâ, ex itinere domum revertèrunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis, sua omnia in unum oppidum, egregiè naturâ munitum, contulerunt. Quod ^s cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus ^g altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, unâ ex parte leniter acclivis aditus, in latitudinem ^g non ampliùs ducentorum pedum, relinquebatur: quem ^s locum duplici altissimo muro munièrant; tum magni pondëris ^d saxa et præacutâs trabes

^a Id. 37, (ii.)^b Id. 109, 2.ⁿ Gr. 655.^b Gr. 656.ⁱ Gr. 674.^o Gr. 675.^c Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^k Gr. 671, R. LVIII,^p Id. 63, 3.^d Gr. 339, R. VII.

(esse,) 176, 6.

^q Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^e Gr. 627, 1, 2d.ⁱ Gr. 322.^r Gr. 427, R. XIX.^f Id. 92, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^m Id. 112, 8.^s Id. 38, 1, (oppidum.)^g Gr. 613, R. LII.

in muro collocārant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prog-
nāti; qui, cū iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam fa-
cērent, ¹ iis impedimentis, ² quæ secum agere ac portare non
potērant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiæ ³ ex suis
ac præsidio ⁴ sex millia hominum reliquērunt. Hi, post eō-
rum obitum, multos annos ⁵ a finitūmis exagitāti, ⁶ cū aliās
bellum inferrent, aliās illātum defendērent, consensu eōrum
omnium pace factā, hunc sibi ⁷ domicilio ⁸ locum delegē-
runt.

30. Ac primo adventu ⁹ exercitūs nostri crebras ex oppido
excursiōnes faciēbant, parvulisque præliis ¹⁰ cum nostris con-
tendēbant: postea, vallo ¹¹ pedum ¹² duodēcim, in circuitu
quindēcim millium, ¹³ crebrisque castellis ¹⁴ circummunīti, op-
pido ¹⁵ sese continēbant. Ubi, ¹⁶ vineis actis, ¹⁷ aggere exstructo,
turrim ¹⁸ procul constitui vidērunt, primū irridere ¹⁹ ex muro,
atque increpitare ²⁰ vocibus, ²¹ ²² quò tanta machinatio ab ²³ tanto
spatio institueretur ²⁴ ? quibusnam manibus, ²⁵ aut quibus viri-
bus, præsertim homīnes tantūlæ statūræ ²⁶ (nam plerumque
homīnibus Gallis, ²⁷ ²⁸ præ magnitudine corpōrum suōrum, bre-
vitas nostra contemptui est), tantī onēris ²⁹ turrim ³⁰ in muros
sese collocare confidērent ? ³¹

31. Ubi verò ³² movēri, et appropinquare mœnibus ³³ vidē-
runt, novā atque inusitātā specie ³⁴ commōti, legātos ad Cæ-
sārem de pace misērunt, qui, ³⁵ ad hunc modum locūti: “ Non
se existimāre ³⁶ Romānos sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, ³⁷ qui
³⁸ tantæ altitudinis ³⁹ machinatiōnes tantā celeritate promo-
vère, ⁴⁰ et ex propinquitāte pugnāre, possent: se ⁴¹ suāque
omnia eōrum potestāti permittēre,” dixerunt. ⁴² “ Unum
petere ⁴³ ac deprecāri: si fortē, pro suā clementiā ac mansue-
tudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, ⁴⁴ statuisset, Aduatūcos

¹ Gr. 427, R. XIX.

² Gr. 611.

³ Gr. 427, 5.

⁴ Gr. 565, R. XLI.

⁵ Id. 109, 2.

⁶ Gr. 399, R. iv.

⁷ Gr. 565, R. XL.

⁸ Gr. 90, 3.

⁹ Id. 96, 2.

¹⁰ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

¹¹ Gr. 669.

¹² Id. 31.

¹³ Gr. 339, R. VII.

¹⁴ Gr. 578.

¹⁵ Gr. 655.

esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: ^a sibi omnes ferè finitimos ^b esse inimicos, ^c ac suæ virtuti ^d invidere; a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, ^e non possent. ^f ¹ Sibi ^d præstare, si in eum casum deducerentur, ^g quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati, quam ab his ^h per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuissent.”

32. Ad hæc Cæsar respondit: “Se magis consuetudine ⁱ suâ, quàm merito ^l eorum, civitatem conservaturum, ^k si ² prius, quàm murum aries attigisset, ¹ se dedidissent: ¹ sed deditiōnis nullam esse conditionem, ^b nisi armis traditis: se ^b id, quod ² in Nervii fecisset, ^m facturum, ^k finitimisque imperaturum, ^k ne quam dedititiis ⁿ Populi Romani injuriam inferrent.” ⁿ Re nunciatâ ad suos, “quæ imperarentur, facere” ^o dixerunt. Armorum magnâ multitudinē ^o de muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum, jactâ, sic ut propè summam ⁴ muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adæquarent; et tamen circiter parte ^o tertiâ, ut postea perspectum est, celatâ atque in oppido retentâ, portis ^o patefactis, eo die pace ^p sunt usi.

33. ^q Sub vespèrum Cæsar portas claudi ^q militesque ex oppido exire ^q jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent ^r Illi, antè inïto, ut intellectum est, consilio, ^o quòd, deditiōne ^o factâ, nostros præsidia deducturos, ^k aut denique indiligentiùs servaturos, ^k crediderant, partim cum his, quæ retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quæ subito (ut temporis exiguitas postulabat), pellibus ^o induxerant, ^o tertiâ vigiliâ, ¹ quâ minimè arduus ad nostras munitiōnes ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis ⁿ repentè ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut antè Cæsar imperarat, ⁷ ignibus ⁱ

^a Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^b Gr. 580.^p Gr. 484, R. XXVI.^b Gr. 671, R. LVIII.¹ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^q Id. 90, 4.^c Gr. 322.^k Id. 100, 2.^r Gr. 627, 1, 2d, &^d Gr. 399, R. iv.¹ Id. 80, 1 & 2.

Id. 121, 3.

^o Id. 109, 2.^m Gr. 634.^o Gr. 514, R. XXXI.^f Gr. 655.ⁿ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.¹ Gr. 565, R. XL.^e Gr. 627, 2.^o Id. 94, 3.^u Gr. 611, (cum.)

significatiōe factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursus est,* pugnatumque^a ab hostibus¹ ita acriter, ut^b a viris fortibus, in extrēmā spe salutis, iniquo loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacērent,^c pugnari debuit,^d cū in unā virtute omnis spes salutis consistēret.* Occisis^e ad hominum villibus^f quatuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diēi, refractis portis,^f cū jam defendēret^g nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris,^h sectiōnem ejus oppidi universam Cæsar vendidit. Ab his, qui emērant,ⁱ capitum numerus ad eum relātus est millium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eōdem tempore^a a Publio Crasso, quem cum legiōe unā miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Carisoliās, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedōnes, quæ sunt maritimæ civitates^b Oceanumque attingunt,^c certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditiōnem potestatemque Populi Romani esse re dactas.^d

35. His rebus^e gestis, omni Galliā^f pacatā, tanta hujus belli ad barbāros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nationibus, quæ trans Rhenum incolērent,^g mitterentur^h legāti ad Cæsarem, quæ seⁱ obsides datūras,^m imperata factūras, pollicerentur:¹ quasⁿ legatiōnes Cæsar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, inltā proximā æstāte^o ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quæ^p civitates propinquæ his locis^q erant, ubi bellum gessērat, legionibus^r in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est, ob easque res, ex litēris Cæsaris, ⁷dies^r quindēcim supplicatio decretā est, quod^s ante id tempus accēdit nulli.^t

^a Id. 67, 1.

^b Id. 98, 6.

^c Id. 37, 4, & Note 1.

^d Gr. 628.

^e Gr. 644.

^f Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^g Gr. 644.

^h Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

ⁱ Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^j Gr. 411, & Id. 88, 7.

^k Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^l Id. 37, Note 3, 9.

^m Gr. 631.

ⁿ Id. 100, 2.

^o Gr. 399, R. iv, &

^p Id. 109, 2.

^q Id. 38.

Id. 19.

^r Gr. 565, R. XL.

^s Gr. 694.

BOOK III.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

- I. War with the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni—Chap. 1-6
 II. War with the Veneti—Chap. 7-16. III. War with the Unelli—
 Chap. 17-19. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania—Chap.
 20-27. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morini and Menapii—
 Chap. 28-29.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Cæsar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimâ, et parte equitatus, in Nantuates, Verāgros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrögum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodāno, ad summas^a Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter^b per Alpes, quo, magno cum periculo² magnisque cum portoriis, mercatores ire consuērant, pateñeri^c volēbat. Huic^d permisit, si opus esse arbitrarētur, uti in eis locis legionem hiemandi causâ collocāret.^e Galba, secundis aliquot præliis^f factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis,^g obsidibusque datis, et pace factâ, constituit, cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare, et ipse^h cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrōrum, qui appellatur Octodūrus,^h hiemare: quiⁱ vicus, positus in valle, non magnâ adjectâ planitię, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cūm^hhic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteramⁱ partem ejus vici Gallis^k concessit, alteram,ⁱ vacuum ab illis relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossâque munivit.

2. Cūm dies hibernōrum complures transissent, frumentumque eò comportari^c jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est, ex eâ parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes^b noctu discessisse,^m montesque, qui impendērent, a

^a Id. 17, 2.

^c Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

ⁱ Id. 38, 2.

^b Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^f Id. 109, 2.

^k Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^c Id. 94, 3.

^g Id. 32, 3, (constituit.)

^l Id. 27, 10, Obs.

^d Id. 63.

^h Gr. 319, R. V.

^m Id. 98, 2.

maximā multitudīne Sedunōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri.^a Id aliquot de causis accidērat, ut subitō Galli bellī renovandi^b legionisque opprimendæ^c consilium capērent :^d primūm, quōd legiōnem, ^e neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duābus, et compluribus^f ^g singillatim, qui commeātus petendi causā missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant: tum etiam, quōd, propter iniquitatem loci, cū ipsi ex montibus in vallem ^h decurrerent,ⁱ et tela conjicerent,^j ^k ne primum quidem posse impetum sustinere^l existimabant. ^m Accedebat, quōd suos ab se liberosⁿ abstractos^o obsidum nomine dolēbant: et Romānos^p non solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuæ possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimæ provinciæ adjungere, ^q sibi^r persuasum habēbant.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cū neque opus hibernōrum, munitionesque plenē essent perfectæ, ^s neque de frumento reliquōque commeātu satis esset provisum,^t quōd, deditione factā, obsidibusque acceptis, ^u nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere cœpit. Quo^v in consilio, cū tantum repentinī periculi præter opiniōnem accidisset, ac jam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne^w armatorum complēta conspicerentur, ^x neque subsidio^y veniri, neque commeātus supportari interclusis itineribus^z possent, prope jam desperatā salutē,^{aa} nonnullæ hujusmodi sententiæ dicebantur, ut, impedimentis^{ab} relictis, eruptione factā, iisdem itineribus,^{ac} quibus^{ad} eō pervenissent,^{ae} ad salutē contendērent.^{af} ^{ag} 10 Majōri tamen parti^{ah} placuit, hoc^{ai} reservato ad extrēmum^{aj} consilio, intērim rei eventum experiri et^{ak} castra defendere.

^a Id. 96, 2.^b Id. 98, 2.^c Gr. 611, (*cum*.)^b Id. 112, 5.ⁱ Gr. 522, R. iii.^p Id. 109, 2.^c Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^k Id. 65.^q Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^d Id. 19, (*militibus*.)^l Id. 38.^r Gr. 409, R. XVIII.^e Gr. 630, & 172, 1.^m Gr. 524, R. v.^s Id. 19, (*casum*.)^f Id. 87, 7.ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^t Gr. 720, R. LXV.^g Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus,^a quas constit-
uissent,^b ¹ collocandis^c atque administrandis^c tempus darē-
tur,^d hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere,^e
lapides ²gæsæque in vallum conjicere:^e nostri primo ³intē-
gris viribus fortiter repugnare,^e neque ullum ⁴frustra telum
ex loco superioriōre mittere^e: ut ^f quæque pars castrorum nu-
dāta defensoribus^g premi videbātur, eò occurrere,^e et auxil-
ium ferre:^e ⁵sed hōc superari,^e quodd diuturnitate pugnae
hostes defessi proelio^h excedēbant, alii intēgris viribus suc-
cedēbant: quarum rerum a nostris propter ⁶paucitatem fieri
nihil poterat; ac ⁷non modòⁱ defesso^k ex pugna excedendi,
sed ne saucio^k quidem ejus loci, ubi constitērat, relinquen-
di,^l ac sui recipiendi,^l facultas dabatur.

5. Cū jam ampliūs horis^m sex continenter pugnaretur,
ac non solūm vires, sed etiam tela, nostrisⁿ deficērent,^o at-
que hostes acriūs instārent, languidioribusque nostris^p vallum
scindere, et fossas complere, cōpissent,^o resque esset^o jam
⁸ad extrēmum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Bacūlus,
primi pili centurio ⁹quem^q Nervico proelio compluribus con-
fectum, vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusēnus, tribū-
nus militum, vir et consilii^r magni et virtutis, ad Galbam
accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione
factā, extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque,¹⁰ convocā-
tis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiōres facit, paulisper
intermitterent^s proelium, ac tantummōdo tela missa excipē-
rent,^s seque ex labore reficērent; pōst, dato signo, ex castris
erumpērent,^s atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponērent.^s

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subitō¹¹ omnibus portis
eruptione factā, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui¹

^a Gr. 427, R. XIX, (sibi) ⁸ Gr. 524, R. v.

ⁿ Gr. 403, R. v.

^b Gr. 656.

^h Gr. 613, R. LII.

^o Gr. 631.

^c Id. 112, 6.

ⁱ Gr. 590.

^p Id. 19, & 110.

^d Gr. 627, 1, 1st, (ita.) ^k Id. 19, & Gr. 522, R. iii.

^q Id. 91, 4.

^e Gr. 669.

^l Id. 112, 5.

^r Gr. 339, R. VII.

^f Gr. 628.

^m Gr. 467, R. XXIV.

^s Gr. 632.

colligendi, hostibus ^a facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata fortuna, ^b eos, qui in spem potiundorum ^c castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt, et, ¹ ex hominum millibus amplius ^d triginta, quem ^e numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, ² plus ^d tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis ^b ³ fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo ^f proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba volebat, atque ⁴ alio ^g sese in hiberna consilio venisse ^h meminerat, aliis ^g occurrisset ^h rebus viderat, maxime frumenti com meatibusque inopia permotus, postero die ⁱ omnibus ejus vici aedificiis ^b incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas, perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

7. His rebus ^b gestis, cum ⁴ omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, ^b expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita, inita hieme, ^b in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes ^k adire, et regiones cognoscere, volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus ⁶ mare ¹ Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, ⁷ praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates, frumenti com meatibusque petendi ^c causa, dimisit. quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitae; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venetos.

8. Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae ^m maritimae regionum earum; quod et naves habent Ve-

^a Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^b Id. 109, 2.

^c Id. 112, 5.

^d Gr. 471.

^e Id. 37, 2, & Note 1.

^f Id. 38, 3.

^g Gr. 276.

^h Id. 98, 2.

¹ Gr. 565, R. XL.

^k Gr. 613, R. LII.

¹ Gr. 611, (ad.)

^m Gr. 356.

nōi plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigāre consuērunt, et ¹scientiā^a atque usu nauticārum rerum reliquos^b antecēdunt, et, ²in magno impētū maris atque aperto, paucis portūbus interjectis, quos tenent ³ipsi,^c omnes ferē, qui ⁴eo mari uti consuērunt, habent ⁵vectigāles. Ab iis fit initium retinendi^d Silii atque Velanii, quōd per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperatūros^e existimābant. Horum auctoritatē finitimi adducti (⁶ut sunt Gallōrum subita^f et repentina consilia), eādē de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et, celerit̄ missis legātis,^g per suos principes inter se conjūrant, nihil nisi commūni consilio actūros,^h eundemque ⁷omnis fortūnæ exitum esse latūros;ⁱ reliquasque civitatē sollicitant, ut in eā libertatē, quam a majoribus acceperant, permanēre, quā^b Romanōrum servitūtem perferre, mallent.¹ Omni orā⁵ maritimā celerit̄ ad suam^k sententiam perductā, commūnem legatiōnem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, “si velit ⁸suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.”

9. Quibus de rebus Cæsar ab Crasso certior factus, quōd ipse^c abērat longiūs, ⁹naves int̄rim longas ædificārī¹ in flumine Ligēri, quod influit in Oceānum, ¹⁰remīges ex Provinciā institui,¹ nautas gubernatoresque comparārī¹ jubet. His rebus⁸ celerit̄ administrātis, ipse,^c cū primū per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitū contendit. Venēti, reliquæque item civitatē, cognīto Cæsaris adventu,^g simul quōd, quantum in se^m facinus admisissent,ⁿ intelligēbant (legātōs, quod^o nomen apud omnes natiōnes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincūla coniectos), ¹¹pro magnitudīne pericūli bellum parāre, et maxīmē ea, quæ ad usum navium pertinent, providēre instituunt;¹² hoc majōre spe, quōd multū naturā^p loci confidēbant. ¹³Pedestria

^a Gr. 535, R. XXXIV. ^s Id. 109, 2.

^b Gr. 443.

^c Id. 32, 3.

^d Id. 112, 5.

^e Id. 100, 2.

^f Gr. 322.

^h Gr. 722.

ⁱ Gr. 627, 1, 3d, & 621.

^k Id. 30, 2.

^l Id. 90, 4.

^m Gr. 118, 3, 1st

Note.†

ⁿ Gr. 627, 5.

^o Id. 37, 2d, 4, &

Note 1.

^p Gr. 485.

esse itinēra concisa ^a æstuariis, ¹ navigatiōnem ^d impeditam ^a propter inscientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant: ^b neque ^b nostros exercitus ^d propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morāri posse, confidēbant: ac jam, ut omnia contra ^c opiniōnem accidērent, ^c tamen se ^d plurimum navibus posse: ^e Romānos ^d neque ullam facultātem habēre ^e navium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūri essent, ^f vada, portus, insūlas novisse: ^e ac ^d longē aliam esse ⁱ navigatiōnem in conclūso mari, atque ^h in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceāno, perspiciebant. His inītis consiliis, oppīda muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppīda comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Cæsārem primū bellum gestūrum ^k constābat, quā ⁱ plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannētes, Ambiliatos, Morīnos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannā, quæ contra eas regiōnes posita est, arcessunt.

10. ^a Erant hæ difficultātes belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa ^m Cæsārem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: ^g injuriæ ⁿ retentōrum ^o equitum Romanōrum; ⁷ rebellio facta post deditiōnem; defectio ⁿ datis obsidibus; tot civitātum conjuratio; ⁿ in primis, ⁸ ne, hāc parte neglectā, reliquæ nationes ⁹ idem ^p sibi licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque cū intelligēret, omnes fere Gallos ^d ¹⁰ novis rebus ^q studēre, ⁱ et, ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitāri, omnes autem homīnes ¹¹ naturā libertāti ^q studēre, et ¹² conditionem servitutis odisse; priusquam plures civitates conspirārent, ^r partiendum ^d sibi ^a ac latius distribuendum. exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque Titum Labiēnum legātum in Trevīros, qui proximi Rheno flumīni sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat;

^a Id. 98, 2.^g Gr. 222, 3.^m Gr. 251, R. I.^b Gr. 242, 1, (and-not.)^h Gr. 728.^o Gr. 684.^c Gr. 627, 3.ⁱ Id 96, Exc. I, 9.^p Gr. 413, (facere.)^d Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^k Id. 100, 2.^q Gr. 403, R. v.^e Id. 96, 2.¹ Gr. 591, 3d.^r Gr. 627, 4. [113, 5.^f Gr. 627, 5, & 214, 8. ^m Id. 19, (negotia.)^a Gr. 699, R. LXI, & Id.

Germanosque, qui ¹ auxilio ^a a Belgis arcessiti ^b dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. ^c Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodēcim, et magno numēro equitātūs, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ^d ac tantæ nationes jungantur. ^d Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legātum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, ^e qui ^e eam manum distinendam ^f curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santōnis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jussērat, præficit, et, cū primūm possit, ^g in Venētōs proficisci jubet. Ipse eō pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmodi ferē ³ situs oppidorūm, ut, posita ⁴ in extrēmis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus ¹ aditūm habērent, ^h ⁵ cū ex alto se æstus incitavisset, ⁵ quod bis accidit semper horarū viginti quatuor spatio, neque navibus, ¹ quōd, rursus ⁶ minuente æstu, ⁷ naves in vadis afflicterentur. ^h Ita ⁸ utrāque re oppidorūm oppugnatio impediēbatur; ac, si quando magnitudīne ¹ opēris fortē superāti, extrūso mari ⁹ aggēre ¹ ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi mōnibus ^m adæquātis, suis fortūnis ^a desperāre cōpērant, magno numēro navium ¹⁰ appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habēbant, sua deportābant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiēbant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus ¹ loci defendēbant. Hæc eo facilius magnam partem ^o æstātis faciēbant, quōd nostræ naves tempestatibus ¹ detinebantur; summāque erat vasto atque aperto mari, ¹¹ magnis æstibus, ¹ raris ac prope nullis portibus, ¹ difficultas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsōrum naves ad hunc modum ¹² factæ armatæque erant. Carinæ ¹³ aliquanto planiōres, quā ^p nos-

^a Gr. 427, R. XIX. & ^f Id. 108, 4. ^m Gr. 522, R. iii.

432.

^g Gr. 631.

ⁿ Gr. 611.

^b Id. 92, 2.

^h Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^o Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^c Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

¹ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^p Gr. 720, R. LXV,

^d Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

² Gr. 626, & Id. 76, 2.

Sup. (carinæ.)

^e Gr. 643, 4th, & Id. 40. ¹ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

trārum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus¹ excipere possent: ² prorae admōdum erectae, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae: naves totae factae ex robore, ³ ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: ⁴ transtra ⁵ pedalibus in latitudinem trabibus ⁶ confixa clavis ferreis, ⁷ digiti pollicis crassitudine: ⁸ anchorae, pro funibus, ferreis catēnis revinctae: ⁹ pelles pro velis, alutaeque tenuiter confectae, sive ¹⁰ propter lini inopiam atque ejus usūs inscientiam, sive eo, ¹¹ quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates ¹² Oceāni tantosque impetus ventōrum sustinēri, ¹³ ac tanta onēra ¹⁴ navium ¹⁵ regi ¹⁶ velis non satis commōdē, arbitrabantur. ¹⁷ Cum his navibus nostrae classi ¹⁸ ejusmodi congressus erat, ut unā celeritate ¹⁹ et pulsu remōrum praeſtaret, ²⁰ reliqua, pro loci naturā, pro v. tempeſtatum, illis ²¹ essent aptiora et accommodatiora: ²² neque enim his ²³ nostrae rostro ²⁴ nocere poterant; tanta in eis erat firmitudo: neque propter altitudinem facillē telum adjiciebatur; et eādem de causā minūs commōdē ²⁵ copulis ²⁶ continebantur. Accedēbat, ut, cū ²⁷ saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et ²⁸ tempeſtatem ferrent facilius, et ²⁹ in vadis consistērent ³⁰ tutius, et, ab aestu derelictae, nihil ³¹ saxa et cautes timērent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus ³² casus erant extimescendi.

14. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Cæsar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum laborem ¹ sumi, neque hostium fugam ² capitis oppidis reprimi, ³ neque his noceri posse, ⁴ statuit expectandum classem. Quae ubi convēnit, ac primū ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae et viginti naves eōrum ⁵ paratissimae, atque omni genere ⁶ armōrum ornatissimae, profectae ex portu, nostris ⁷ adversae constitērunt: neque satis

^a Gr. 627, 1.

^g Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

ⁿ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^b Gr. 541.

^h Id. 94, 3.

^o Id. 124, 1.

^c Id. 112, 7.

ⁱ Gr. 394, R. ii.

^p Gr. 627, 1, 4th.

^d Gr. 339, R. VII. &

^k Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.

^q Gr. 500.

^e Id. 124, 3. [Id. 6, 1.

^l Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^r Gr. 531. [& 411.

^f Gr. 542, R. XXIX.

^m Gr. 403, R. v.

^s Gr. 409, R. XVIII.

¹Brute,^a qui classi^b præerat, vel tribūnis^a militum centuri-
onibusque, quibus^c singulæ naves erant attributæ, constabat,
quid agerent,^d aut ²quam rationem pugnae insisterent.^d
Rostro^e enim noceri non posse^f cognoverant; turribus autem
excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus
superabat; ³ut neque ex inferiori loco satis commodè tela
adjici possent,^e et missa ab Gallis ⁴gravius acciderent. Una
erat magno usui^h res præparata a nostris, ⁵falcesⁱ præacutæ,
insertæ affixæque longuriis,^e non absimili^k formâ^l ⁶muralium
falcium.^m His^e cum funes, qui antennæ ad malos destinā-
bant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis^e incitato
prærumpebantur. Quibusⁿ abscissis, antennæ necessariò
concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus^o spes in velis
armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium
uno tempore eriperetur.⁵ Reliquum erat certamen positum
in virtute, quâ nostri milites faciliè superabant, atque eo ma-
gis, quòd in conspectu Cæsaris atque omnis exercitus res
gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum ⁸latere posset:^e
omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus
despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Dejectis, ut diximus, annis, ⁹cum^p singulas^q binæ
ac ternæ naves circumsteterant, milites summâ vi^e ¹⁰tran-
scendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod^r postquam
barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus,
cum ei rei^c nullum reperirētur auxilium, fugâ^e salutem
petere contendērunt: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navibus,
¹¹quò ventus ferēbat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas
extitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quæ quid-
em res ad negotium conficiendum maximè fuit opportuna:
nam singulas^q nostri consecrati expugnaverunt, ut perpauca

^a Gr. 409, R. XVIII. ⁵ Gr. 627, 1, 2d. ^m Gr. 385.

^b Gr. 393, R. i. ^h Gr. 427, R. XIX, & ⁿ Id. 38, 5.

^c Gr. 522, R. iii. ⁱ Gr. 251, R. I. [432. ^o Gr. 380, *Rule*.

^d Gr. 627, 5. ^k Id. 16, 2. ^p Gr. 630.

^e Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ^l Gr. 339, R. VII, or ^q Id. 26.

^f Gr. 411. Gr. 535, R. XXXIV. ^r Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

ex omni numēro, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenērunt cūm * ab horā ferē quartā usque ad solis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quo^b praelio bellum Venetōrum totiusque orae mariimae confectum est. Nam, cūm omnis juvenus, omnes etiam^c graviōris aetātis,^c in quibus aliquid consilii^d aut dignitātis fuit, eō convenērunt; tum, navium quod^e ubique fuērat, anum in locum coēgērunt: quibus^f amissis, reliqui, neque quō se recipērent^e neque quemadmōdum oppida defendērent,^e habēbant. Itaque se suāque omnia Cēsari dedidērunt. ²In quos eo gravius Cēsar vindicandum^b statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbāris jus legatōrum conservarētur.¹ Itaque, omni senātu^f necāto, reliquos ²sub coronā vendidit.

17. Dum haec in Venētis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabīnus cum iis copiis, quas a Cēsare accepērat, in fines Unelōrum pervēnit. His praēerat Viridōvix, ac summam imperii tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coēgērat. ⁴Atque his paucis diēbus^k Aulerci Eburovices, Lexoviique, senātu^f suo interfecto, quod auctōres belli esse nolēbant, portas clausērunt seque cum Viridovīce conjunxērunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undīque ex Galliā⁴ perditōrum homīnum latronumque convenērunt, quos spes praedandi, studiumque bellandi, ab agriculturā et quotidiāno labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idoneo¹ omnibus rebus loco^m castris sese tenēbat, cūm Viridōvix contra eum duōrum millium spatio consedisset, quotidieque productis copiis^f pugnandi potestātem faceret;^a ut jam non solūm hostibusⁿ in contemtiōnem Sabīnus venīret,^o sed etiam nostrōrum militum vocibus⁶ nonnihil carperētur: tantamque opiniōnem timōris praebuit, ut jam ad vallum castrōrum hostes accedēre audērent.^p Id eā de causā faciēbat,

* Gr. 630.

^f Id. 109, 2.

¹ Id. 16.

^b Id. 38, 9, & Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

² Gr. 627, 5.

^m Gr. 611, (in.)

^h Id. 113, 5.

ⁿ Gr. 380, *Rule*.

^c Gr. 339, R. VII.

¹ Gr. 627, 1.

^o Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^d Gr. 343, R. VIII.

^k Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^p Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^e Gr. 347.

quòd cum tantâ multitudīne hostium, præsertim ¹eo^a absente, qui summam imperii tenēret,^b nisi æquo loco, aut opportunitate aliquâ datâ, legâto^c dimicandum non existimābat.

18. ²Hâc confirmâtâ opiniōne timōris, idoneum quandam homīnem et callīdum delēgit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causâ secum habēbat. Huic ⁴magnis præmiis pollicitationibusque persuādet, uti ad hostes transeat; ⁵et, quid fieri velit,^f edōcet. Qui,^g ubi pro perfūgâ ad eos venit, timōrem Romanōrum ⁸propōnit: “quibus angustiis^h ipse Cæsar a Venētis premātur,”ⁱ docet: “neque longiūs abesse, quin proximâ nocte Sabīnus clam ex castris exercitum educat,¹ et ad Cæsārem auxilii ferendi causâ proficiscātur.”¹ Quod^k ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnes, occasiōnem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse,¹ ²ad castra iri oportere. Multæ res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīni cunctatio,^m ⁶perfūgæ cōfirmatio, inopia cibariōrum, cui reiⁿ parum diligenter ab iis erat provīsum, spes Venetici belli, et quòd ferè libenter homīnes id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus^h adducti, non priùs Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quàm ab his sit^o concessum, arma uti capiant^p et ad castra contendant. Quâ re concessâ, læti, ut explorâtâ victoriâ, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, ⁷quibus^q fossas Romanōrum compleant,^q ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum editus, et paulātīm ab imo acclivis circīter passus^r mille. Huc magno cursu contendērunt, ut ⁸quàm minīmum spatii^s ad se colligendos armandosque Romānis darētur, ⁹exanimatīque pervenērunt. Sabīnus, suos hortātus, cupientībus signum dat. Impeditis hostībus propter ea, quæ ferēbant, onēra, subitō duābus portis erup-

^a Id. 110.^s Id. Id. 39, 5.ⁿ Gr. 409, R. XVIII.^b Gr. 656. [Id. 113. ^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^o Gr. 627, 4.^c Gr. 699, R. LXI, & ¹ Gr. 627, 3.^p Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX, & ^k Id. 38.^q Gr. 643, 4th.^e Gr. 627, 1, 3d. [Id. 63. ¹ Id. 108, 4.^r Gr. 573, R. XLII.^f Gr. 627, 5.^m Gr. 251, R. I.^s Gr. 343, R. VIII.

tionem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientiâ ac defatigatione, virtute militum, superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent,^a ac statim terga vertèrent. Quos^b impeditos^c integris viribus^d milites nostri consecuti, magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecuti,^e paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic, uno tempore, et^f de navali pugna^g Sabinus, et de Sabini victoria Cæsar certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dederunt. Nam, ut^h ad bella suscipiendaⁱ Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac^j minimè resistens ad calamitates perferendas^k mens eorum est.

20. Eodem ferè tempore, Publius Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quæ pars,^b ut antè dictum est, et regionum latitudine,^c et multitudine^d hominum, ^eex tertiâ parte Galliæ est æstimanda, cum intelligeret in his locis sibi^f bellum gerendum, ubi paucis antè annis Lucius Valerius Præconinus, legatus, exercitu pulso, interfectus esset,^g atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset,^h non mediocrem sibi diligentiamⁱ adhibendam^j intelligebat. Itaque re frumentariâ provisâ, auxiliis equitatumque comparato,^k multis præterea viris fortibus Tolosâ,^l Carcasone, et Narbone, quæ sunt civitates Galliæ Provinciæ, finitimæ his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sotiâtum fines exercitum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sotiâtes, magnis copiis coactis, equitatumque, ^mquo plurimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre prælium commiserunt: deinde, equitatu suo pulso, atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi, nostros disiectos adorti, prælium renovârunt.

^a Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^f Id. 124, 20.^l Gr. 656.^b Id. 38.^g Id. 112, 7.^m Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^c Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^h Id. 87, 2d, 4, Note 1.ⁿ Id. 108, 4.^d Id. 105.ⁱ Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^o Gr. 268.^e Id. 124, 1.^j Gr. 699, R. LXI.^p Gr. 613, R. LII.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiates, superioribus victoriis^a freti, in suam^b virtute totius Aquitaniam salutem positam putarent; ^c nostri autem, quid sine imperatore, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce,^d efficere possent, perspicere cuperent.^e Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertere.^e Quorum^f magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatum oppugnare cepit. Quibus^g fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, alias eruptione tentata, alias cuniculis ad aggere vineasque actis (¹ cuius rei^b sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos ² ararie secturæ sunt), ubi diligentiam nostrorum ³ nihil¹ his rebus profici posse^k intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quam^f re impetrata, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque, in eam re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant (⁴ quorum hæc est conditio, uti omnibus in vita commodis¹ una cum his fruantur,^m quorum se amicitiam^o dediderint; ⁵ si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant,^m aut ⁶ sibi^o mortem consciscant: ^m neque adhuc hominum memoriam repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiam^o devovisset, mortem recusaret),^p cum iis Adcantuannus, eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab eam parte munitiōnis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent,^c vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset,^c repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem deditiōnis conditione¹ uteretur,^q ab Crasso impetravit.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocationis et Tarusatum profectus est. Tum verò ⁶ barbari commoti, quod oppidum,^r ⁷ et naturam^a loci et manu^a munitum,

^a Gr. 462, R. XXIII.^g Id. 38, & 109.^m Gr. 656.^b Id. 30, 2.^h Gr. 349, R. IX.^o Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^c Gr. 631.¹ Gr. 538.^p Gr. 630.^d Id. 110, 1.^k Gr. 675, (se.)^q Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^e Gr. 669.¹ Gr. 484, R. XXVI.^r Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^f Id. 38.^m Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

paucis diēbus,* quibus* eò ventum erat,^b expugnātum^c cognovērant, legātos quoquoersus dimittēre, conjurāre, obsīdes inter se dare, copias parāre cœpērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitatē legāti, quæ sunt ¹citeriōris Hispaniæ,^d finitīmæ Aquitaniæ:^e inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum^f adventu magnā cum auctoritatē, et magnā cum hominū multitudīne, bellum gerēre conantur. Duces verò ii deliguntur, qui unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos^g fuērant, summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hi consuetudinē Populi Romāni ²loca capēre, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod^f ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non ³facile diduci,^h hostem et vagariⁱ et vias obsidere^j et castris satis præsidiū relinquere,^k ob eam causam minū comōdē frumentum commeatumque sibi^k supportari;^h ⁴in dies hostium numērum augeri; non cunctandum existimāvit, quin pugnā decertaret.^l ⁵Hāc re ad consilium delatā, ubi omnes^m idem sentireⁿ intellexit, postērum diem pugnae constituit.

24. Primā luce, productis omnibus copiis, ⁷duplici acie institutā, ⁸auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostes consilii^m caperentⁿ expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et vetērem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrōrum, se tutō dimicatūros^o existimābant, tamen tutius^p esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeātu interclūso, sine ullo vulnere victoriā potiri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariæ Romāni sese recipere cœpissent,^q impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis, inferiōres animo,^r adoriri cogitābant. Hoc consilio probātō ab ducibus, productis Romanōrum copiis, sese castris^s tenēbant. Hāc re perspectā Crassus, ⁹cū suā cunctationē atque opiniōne timōris hostes nostros milites alacri-

* Gr. 565, R. XLI, & 571. ^g Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^b Id. 67, 5, Note.

^h Id. 94, 3.

ⁿ Gr. 627, 5.

^c Id. 98, 2.

ⁱ Id. 96, 2.

^o Id. 100, 1.

^d Gr. 364, R. XII.

^k Gr. 522, R. v.

^p Gr. 270.

^e Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^l Gr. 627, 3.

^q Gr. 627, 2.

^f Id. 38.

^m Gr. 343, R. VIII.

^r Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.

^s Gr. 611, (in.)

ores ad pugnandum^a effecissent;^b atque omnium voces audirentur,^b expectari^c diutius non oportere, quin^d ad castra ireretur;^c cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii^e fossas complerent,^b alii^e multis telis coniectis, defensores vallo^f munitionibusque depellerent, auxiliaresque, quibus^g ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat, lapidibus^h telisque subministrandis,ⁱ et ad aggere^j cespitibus comportandis, speciem atque opinionem pugnantium^k praeberent;^b cum item ab hostibus^l constanter ac non timide pugnaretur,^b telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent;^b equites, circumitis hostium castris, Crasso renunciaverunt, non eadem esse diligentiam ab^m decumanamⁿ portam castra^l munita, facilemque aditum habere.

26. Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis^h pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis quatuor cohortibus, quae, praesidio^m castris^m relictæ, intritæ ab labore erant, etⁿ longioreⁿ itinere^h circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent,^o omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt, atque, his prorutis, prius in hostium castris constitērunt, quam^p planè ab iis videri,^r aut, quid rei^p gereretur,^q cognosci^r posset. Tum vero, clamore ab eâ parte audito, nostri redintegratis viribus,^h quod^s plerumque in spe victoriæ accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare cœperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus,^t se per munitiones dejicere et fugam^h salutem petere^s intendērunt. Quos^u equitatus apertissimis campis^v consecratus,

^a Gr. 704.^b Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^p Gr. 843, R. VIII.^b Gr. 681.ⁱ Gr. 707, R. LXII.^q Gr. 627, 5.^c Id. 67, Note.^k Id. 19, (*militum*.)^r Id. 87.^d Gr. 627, 3.^l Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^s Id. 37, 9, Note 3.^e Gr. 276.^m Gr. 427, R. XIX.^t Id. 109, 2.^f Gr. 613, R. LII.ⁿ Gr. 473.^u Id. 38.^g Gr. 403, R. v.^o Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^v Gr. 611, (*in*.)

ex millium quinquaginta numēro, quæ^a ex Aquitaniā Cantabrisque convenisse^b constābat, vix quartā parte relictā^c multā^d nocte^e se in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc auditā pugnā,^f magna pars Aquitaniæ sese Crasso^g dedidit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo^h in numēro fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Preciāni, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusātes, Garītes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucæ ultimæ natiōnes, anni temporeⁱ confisæ, quod hiems subērat, hoc facere neglexērunt.

28. Eodē ferē tempore^j Cæsar, etsi prope exacta jam æstas erat, tamen, quod, omni Galliā^k pacatā, Morini Menapiique^l superērunt, qui^m in armis essent,ⁿ neque^o ad eum unquam legātos de pace misissent,^p arbitrātus, id bellum celeriter confici posse, eō exercitum adduxit: ^qqui longē aliā ratione, ac reliqui^r Galli, bellum agere instituērunt. Nam quod intelligēbant, maximas natiōnes,^s quæ prælio contendissent,^t pulsas^u superatasque esse,^v ^wcontinentesque silvas ac palūdes habēbant, eō se suāque omnia contulērunt. Ad quarum^x initium silvarum cūm Cæsar pervenisset,^y castrāque munire instituisset,^z neque^{aa} hostis intērim visus esset,^{ab} dispersis in opère nostris,^{ac} subitō ex omnibus partibus silvæ evolavērunt et in nostros^{ad} impētum fecērunt. Nostri^{ae} celeriter arma cepērunt, eosque in silvas repulērunt, et, compluribus^{af} interfectis, ^{ag}longius^{ah} impeditioribus locis secūti, paucos ex suis deperdidērunt.

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus^{ai} Cæsar silvas cādere instituit, et, ne, quis^{aj} inermibus imprudentibusque militibus^{ak} ab latere impētus fieri^{al} posset,^{am} omnem eam^{an} materiam, quæ

^a Gr. 671, R. LVIII, & 674.

^g Id. 38.

^o Gr. 655.

^h Gr. 485.

^p Gr. 631.

^b Id. 98, 2.

ⁱ Id. 109, 2.

^q Id. 19, 2.

^c Id. 17, 1.

^k Gr. 649, R. v, (*solū*.)

^r Id. 22, 3.

^d Gr. 565, R. XL.

^l Gr. 242, 1.

^s Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^e Id. 109, 2.

^m Gr. 728.

^t Gr. 522, R. iii.

^f Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

ⁿ Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^u Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

erat cæsa, ¹ conversam ad hostem collocābat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incredibili celeritāte ^a magno spatio ^b paucis diēbus ^c ² confecto, cū jam pecus atque ³ extrēma ^d impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ^e ipsi ^f densiōres silvas petērent; ejusmōdi sunt tempestātes consecūtæ, ut opus necessariō intermitterētur, ^g et, continuatiōne ^h imbrium diutius ⁱ sub pellibus milites continēri ^j non possent. ^k Itaque vastātis omnibus eōrum agris, ^l vicis ædificiisque incensis, Cæsar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, ^m quæ proximè bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocāvit.

^a Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ^d Id. 17, 1.

^b Id. 109, 2.

^e Gr. 631.

^c Gr. 565, R. XLI

^f Id. 32, 3.

^g Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^h Id. 87, 6.

BOOK IV.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I War with the Usipetes and Tenchtheri—Chap. 1–15. II. Cæsar's bridge over the Rhine, and his crossing into Germany—Chap. 16–19. III. Cæsar passes into Britain.—A battle—surrender of the Britains, and subsequent revolt.—Chap. 20–36. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 37–38.

1. ¹ Ea, quæ secūta est, hième, ^a qui fuit annus ² Cneio Pompeio, ^b Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipētes Germāni, et item Tenchthēri, magnā cum multitudīne homīnum, flumen Rhenum transiērunt, non longē a mari, ³ quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quōd, ab Suēvis complūres annos ^c exagitāti, bello premebantur et agricultūrā ^d prohibebantur. Suevōrum gens est longē maxīma et bellicosissīma Germanōrum ^e omnium. Hi centum pagos habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singūla ^f millia armatorū bellandi causā ex finibus edūcunt. Relīqui, ⁴ qui domi mansērint, ⁵ se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicē anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remānent. Sic neque agricultūra, ⁶ nec ratio atque usus belli, intermittitur. Sed privāti ac separāti agri apud eos nihil est; neque longiūs anno ^h remanēre uno in loco incolendi causā licet. Neque multū frumento, ¹ sed ⁶ maxīmam partem ^k lacte atque pecōre ¹ vivunt, multūque sunt in venationibus; quæ res et cibi genēre, ¹ et quotidīanā exercitātiōne, et libertāte vitæ (quōd, a puēris ⁷ nullo officio ¹ aut disciplinā assuefacti, nihil omnīno contra voluntātem faciunt), ^m et vires alit, et immāni corpōrum magnitudīne ⁿ homines efficit. Atque in eam ^o se consuetudinē adduxērunt,

^a Gr. 565, R. XL.

^f Id. 26, 1.

¹ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^b Gr. 380, & 381.

⁵ Gr. 645, R. iii.

^m Gr. 629.

^c Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^h Gr. 467, R. XXIV.

² Gr. 339, R. VII, &

^d Gr. 611, (*ab.*)

¹ Gr. 485.

Id. 6, 1.

^e Gr. 336, (*gens.*)

^k Gr. 611, (*secundum.*) ^o Gr. 123, 2, & Id. 28, 1.

ut locis frigidissimis, neque vestitûs,^a præter pelles, habeant^b quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur^b in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus^c est ad eos aditus magis eo, ¹ ut, quæ bello cepērint,^d quibus vendant,^e habeant,^b quam quò ullam rem ad se importāri desiderēt: ^f quinetiam ^g jumentis,^e quibus^b maxime Gallia delectatur, quæque impenso parant pretio,¹ Germāni importātis non utuntur: sed quæ sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, hæc ^h quotidianā exercitatiōne, summi ut sint ^k labōris,¹ efficiunt. Equestribus præliis sæpe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedibus^m præliantur; equosque eodem remanere vestigio^m assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriter, cū usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis^e uti. ⁴ Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quòd eā re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines, atque effeminari, arbitrantur.

3. ^a Publicè maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissimè a suis finibus vacare agros: ⁿ hanc re ^o significari, magnum numerumⁿ civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque, unā ex parte, a Suēvis, circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri ⁷ vacare dicuntur. ⁸ Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ⁹ ut est captus Germanorum), et paulo quam sunt ejusdem generis cetere humaniores; propterea quòd Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cū Suēvi, multis sæpe bellis experti, propter ¹⁰ amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis, finibus^o expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac multo^p humiliōres infirmioresque redegērunt.

^a Gr. 343, R. VIII.^f Gr. 627, 1.¹ Gr. 339, R. VII.^b Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^g Gr. 484, R. XXVI.^m Gr. 611, (in.)^c Gr. 394, R. ii.^h Gr. 485.ⁿ Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^d Gr. 644.¹ Gr. 581, R. XLIV.^o Gr. 618, R. LII.^e Gr. 636, R. i. & 638. ^k Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^p Gr. 579, R. XLIII.

4. ¹In eadē causā fuērunt Usipētes et Tencthēri, quos suprà diximus, qui complūres annos ^aSuevōrum vim sustinuerunt; ad extrēmum ^btamen, agris ^cexpulsi, et multis Germaniæ locis ^dtriennium ^evagāti, ad Rhenum pervenērunt: ^gquas ^gregiōnes Menapii incolēbant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, ædificia, vicosque habēbant; sed tantæ multitudinis aditū ^fperterriti, ex his ædificiis, quæ trans flumen habuērunt, demigravērunt, et, cis Rhenum dispositis præsiidiis, ^gGermanos transire prohibēbant. Illi, omnia experti, cū neque vi ^fcontendēre propter inopiam navium, neque ^hclam transire propter custodias Menapiōrum, possent, ^hreverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulavērunt; et, ⁱtridui viam progressi, rursus revertērunt, atque, omni hoc itinēre unā nocte equitatu ⁱconfecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppressērunt, qui, de Germanōrum discessu per exploratōres certiōres facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigravērunt. His ^kinterfectis, navibusque eōrum occupātis, ^kpriusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quæ citra Rhenum quiēta in suis sedibus erat, certior fiēret, ^kflumen transiērunt, atque, omnibus eōrum ædificiis ^loccupātis, ^lreliquam partem ^lhiēmis se eōrum copiis aluērunt.

5. His de rebus Cæsar certior factus, et ^minfirmiātem Gallōrum veritus, ^mquod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiiles, et novis plerumque rebus ⁿstudent, ⁿnihil his ⁿcommittendum existimāvit. ^oEst autem hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis, ^out et viatōres, etiam invitos, consistēre cogant, ^pet, quod quisque eōrum de quāque re audiērit ^paut cognovērit, quærant, ^pet mercatōres in oppīdis vulgus circumsistat, ^pquibusque ex regionibus veniant, ^qquasque ibi res cognovērint, pronuciāre cogant. ^qHis rumoribus atque auditionibus per-

^a Gr. 565, R. XLI.^g Id. 109, 2.^m Gr. 403, R. v.^b Id. 19, (*tempus*.)^h Gr. 631.ⁿ Gr. 522, R. iii.^c Gr. 618, R. LII.ⁱ Gr. 611, (*ab*.)^o Gr. 364, R. XII.^d Gr. 611, (*in*.)^k Gr. 627, 4.^p Gr. 677.^e Id. 87, 2d, 4, Note 1.^l Id. 166, 1.^q Gr. 627, 5.^f Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

mōti, de ¹summis sæpe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum ^a eos
²e vestigio pœnitēre necesse est, ³cū incertis rumoribus ^b
 serviant, ^cet plerique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant."

6. Quā consuetudinē cognitā, Cæsar, ⁴ne ^dgraviōri bello
 occurreret, maturiūs quā consuebat ad exercitum proficis-
 citur. Eō cū venisset, ea, quæ fore suspicātus erat, ^efacta ^f
 cognōvit; missas ^flegatiōnes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Ger-
 mānos, invitatosque ^feos, uti ab Rheno discederent; ^gom-
 niāque quæ postulāssent, ^hab se fore parāta. Quā ⁱspe ad-
 ducti Germāni latiūs jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburōnum
 et Condrusōrum, qui sunt Trevirōrum clientes, pervenērunt.
 Principibus Galliæ evocātis, Cæsar ea quæ cognovērat ^kdis-
 simulanda ^ksibi ^lexistimāvit, eorumque anīmis permulsis et
 confirmātis, equitatūque imperāto, bellum cum Germānis
 gerere constituit.

7. Re ^mfrumentariā comparātā, equitibusque delectis, iter
 in ea loca facere cœpit, quibus ⁿin locis esse Germānos au-
 diēbat. A quibus cū paucōrum diērum iter ^oabesset, le-
 gāti ab his venērunt, quorum hæc fuit oratio: "Germānos ^p
 neque priōres ^qPopūlo Romāno bellum inferre, neque tamen
 recusāre, ^rsi lacessantur, quin armis contendant; ^squod Ger-
 manōrum consuetūdo hæc sit ^ta majoribus tradita, quicum-
 que bellum infērant, ^uresistere, neque deprecāri: hæc ta-
 men dicere, venisse ^vinvitos, ^wejectos domo." Si ^xsuam gra-
 tiam Romāni velint, posse eis utiles esse amīcos: vel sibi
 agros attribuant, vel patiantur ^yeos tenere quos armis pos-
 sedērint. ^zSese unis Suēvis ¹⁰concedere, quibus ne Dii qui-
 dem immortāles pares esse possint: reliquum quidem ¹¹in
 terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint."

^a Gr. 419, Exc. II.

^b Gr. 656.

^p Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

² Gr. 403, R. v.

¹ Id. 38.

^q Gr. 274.

^c Gr. 630.

^k Id. 108, 4.

^r Id. 94, 3.

^d Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^l Gr. 531.

^s Gr. 627, 3.

^e Gr. 399, R. iv.

^m Id. 109, 2.

^t Gr. 634.

^f Id. 98, 2.

ⁿ Id. 37, 6, Note 1.

^z Gr. 613, R. LII.

^g Id. 627, 1, 3d.

^o Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^v Gr. 644.

8. ¹ Ad hæc Cæsar, quæ visum est, respondit; sed ² exitus fuit orationis: "Sibi ^a nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliâ remanerent: neque ³ verum esse, qui ^b suos fines tueri non potuerint, ^c alienos occupare: ⁴ neque ullos in Galliâ vacare agros qui dari, tantæ præsertim multitudîni, ^d sine injuriâ possint." Sed licere, si velint, in Ubi-
 ōrum finibus considere, quorum sint ^e legati apud se, et de Suevorum injuriis querantur, ^f et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab iis impetraturum."^g

9. Legati hæc se ad suos relaturos ^h dixerunt, et, re deliberatâ, post diem tertium ad Cæsarem reversuros: interea ne propius se ⁱ castra moveret, ^j perierunt. Ne id quidem ^k Cæsar ab se impetrari posse dixit: cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatûs ab iis aliquot diebus ^l ante prædandi frumentandique causâ ad Ambivaretos trans Mosam missam. Hos ^m expectari equites, atque ejus rei causâ moram ⁿ interpōni, arbitrabatur.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vpsêgo, qui est in finibus Lingonum, ^o et, parte quâdam ex Rheno receptâ, quæ appellatur Vahâlis, ^p insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus ^q passuum octoginta in Oceânus transit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio ^r per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, Trevirorum citatus ^s fertur; ^t et, ubi Oceâno ^u appropinquat, ^v in plures diffluit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur ^w (ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus ^x atque ovis avium vivere existimantur), ^y multisque capitibus in Oceânus influit.

^a Gr. 394, R. ii.

^b Gr. 611, (ad.)

^p Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^b Id. 87, (eos.)

ⁱ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^q Gr. 274.

^c Gr. 644.

^k Id. 121, Note 2.

^r Id. 116, 3.

^d Gr. 522, R. iii.

^l Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^s Gr. 399, R. iv.

^e Gr. 636, R. & 638.

^m Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^t Gr. 316, R. ii.

^f Gr. 655.

ⁿ Gr. 319, R. V.

^u Gr. 485.

^g Id. 100, 2.

^o Gr. 467, R. XXIV.

11. Cæsar cùm ab hoste non ampliùs passuum duodècim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legāti rever-
tuntur: qui,^a in itinère congressi, magnopère, ne longiùs
progredieretur,^b orābant. Cùm id non impetrāssent,^c pete-
bant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, præmit-
teret,^b eosque pugnā^d prohiberet; sibi que uti potestātem
faceret, in Ubios legātos mittendi: quorum^e si Principes ac
Senātus^f sibi jurejurando^f fidem fecissent, eā conditione,^g
quæ a Cæsāre ferretur, se usūros ostendebant: ad has res
conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret.^b Hæc omnia Cæsar
^h eodem illo pertinere^h arbitrābatur, ut, tridui morā interpo-
sitā, equites eōrum, qui abessent,ⁱ reverterentur:^k tamen
sese non longiùs millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causā
processūrum eo die dixit: huc postero die^l quāam frequentis-
sīmi convenirent,^b ut de eōrum postulātis cognosceret.^k In-
tèrim ad præfectos, qui cum omni equitātu antecesserant,
mittit, qui^m nunciārent, ne hostes prælio lacesserent,^b et, si
ipsi lacesserentur, ⁿsustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitū
propiùs accessisset.ⁿ

12. At hostes, ubi primūm nostros equites conspexerunt,
quorum erat quinque millium numērus, cū ipsi non am-
pliùs^o octingentos equites habērent, quod ii, qui frumentandi
causā ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentū-
bus nostris,^p quod legāti eōrum paulo antè a Cæsāre disces-
serant, atque is dies induciis^q erat ab eis petitus, impetu
facto, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus
nostris,^p consuetudine suā^r ad pedes desiluērunt, subfossis-
que equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in fugam
conjecerunt, atque ita perterritos egērunt, ut non priùs fugā^r
desisterent,^s quā in conspectu agmīnis nostri venissent.

^a Id. 39, 5.^g Gr. 484, R. XXVI.ⁿ Gr. 627, 4.^b Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^h Id. 96, 2.^o Gr. 471.^c Gr. 631.ⁱ Gr. 644.^p Id. 109, 1.^d Gr. 611, (ab.)^k Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^q Gr. 427, R. XIX & 482.^e Id. 39.^l Gr. 565, R. XL.^r Gr. 611, (ex.)^f Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^m Gr. 643, 4th.^s Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

¶ eo prælio ex equitibus^a nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso, Aquitanus, ¹ amplissimo genere^b natus, cujus avus in civitate suâ regnum obtinuêrat, amicus^c ab Senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri^d intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret,^e illum ex periculo^f eripuit: ipse, equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissimè restitit. Cum circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset,^g atque id frater, qui jam prælio^h excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equoⁱ se hostibus^j obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto prælio, Cæsar neque jam sibi^k legatos^l audiendos,^m neque conditiones accipiendasⁿ arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: ¹ expectare^o verò, dum hostium copiarum augerentur,^p equitatusque reverteretur, ²summæ dementiæ^q esse^r judicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno prælio auctoritatis^s essent consecuti, sentiebat: quibus^t ad consilia capienda nihil^u spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quæstore communicato, ³ne quem diem pugnae prætermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quòd postridie ejus diei^v mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani, frequentes, ⁴omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt; simul, ut dicebatur, ⁵sui purgandi causâ, quòd ⁶contra atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, prælium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. ⁷Quos^w sibi Cæsar oblatos gavissus, illico retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quòd recenti prælio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

^a Gr. 360. [Id. 6, 5. ^s Gr. 613, R. LII.

^m Gr. 627, 4.

^b Gr. 462, R. XXIII, & ^h Gr. 531.

^o Gr. 364, R. XII.

^c Gr. 319, R. V.

¹ Gr. 671, R. esse.

^p Id. 94, 3.

^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

² Id. 108, 4.

^q Gr. 343, R. VIII.

^e Gr. 631.

³ Gr. 656.

^r Id. 39, & Gr. 522, R. iii.

^f Gr. 603.

⁴ Gr. 660, R. LVI.

⁵ Gr. 592, R. XLVI.

14. Acie triplici institutâ, et celeriter octo millium^a itin-
 ère confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quàm, quid
 ageretur, ^b Germâni sentire possent.^c Qui,^d omnibus rebus
 subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu su-
 òrum, neque consilii habendi^e neque arma capiendi^f spatio
 datò, ¹ perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an
 castra defendere, an fugâ salutem petere, præstaret.² Quo-
 rum³ timor cum fremitu et concursu ⁴ significaretur, milites
 nostri, ⁵ pristini dièi perfidiâ incitati, in castra irrupērunt.
 Quorum⁶ qui¹ celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper
 nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentâque præ-
 lium commisērunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulie-
 rumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenum-
 que transierant), passim fugere cœpit; ad quos⁸ consectan-
 dos Cæsar equitatum misit.

15. Germâni, post tergum ⁴ clamore audito, cum suos⁵
 interfici viderent, armis abjectis, signisque militaribus re-
 lictis, se ex castris eiecērunt: et, cum ⁶ ad confluentem Mo-
 sæ et Rheni pervenissent, ⁷ reliquâ fugâ desperatâ, magno
 numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen præcipitaverunt, at-
 que ibi timore,¹ lassitudine,² vi fluminis oppressi, periērunt.
 Nostri ad unum³ omnes incolūmes, perpaucis vulneratis,
⁴ ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quad-
 ringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra recepē-
 runt. Cæsar his,⁵ quos in castris retinuerat, ⁶ discedendi
 potestatem fecit: illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum ver-
 iti,⁷ quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle
 dixerunt. His⁸ Cæsar libertatem concessit.

16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Cæsar
 statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum⁹ illa fuit
 justissima, quòd, cum videret, Germânos tam faciliè impelli,

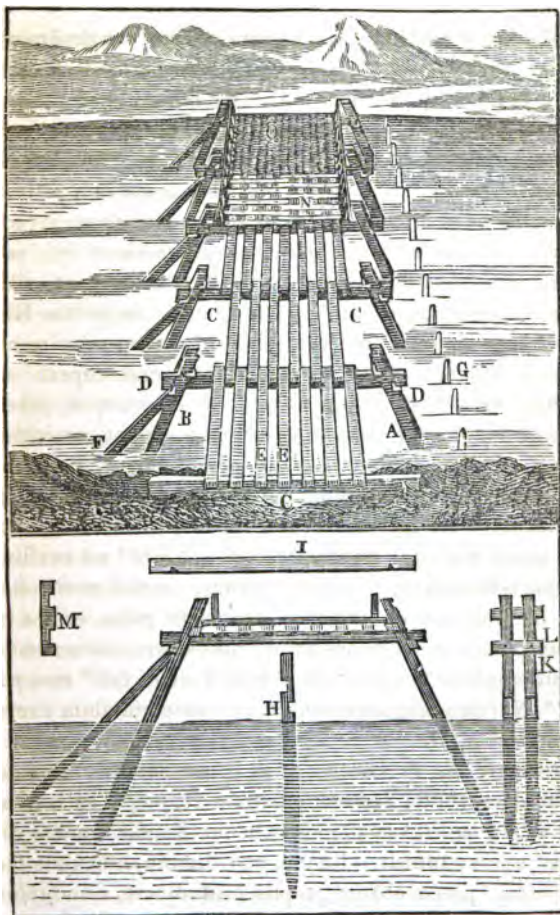
^a Gr. 339, R. VII.^f Id. 112, 1.¹ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^b Gr. 627, 5.⁸ Id. 89.^m Id. 19, (hominem.)^c Gr. 627, 4.^h Id. 89, & Gr. 355, R. X.ⁿ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^d Id. 89, 5.¹ Id. 37, (ii.)^o Id. 106, 1.^e Id. 112, 5.^k Id. 19, 2, & Gr. 671. ^p Id. 88, & Gr. 355, R. X.

ut in Galliam venirent,^a ¹ suis quoque rebus^b eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent, ² et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. ³ Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi, praedandi^c frumentandique causâ Mosam transisse, neque praelio^d interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos^e cum Cæsar nuncios misisset, qui^f postularent, eos, qui sibi^g Galliæque bellum intulissent, sibi^h dedèrent,ⁱ responderunt: “Populi Romani imperium Rhenum¹ finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non æquum existimaret, ⁴ cur sui^k quicquam^l esse imperii¹ aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet?”^m Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Cæsarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dedérant, magnopere orabant, “ut sibiⁿ auxilium ferret,^h quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; ^a vel, si id facere ^o occupationibus reipublicæ prohiberetur, exercitum modò Rhenum transportaret: ^b id¹ sibi^d ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissimo praelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione^o et amicitia Populi Romani tuti^p esse possint.”^q Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tutum esse^r arbitrabatur, ⁶ neque suæ^r neque Populi Romani dignitatis^k esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis ⁷ proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id¹ sibiⁿ contendendum, aut

^a Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^c Gr. 501, R. XXIX.ⁿ Gr. 655.^b Gr. 391, R. XVII.^h Gr. 627, 1, 3d, & 632.^o Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^o Id. 112, 1.¹ Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^p Gr. 326.^d Gr. 398, R. I.^k Gr. 364, R. XII.^q Id. 51, 5.^l Id. 39, 9.¹ Gr. 343, R. VIII.^r Id. 29, 1. [R. LXI.^f Gr. 643, 4th.^m Gr. 634.^s Id. 113, & Gr. 699,

**PLAN OF THE BRIDGE MADE OVER THE RHINE BY CÆSAR
IN TEN DAYS.**



A. Tigna bina sesquipedalia : Two piles each a foot and a half thick, joined together at the distance of two feet. **H.** One of the piles detached. **K.** Form of the two piles braced together. **B.** Two opposite piles similarly joined together, and at the distance of forty feet down the river from the other. **C. Trabs bipedalis :** Large beam two feet square, extending from the upper to the lower piles. **I.** The same beam detached. **D. Fibula binæ :** Two braces fastening each pair of piles together, as seen at **L.**, one on each side, (*utrimque*)—the one below, supporting the beam, (*trabs*), the other above it. **M.** Form of the brace detached. **E. E. Materies :** Timbers laid from beam to beam, (*directa*), lengthwise of the bridge. **N. Longurii :** Spars laid across the timbers. **O. Crates :** Hurdles laid over the spars. **F. Sublicæ :** Stakes sunk in the river as buttresses, and fastened (*conjunctæ*), to each lower pair of piles. **G. Aliæ sublicæ :** Other stakes driven in above the bridge, and separate from it, as a fence against trunks of trees &c. sent down the river.

PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATION

aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. ¹Rationem pontis hanc instituit. ²Tigna bina^a sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo præacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo^b pedum duorum inter se jungēbat. ³Hæc cum^c machinationibus^d immissa in flumen defixerat, fistucisque^e adegerat, ⁴non publicæ modo^d directæ^e ad perpendiculū, sed prona^e ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumbērent; ^f ⁵iis^e item contraria bina,^g ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo^b pedum quadragenūm, ab inferiōre parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuēbat. ⁶Hæc utraq̃ue insuper bipedalibus trabibus^d immissis quantum^h eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis^h ab extrēmā parte, distinebantur: ⁷quibusⁱ disclūsis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat opēris firmitudo, atque ⁸ea^m rerum natura, ut, ⁹quoⁿ major vis aquæ se incitavisset, ^ohocⁿ arctius illigata tenerentur.^p ¹⁰Hæc directā materie^q injecta contexebantur, et ¹¹longuriis^d cratibusque consternebantur: ¹²ac nihilo secius publicæ et ad inferiorem partem fluminis obliquè agebantur, quæ,^r ¹³pro pariēte subjectæ, et cum omni opere conjunctæ, vim fluminis excipērent: ^s ¹⁴et aliæ item supra pontem mediocri spatio,^b ut, si arborum trunci, sive naves ¹⁵dejiciendi opēris essent^t a barbāris missæ, his defensoribus^d earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti^u nocērent.

18. Diebus^v decem, ¹⁶quibus materia cœpta erat compotari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, ¹⁷ad utramque partem pontis firmo præsidio^b relicto, in fines Sigmabrōrum contendit. Intērim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legāti veniunt,^w quibus^x pacem atque amicitiam pe-

^a Id. 26, 3.^b Gr. 573, R. XLII.^c Gr. 630.^d Gr. 542, R. XXIX.^e Gr. 274.^f Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^g Gr. 382, R. XVI.^h Id. 109, 2.ⁱ Id. 46, (*tantum.*) & ^b. ^q Gr. 524, R. v.^k Id. 110.^l Id. 38, & 109, 2.^m Id. 124, 17, & 28.ⁿ Gr. 580, & Id. 22, 4,

Obs.

^o Gr. 656.^p Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^r Gr. 648, 4th.^s Id. 19, (*publica.*)^t Id. 81, 2, & Gr. 627, 2.^u Gr. 408, R. v.^v Gr. 565, R. XLI.^w Gr. 157, 3.^x Gr. 391, R. XVII.

lentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se addūci^a jubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo^b pons institui cœptus est, fugā comparatā, ^c hortantibus iis quos ex Tenchtēris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus^d suis excesserant, suāque omnia exportaverant, seque ^e in solitudinem ac silvas abdidērant.

19. Cæsar, paucos dies^e in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis ædificiisque incensis,^f frumentisque succēsis,^f se in fines Ubiōrum recēpit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēvis premerentur,^g hæc ab iis cognōvit: Suēvos, posteaquam per exploratōres pontem fieri comperissent,^h moreⁱ suo concilio habito, nuncios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent,^k liberos, uxōres, suāque omnia in silvas deponerent,^k atque omnes qui arma ferre possent^l unum in locum convenirent:^k ^m hunc esse delectum medium^m ferè regiōnum earum quas Suēvi obtinērent:ⁿ hīc Romanōrum adventum expectāre atque ibi decertāre constituisse.^o Quod^p ubi Cæsar compērit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causā transducere exercitum constituērat, ut Germānis metum injiceret,^k ut Sigambros ^q ulciscerētur,^k ut Ubios obsidiōne liberāret,^k diēbus^r omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, ^s satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum^o arbitratus, se in Galliam recēpit, pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte æstātis reliquā, Cæsar, etsi in his locis, quòd omnis Gallia ad septentriōnes vergit, ^t matūræ sunt hiēmes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quòd, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis,^q hostibus nostris^r ^s inde subministrata auxilia intelligēbat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficēret,^s tamen magno sibi^t usui fore arbitrabātur si modò insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca,

^a Id. 90, 4.^g Gr. 627, 2.ⁿ Gr. 634.^b Gr. 565, R. XL.^h Gr. 627, 4.^o Id. 92, 2.^c Id. 109, 1.ⁱ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^p Id. 38, 4.^d Gr. 613, R. LII.^k Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^q Gr. 611, (in.)^e Gr. 565, R. XLI.^l Gr. 644.^r Gr. 522, R. iii.^f Id. 104, 1.^m Gr. 251, R. I, & 252. ^t Gr. 427, R. XIX.

portus, aditus cognovisset: quæ omnia ferè Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim ¹temèrè præter mercatōres illò adit quisquam, ²neque iis ipsis ³quicquam, præter oram maritimam atque eas regiōnes quæ sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset ^binsulæ magnitudo, neque quæ ^caut quantæ ^cnatiōnes incolerent, ^bneque ³quem ^cusum belli haberent, ^baut quibus ^cinstitūtis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majōrum navium multitudinē idonei ^dportus, reperire poterat.

21. Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquàm pericūlum faceret, idoneum esse arbitrātus ^eCaium Volusēnum, cum navi longā præmittit. Huic ^fmandat, uti, explorātis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertatur: ^gipse cum omnibus copiis in Mōrinos proficiscitur, quòd inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam ^hsuperiōre æstāte ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire. ¹Intērim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatōres perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulæ civitatibus ad eum legāti veniunt, qui polliceantur ^kobsides dare, atque imperio ¹Populi Romāni obtemperāre. Quibus ^mauditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut ⁴in eā sententiā permanerent, ⁵eos domum ⁿremittebat, et cum his unā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidēlem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni ^ohabebatur, mittit. Huic impērat, quas possit adeat ^bcivitātes, ⁶horteturque ⁵ut Populi Romāni ⁶fidem sequantur; ⁷seque celeriter eò ventūrum nunciet. ⁵Volusēnus, perspectis regionibus, ⁷quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, ⁸qui navi egrēdi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, ⁹quinto die ad Cæsārem revertitur; quæque ibi perspexisset renunciat.

^a Gr. 528, R. XXXIII. ^f Id. 63, & Gr. 504.

¹ Gr. 403, R. v.

^b Gr. 627, 5.

² Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^m Id. 38, 109, 2.

^c Id. 48, & Gr. 127, 1.

³ Id. 43.

ⁿ Gr. 558, R. XXXIX.

^d Gr. 322.

⁴ Id. 90, 4.

^o Gr. 521, R. ii.

^e Id. 106, 1.

^k Gr. 643, 4th.

⁶ Gr. 645, R. iii.

22. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandarum^a causâ morâtur, ex magnâ parte Morinorum ad eum legâti venērunt, qui^b se¹ de superiōris temporis consilio excusarent,^b quod homīnes barbâri, et nostræ consuetudinis^c imperiti, bellum Populo Româno fecissent,^d seque ea, quæ imperâset,^e factûros pollicerentur.^b Hoc sibi^f satis opportunè Cæsar accidisse arbitrâtus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat, neque belli gerendi,^g propter anni tempus, facultatem habēbat, neque^h has tantularum rerum occupatiōnesⁱ sibi^b Britannia¹ anteponendas judicābat, magnum his^k obsidum numērum impērat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recēpit. ^aNavibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot^l satis esse ad duas transportandas legiōnes existimābat, quicquid præterea navium^m longarum habēbat, quæstōri, legâtis, præfectisque distribuit. Huc accedēbant octodēcim onerariæ naves, quæ ex eo loco abⁿ millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minùs in eundem portum pervenire possent.^o Has equitibus distribuit; reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottæ, legâtis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legâti non venērant, deducendum^p dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum, legâtum, cum eo præsidio quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenēre iussit.

23. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum^a tempestatē, ⁴tertiâ ferè vigiliâ⁵ solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi,⁶ et naves conscendere,⁷ et se sequi⁸ iussit: a quibus⁹ cum id paulo tardiùs esset administratum, ipse⁷ horâ diēi circiter quartâ cum primis navibus Britanniam attingit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus⁸ expositas hostium

^a Id. 112, 5.^b Gr. 531.^c Gr. 578.^b Gr. 643, 4th.¹ Gr. 522, R. iii.^o Gr. 627, 1.^c Gr. 349, R. IX.^k Gr. 501, R. XXIX, & ^p Id. 107, 1.^d Gr. 655.

Id. 5, 1.

^q Id. 112, 3.^e Gr. 644.¹ Id. 46, 2.^r Id. 90, 1.^f Gr. 399, R. iv.^m Gr. 343, R. VIII, & ^s Id. 38.^g Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

Gr. 347.

copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci hæc erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in littus telum adjici^a posset. Hunc² ad egrediendum nequâquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquæ naves eò convenirent,^b ad horam nonam in anchoris expectavit. Intèrim legatis^c tribunisque militum convocatis, et quæ ex Voluseno cognosset,^d et quæ fieri vellet,^d ostendit, ⁴ monuitque (ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimæ res postularent,^e ut quæ celèrem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur.^f His^c dimissis, et ventum et æstum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo,^c et sublatis anchoris,^c circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano littore^g naves constituit.

24. At barbari, consilio^c Romanorum cognito, præmisso^h equitatu, ²et essedariis, quo plerumque genereⁱ in præliis uti consueverunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus^k egrèdi⁶ prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quòd naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui^a non poterant; ⁷militibusⁱ autem, ignotis locis,^c impeditis manibus,^c magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum,ⁱ et in fluctibus consistendum,ⁱ et cum hostibus erat pugnandum:¹ cum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, ⁸omnibus membris^m expediti, notissimis locis,^g audacter tela conjicerent,ⁿ et equos ⁹insuefactos incitarent.ⁿ Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis^o pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritateⁱ ac studio quoⁱ ¹²pedestribus uti præliis consueverant, utebantur.

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animum advertit, naves longas, ¹⁰quarum et species erat barbaris^p inusitator, et motus ad usum expeditor, paulum removèri ab onerariis navibus, et

^a Id. 87, 1.

^b Gr. 627, 4.

^c Id. 109, 2.

^d Gr. 627, 5.

^e Gr. 655.

^f Gr. 627, 1, 3d, & 632. ¹ Gr. 699, R. LXI, &

^g Gr. 611, (in.) Id. 118, 2.

^h Gr. 268, & Id. 109, 2. ^m Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.

ⁱ Gr. 484, R. XXVI. ⁿ Gr. 631.

^k Gr. 618, R. LII. ^o Gr. 349, R. IX.

^p Gr. 382, R. XVI.

remis incitâri,^a et ad latus apertum hostium constitui,^a atque inde fundis, sagittis,² tormentis, hostes propelli^a ac submovêri jussit: ³quæ res magno usui^b nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figurâ, et remôrum motu, et inusitâto genêre tormentôrum permôti, barbâri constitêrunt, ⁴ac paulum modò pedem retulêrunt. Atque, nostris militibus^c cunctantibus, maxîmè propter altitudînem maris, ⁵qui^d decimæ legiônis aquilam ferêbat, contestâtus^e Deos, ut ⁶ea res legiôni^f felicitêr evenîret: “Desilite,” inquit, “commilitônes, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certè meum reipublicæ atque imperatôri officium præstitêro.” Hoc cùm ⁷magnâ voce dixisset, ⁸ex navi se projêcit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre cœpit. Tum nostri, cohortâti inter se,^g ne^h tantum dedêcus admitterêtur, universi ex navi desiluêrunt: hos item ex proximis navibus cùm conspexissent, subsecûti hostibusⁱ appropinquârunt.

26. Pugnâtum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quòd neque ordînes servâre,^k neque firmîter insistere,^k neque signa subsêqui^k potêrant, atque alius aliâ^l ex navi, quibuscumque^m signis occurrêrat, se aggregâbat, magno opêre perturbabantur. Hostes verò, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex littôre aliquos ⁹singulâres ex navi egredientes conspexêrant, incitâtis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucosⁿ circumсистêbant: alii ab latêre aperto in universos tela conjiciêbant. ¹⁰Quod^o cùm ânimum advertisset Cæsar, ¹¹scaphas longârum navium, item ¹²speculatoria navigia militibus complêri^a jussit, et, quos^p laborantes conspexêrat, iis subsidia submittêbat. Nostri, simul^q in arîdo constitêrunt, suis omnibus consecûtis, in hostes impêtum fecêrunt, atque eos in fugam dedêrunt, neque longiùs prosêqui^k potuêrunt, quòd

^a Id. 90, 4.^g Gr. 118, 5.^m Gr. 293, & Id. 37, 7,^b Gr. 427; R. XIX.^h Gr. 827, 1, 8d, &

Note 2.

^c Id. 109, 1.

Id. 121.

ⁿ Gr. 613, R. LII.^d Id. 37, 3.ⁱ Gr. 399, R. iv.^o Id. 38, 7.^e Id. 105, 2.^k Id. 87, 7.^p Id. 43.^f Gr. 391, R. XVII.^l Gr. 275, & Id. 25, 1.^q Id. 124, 18, (Sup. ac.)

equites ¹ cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Cæsari defuit.

¶ 7. Hostes proelio superati, simul^a atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Cæsarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quæque imperasset^b sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Unà cum his legatis Commius Atrēbas venit, quem^c ²suprà demonstravēram a Cæsare in Britanniam præmissum.^d Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos^e oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehendērant, atque in vincula coniecērant: tum, proelio facto, remisērunt et in petendā^f pace ejus rei ⁴culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscerētur, petivērunt. Cæsar questus, quod, cum ultro^g in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent,^f bellum sine causâ intulissent,^g ignoscere^h imprudentiæ^b dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem, ex longinquiōribus locisⁱ arcessitam, paucis diēbusⁱ sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jussērunt, principesque undique convenire, et se civitatesque suas Cæsari commendare cōperunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmatā, ⁸post diem quartum, quā est in Britanniam ventum,^k naves octodēcim, de quibus⁸ suprà demonstratum est, quæ equites sustulērunt, ex superiōre portu leni vento solvērunt. ¹⁰Quæ¹ cum appropinquārent Britanniae, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum^m cursum tenere posset,ⁿ sed aliæ eodem, unde erant profectæ, referrentur; aliæ ad inferiōrem partem insulæ, ¹¹quæ est propius solis occāsum,^o magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: ¹²quæ^p tamen, anchōris jactis, cum fluctibus complerentur,^f ¹³necessariō adversā nocte in altum provectæ, continentem petiērunt.

^a Id. 124, 18.

^f Gr. 631.

¹ Id. 39, 6, or 39, 1.

^b Id. 80, 1.

^g Gr. 655.

^m Gr. 355, R. X.

^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII, & ^d Gr. 403, R. v.

ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^e Id. 98, 2. [Id. 91, 4. ^h Gr. 585, R. XLI.

^o Gr. 611, (ad.)

^f Gr. 707, R. LXII.

^k Id. 67, 5, Note.

^p Id. 38.

29. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset ^a luna plena, ¹ qui ^b dies maritimos æstus maximos in Oceāno efficere consuevit; ² nostrisque ^c id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus ^d Cæsar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum ^e subduxerat, æstus complēbat; et onerarias, ³ quæ ad anchōras erant deligatæ, tempestas ⁴ afflictabat; neque ulla nostris^f facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus ⁵ fractis, reliquæ cū essent, funibus, ⁶ anchōris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod ^b necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliæ, quibus reportari possent; ¹ et omnia deerant, quæ ad reficiendas eas usui ^k sunt, et, ⁸ quod omnibus ¹ constabat hiemari in Galliā oportere, frumentum ⁶ his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus ^m rebus ⁸ cognitis, principes Britannię, qui post prælium factum ad ea, quæ jussērat Cæsar, facienda convenērant, inter se collocūti, cū equites ⁿ et naves et frumentum Romanis ^o deesse intelligērent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscērent, quæ hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Cæsar legiōnes transportaverat, optimum factu ^p esse duxerunt, rebellione ⁸ factā, frumento ⁴ commeatūque nostros prohibere, et ⁷ rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis, aut reditu ^q interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam transiturum confidēbant. Itaque, rursus conjuratione ⁸ factā, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere cōeperunt.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum eōrum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ⁸ ex eventu navium suarum, ⁹ et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermisērant, fore ^r id, ⁿ quod accidit, suspicabatur.

^a Gr. 627, 1, 4th.

⁸ Id. 109, 2.

^m Id. 38, 3.

^b Gr. 292, & Id. 37, 4.

^h Id. 37, 9, Note 3.

ⁿ Gr. 671, R. LVIII

^c Gr. 382, R. XVI.

ⁱ Gr. 638.

^o Gr. 393, R. I.

^d Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^k Gr. 432.

^p Id. 114, 2.

^e Id. 19, (*locum*.)

¹ Gr. 409, R. XVIII,

^q Gr. 611, (*ab*.)

^f Gr. 522, R. iii.

& Id. 19.

^r Id. 100, 12.

Itaque ¹ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferēbat,^a et, quæ ^bgravissimè afflictæ erant naves, earum ^cmateriâ atque ære ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quæ ad eas res erant usui,^d ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodēcim navibus amissis, ^ereliquis ^e ut navigari commodè posset, effecit.

32. ^aDum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetudine unā frumentatum^f missâ, quæ appellabatur septima, neque ullâ ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositâ, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum ⁴in statione erant, Cæsari renunciârunt, pulvèrem ^gmajorem, ^hquàm consuetudo ferret,^h in eâ parte vidēri, quamⁱ in partem legio iter fecisset. Cæsar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid^j novi a barbaris initum ^kconsilii, cohortes, quæ ⁶in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci,^l duas ex reliquis ⁷in stationem succedere,^l reliquas armari^l et confestim sese subsequi^l jussit. Cum paulò longius a castris processisset, suos ^mab hostibus premi,^m atque ægrè sustinēre, ⁿet, confertâ legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tela ⁿconjici,^m animum advertit. Nam ⁹quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes, huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituērant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo ⁿoccupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos ¹⁰incertis ordinibus perturbavērant: simul equitatu^o atque essēdis^o circumdederant.

33. ¹¹Genus hoc est ex essēdis pugnae: primò per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ¹²ipso^o terrōre^o equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant;

^a Gr. 160, 2.^c Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ^k Id. 98, 2.^b Id. 37, 6, Note 1, & ^f Gr. 712, R. LXIII. ^l Id. 90, 4.

Id. 43.

^g Gr. 671, R. LVIII. ^m Id. 96, 6.^c Id. 19, (navium.)^h Gr. 655.ⁿ Gr. 705.^d Gr. 432.ⁱ Id. 37, 6, Note 1.^o Id. 32, 5.

et cūm se inter equitūm tērmās ¹insinuavērint,^a ex essēdis desiliunt, et pedibūs praeliantur. ²Aurīgæ intērim paulatim ex praelio excēdunt, ³atque ita curru ^bse collōcant, ut, si illi a multitudīne hostium premantur,^c expeditūm ad suos receptūm habeant.^d ⁴Ita mobilitātem equitūm, stabilitātem peditūm, in praeliis præstant: ⁵ac tantum usu quotidiāno et exercitatiōne efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac præcipiti loco, ⁶incitatos equos sustinēre, ⁷et brevi ^emoderārī ac flectēre, et per temōnem percurrēre, et in iugo insistēre, et inde se in currus citissimē recipere consuērunt.^d

34. Quibus ^frebus,^g perturbātis nostris novitāte pugnæ, tempore ^hopportunitissimō Cæsar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu ⁱhostes constitērunt, nostri se ex timōre recepērunt. Quo ^kfacto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum praelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus,^l suo se loco ^mcontinuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiōnes reduxit. Dum hæc geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discessērunt. Secūtæ sunt ⁿcontinuos complūres dies^m tempestātes, quæ ⁿet nostros in castris continērent,ⁿ et hostem a pugnā prohibērent.ⁿ Intērim barbāri nuncios in omnes partes dimisērunt, paucitatemque nostrōrum militū ^osuis prædicavērunt, et, ¹⁰quanta prædæ faciendæ,^o atque in perpetuum sui liberandi,^o facultas darētur,^p si Romānos castris^q expulissent, demonstravērunt. His rebus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitatūsque coactā, ad castra venērunt.

35, Cæsar, etsi idem,^r quod superioribus diēbus ^haccidērat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsī, celeritāte pericūlum effugērent; ^stamen nactus equites circiter triginta,

^a Gr. 630.^g Gr. 611, (in.)ⁿ Gr. 644.^b Gr. 611, (cum.)^h Gr. 565, R. XL.^o Id. 112, 5.^c Gr. 627, 2.ⁱ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^p Gr. 627, 5.^d Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^k Id. 38, 5.^q Gr. 613, R. LII.^e Id. 19, (tempore.)^l Id. 106, 1.^r Gr. 671, R. LVIII, &^f Id. 38.^m Gr. 565, R. XLI.^s Gr. 678. [Id. 19.]

quos Commius Atrēbas, de quo ¹antē dictum est, ²secuta trans-
portaverat, legiōnes in acie pro castris constituit. Commi-
se praelio, diutius nostrōrum militum impētum hostes ferre
non potuerunt, ac terga vertērunt. Quos ³tanto spatio ⁴se-
cūti, quantum ⁵cursu ⁶et viribus efficere potuerunt, complū-
res ex iis occiderunt; deinde, ⁷omnibus ⁸longē latēque
afflictis incensisque, se in castra recepērunt.

36. Eōdem die legāti, ab hostibus missi ad Cæsarem de
pace, venērunt. His ⁹Cæsar numerum obsidum, quem an-
tea imperaverat, duplicāvit, eosque in continentem addūci ¹⁰
jussit, quod, propinquā ¹¹die ¹²æquinocitii, infirmis navibus,
¹³hiēmi ¹⁴navigatiōnem subjiciendam ¹⁵non existimābat. Ipse,
idoneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem
naves solvit, quæ omnes incolūmes ad continentem pervenē-
runt; sed ex his onerariæ duæ ¹⁶eosdem, quos reliquæ, ¹⁷por-
tus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infrā delātæ sunt.

37. ¹⁸Quibus ¹⁹ex navibus cū essent expositi milites cir-
citer trecenti, atque in castra contendērent, Morini, quos
Cæsar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacātos reliquērat, spe ²⁰
prædæ adducti, primō ²¹non ita magno suōrum numēro cir-
cumstetērunt, ac, ²²si sese interfici nollent, ²³arma ponere
jussērunt. Cū illi, ²⁴orbe facto, sese defendērent, celeriter
ad clamōrem hominū circiter millia sex convenērunt.
Quā ²⁵re nunciātā, Cæsar omnem ex castris equitātum suis ²⁶
auxilio ²⁷misit. Intērim nostri milites impētum hostium sus-
tinuerunt, atque ampliūs horis ²⁸quatuor fortissimē pugna-
verunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complūres ex iis occi-
dērunt. Postea verō quā equitātus noster in conspectum
venit, hostes abjectis armis ²⁹terga vertērunt, magnusque
eōrum numērus est occisus.

* Id. 67, Note (a nobis.) ¹ Id. 19, (negotiiis.)

¹ Id. 108, 4.

² Id. 38.

³ Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

⁴ Gr. 308, (cepērunt.)

⁵ Gr. 573, R. XLII.

⁶ Id. 90, 4.

⁷ Gr. 627, 2.

⁸ Id. 44, 3.

⁹ Id. 110, 1.

¹⁰ Gr. 427, R. XIX.

¹¹ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

¹² Gr. 522, R. iii.

¹³ Gr. 467, R. XXIV.

38. Cæsar postëro die Titum Labiënum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui,^a cum propter siccitates paludum, quod se recipèrent,^b non haberent^c (quo perfugio^d superiore anno fuerant usi), omnes ferè in potestatem Labiëni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, ædificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes¹ in densissimas silvas abdidérant, se ad Cæsarem receperunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo dum omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Cæsaris dierum^e viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.

^a Id. 39, 5.

^c Gr. 631.

^e Gr. 339, R. VII.

^b Gr. 627, 5.

^d Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

BOOK V.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I Cæsar's second expedition into Britain—Chap. 1-23. II. War with Ambiorix—Chap. 24-54. III. Insurrection among the Treveri repressed—Chap. 55-58.

1. ¹ LUCIO DOMITIO, Appio Claudio, consulibus, discēdens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuērat, legātis impērat, quos legionibus præfecerat, uti, ² quamplurimas ^a possent, hieme ^b naves ædificandas ^c veteresque reficiendas ^c curarent. Eārum modum formamque demonstrat. ³ Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulò facit humiliores, quàm quibus ^d in ⁴ nostro mari uti consuevīmus; atque id eo ^e magis, quòd propter crebras commutationes æstuum minùs magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat: ad onera et ad multitudinem jumentorum transportandam paulò latiores, quàm quibus ^d in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes ⁵ actuarias impērat fieri, quam ad rem multam humilitas ⁶ adjuvat. Ea, quæ sunt usui ⁷ ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniā apportari jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliæ citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quòd a Pirustis finitimam partem Provinciæ incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eò cum venisset, civitatibus ^f milites impērat, certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā ⁸ re nunciata, Pirustæ legatos ad eum mittunt, qui ^h doceant, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant, ⁹ omnibus rationibus ⁱ de injuriis satisfacere. Accepta oratione eorum Cæsar obsides impērat, eosque ad certam diem adduci jubet: nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum de-

^a Gr. 591, 3d.

^d Id. 37.

^e Id. 38, 5.

^b Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^c Gr. 580. [Id. 5, 1. ^h Gr. 643, 4th.

ⁱ Id. 108, 4.

^f Gr. 501, R. XXIX, & ⁱ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

monstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperavērat, arbitros inter civitatē dat, ¹ qui litem aestiment ² pœnamque constituent.³

2. His confectis rebus ⁴conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eò cùm venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulāri militum studio, in summā omnium rerum inopiā, circiter sexcentas ejus genēris, cujus ⁵ supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit ⁶ instructas, ⁷ neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possent.⁸ Colaudatis militibus⁹ atque iis¹⁰ qui negotio prae fuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam ¹¹transmissum¹² esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum ¹³ triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum,¹⁴ reliquit: ipse cum legionibus ¹⁵expeditis quatuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trevirorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio ¹⁶ parēbant, Germanosque transrhēnānos sollicitare dicebantur.

3. Hæc civitas longē plurimum totius Galliæ equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In eā civitate duo ¹ de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomārus et Cingetorix: ex quibus ² alter, simul atque ³ de Cæsaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit: se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia Populi Romani defecturos confirmavit; quæque in Treviris gererentur,⁴ ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitatum peditatumque cogere,⁵ iisque,⁶ qui per ætatem in armis esse non poterant, in ⁷ silvam Arduennam abditis, quæ ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare⁸ instituit. Sed postea quā nonnulli principes ex

¹ Gr. 643, 4th.

² Gr. 298.

³ Gr. 627, 3.

⁴ Id. 109, 2.

⁵ Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

⁶ Gr. 339, R. VII.

⁷ Gr. 347.

⁸ Gr. 408, R. v.

¹ Id. 19, 1.

² Id. 124, 18.

³ Gr. 627, 5.

⁴ Gr. 663, R. LVII.

ea civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Cæsarem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere cœperunt, ¹ quoniam civitati consulere non possent: ^a Indutiomārus, veritus ^b ne ^c ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad Cæsarem mittit; sese ^d idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quò facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam ^e laberetur. Itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seque, si Cæsar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, et suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidem ^f permissurum.

4. Cæsar, etsi intelligebat, quâ de causâ ea dicerentur, quæque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, ^g tamen, ne ætatem in Treviris consumere cogeretur, ^h omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomārum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire ⁱ jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus ^j Indutiomārum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret: nihilo tamen secius, principibus Trevirorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod cum ^k merito ejus ab se fieri intelligebat, tum ^l magni ^m interesse arbitrabatur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos quamplurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. ⁿ Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, ^o suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui ^p jam antè inimico in nos animo fuisset, ^q multo gravius hōc dolore exarsit.

5. His rebus constitutis, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quæ in Meldis factæ erant, tempestate rejectas. ^r cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem, unde erant profectæ, revertisse reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus in-

^a Gr. 629^c Gr. 627, 5.¹ Id. 124, 8.^b Id. 106, 1.^f Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^k Gr. 495, R. XXVIII.^e Gr. 633, & Id. 121.^g Id. 90, 4.^l Gr. 655.^d Gr. 671, & Id. 94, 4. ^h Id. 115, 1.^m Gr. 645, R. iii

structas invēnit. Eòdem totius Galliæ equitātus convēnit número^a millium quatuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum loco^a secum ducere, decreverat; quòd, cū ipse abesset, motum Galliæ verebatur.

6. Erat unā cum ceteris Dumnōrix Æduus, de quo ab nobis¹ antea dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituērat, quòd eum² cupidum rerum^b novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi,^c magnæ inter Gallos auctoritatis,^c cognoverat. Accedēbat huc, quòd jam in concilio Æduorum Dumnōrix dixerat, sibi^d a Cæsare regnum civitatis deferri: quod^e dictum Ædui graviter ferēbant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Cæsarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Cæsar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primò precibus^f petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinqueretur; partim, quòd insuetus navigandi^g mare timēret;^f partim, quòd religionibus sese dicēret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinatē sibi^d negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademtā, principes Galliæ sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique cœpit, uti in continenti remanērent;^g metu territare^h non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate^b spoliaretur: id esse consilium Cæsaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliæ interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret:^e fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quodⁱ esse ex usu Galliæ intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Hæc a compluribus ad Cæsarem deferrebantur.

7. Quā^a re cognitā, Cæsar, quòd tantum civitatī Æduæ dignitatij^k tribuerat, coercendum^l atque deterrendum,^l quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quòd^m longius ejus amentiam progrēdi vidēbat, ¹⁰prospiciendum,^m

^a Gr. 611.^a Id. 38.¹ Id. 37, 2.^b Gr. 349, R. IX.^f Gr. 655.² Gr. 343, R. VIII.^c Gr. 339, R. VII.^g Gr. 627, 1, 3d.³ Id. 108, 4.^d Gr. 622, R. iii.^h Gr. 524, R. v.⁴ Id. 113, 5.

¹ne quid ^asibi ^bac rei publicæ nocere posset. Itaque dies ^ccirciter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod ²Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem ^comnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, ^dnihilō tamen secius omnia ejus consilia ³cognosceret: ^dtandem, idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere naves jubet. At, ⁴omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Æduorum a castris, insciente Cæsare, domum ^ediscedere cepit. Quā re nuntiata, Cæsar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahique ^fimperat: si vim faciat neque ^epareat, interfici ^fjubet: nihil ^ghunc ^hse absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui præsens imperium neglexisset. ¹Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare cepit, sæpe clamitans, “liberum se liberæque civitatis ^kesse.” Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant atque hominem interficiunt; at Ædui equites ad Cæsarem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis, Labiēno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur ^det rem frumentariam provideret, ^dquæque in Galliā gererentur ¹cognosceret, ^d⁷consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ^dipse cum quinque legionibus et ⁸pari numero equitum quem in continenti relinquebat, solis occāsu ^mnaves solvit, et, leni Africō proventus, mediā circiter nocte ^mvento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et, ⁹longius delātus æstu, ortā luce, sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, æstus commutatiōnem ¹⁰secutus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulæ caperet, ^dquā optimum esse egressum superiōre æstāte cognovērat. Quā in re admōdum fuit

^a Gr. 442.^c Gr. 558, R. XXXIX. ¹ Gr. 645, R. iii.^b Gr. 403, R. v.^f Id. 90, 4.^k Gr. 364, R. XII.^c Gr. 565, R. XLI.⁸ Gr. 242, 1, (and not.)¹ Gr. 627, 5.^d Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^h Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^m Gr. 565, R. XL.

milītam ¹ virtus laudanda, qui ² vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermissio remigandi labōre, longārum navium cursum adaequāvunt. ³ Accessum est ⁴ ad Britanniam omnibus navibus ⁵ meridiāno ferè tempore: neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Cæsar ex captivis compērit, cum ⁶ magnæ manus eò convenissent, ⁷ multitudīne navium perterrita (quæ ⁸ cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commōdi ⁹ fecerat, ampliùs octingentis uno erant visæ tempore), a littōre discesserant ac se in superiōra loca abdidērunt.

9. Cæsar, exposito exercitū et loco castris ¹ idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognōvit, quo in loco hostium copiae conserdissent, ² cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui ³ præsidio ⁴ navibus essent, de tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit, eo minùs ⁵ veritus navibus, ⁶ quod ⁷ in littōre molli atque aperto deligatas ad anchōram relinquebat; et præsidio ⁸ navibus Quintum Atrium præsēcit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodēcim, hostium copias conspicātus est. Illi, equitatu ¹ atque essēdis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiōre nostros prohibēre et prælium committēre cōpērunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdidērunt, locum nacti, egregiè et naturā et opère munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbātur, causā jam antè præparaverant: nam crebris arboribus ² succisis omnes introitus erant ³ præclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiōnes ingrēdi prohibēbant. At milites legioniū septimæ, ⁴ testudinē ⁵ factā, et aggere ad munitiōnes adjecto, locum cepērunt eosque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulneribus ⁶ acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longiùs Cæsar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturā ignorābat, et quod, magnā parte diēi consumptā, munitiōni ⁷ castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

¹ Id. 67, 5, Note.

² Gr. 630.

³ Gr. 326, (canon.)

⁴ Gr. 392. R. XVI.

⁵ Gr. 627, 5.

⁶ Gr. 643, 4th.

⁷ Gr. 427, R. XIX.

⁸ Gr. 391, R. XVII.

¹ Gr. 611, (canon.)

² Id. 109, 2.

³ Gr. 522, R. iii.

10. Postridie ejus diē^a mane ¹tripartitō milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itinēris^b progressis, cū jam extrēmū^c essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Cæsarem venerunt, qui^d nunciarent, ²superiōre nocte, maximā coortā tempestate, prope omnes naves ³afflictas^e atque in littōre ejectas esse; ⁴quod neque anchōræ funesque ⁵subsisterent,^f neque nautæ gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: ⁶itāque ⁷ex eo concursu navium magnum esse ⁸incommōdum acceptum.^g

11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar legiones equitatumque revocari atque itinere desistere jubet: ipse ad naves revertitur: eādem ferē, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, ⁹eoram perspicit, sic ut, amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquæ tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur.^h Itaque ex legionibus fabros delegit, et ex continenti alios arcessiri jubet; Labiēnoⁱ scribit, ut, quā plurimas posset, ¹⁰in legionibus^j quæ sint^k apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi ¹¹res erat multæ oporæ^l ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves ¹²subdūci^m et cum castris unā munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnisⁿ quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregiè munitis, easdem copias, quas antè, præsidio navibus reliquit: ipse eādem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eò cū venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiarum Britannorum convenierant, ¹³summa imperii bellicæ administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno,^o cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamēsis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic^p ¹⁴superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercessō-

^a Gr. 592, R. XLVI.^f Gr. 656.¹ Gr. 339, R. VII.^b Gr. 348, R. VIII.² Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^m Id. 94, 3.^c Sup. *fugientium*.³ Gr. 504.ⁿ Id. 121, Note 2.^d Gr. 643, 4th.⁴ Gr. 611, (*ex*.)^o Gr. 522, R. iii.^e Id. 98, 2.⁵ Gr. 656.^p Gr. 399, R. iv.

rant: sed nostro adventu permōti Britanni hunc toti bello^a imperiōque præfecerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, ¹ quos^b natos in insulâ ipsâ, memoriâ proditum dicunt: maritima pars ab iis, qui prædæ ac belli inferendi causâ ex Belgis transierant; qui omnes ferè iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus^c orti ex civitatibus eò pervenerunt, et ² bello illato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere cœperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo, ³ creberrimæque ædificia, ⁴ ferè Gallicis^d consimilia: pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut ære,^e aut ⁵ taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinatis, pro nummo. Nascitur ibi ⁶ plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est ⁷ copia: ære^e utuntur importato. ⁸ Materia cujusque generis, ut in Galliâ, est, præter fagum atque abiëtem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare, fas non putant; hæc tamen alunt ⁹ animi voluptatisque causâ. ¹⁰ Loca sunt temperatiora, quàm in Galliâ, ¹¹ remissioribus frigoribus.^f

13. Insulâ naturâ ¹² triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ¹³ ad Cantium, quo ferè omnes ex Galliâ naves appellantur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ¹⁴ ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quâ ex parte est Hibernia, ¹⁵ dimidio^h minor, ut æstimatur, quàm Britannia; ¹⁶ sed pari spatio^k transmissus, atque^l ex Galliâ, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insulâ, quæ appellatur ¹⁷ Mona; complures præterea minores objectæ insulæ existimantur; de quibus^c insulis nonnulli scripserunt, ¹⁸ dies^m continuos triginta sub brumâ, esse noctem,^b Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebâmus, ¹⁹ nisi certis ex aquâ mensuris breviô-

^a Gr. 501, R. XXIX. ^e Gr. 484, R. XXVI. ^l Gr. 470, 2d.

^b Gr. 671, & Id. 91, 4. ^f Id. 110.

^k Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^c Id. 37, 6, Note 1.

^g Id. 19, (*latus*.)

^l Gr. 728.

^d Gr. 382, & Id. 19.

^h Gr. 579, R. XLIII.

^m Gr. 565, R. XLI.

res esse, quàm in continente, noctes videbāmus. Hujus est longitūdo latēris, ut fert illōrum opinio, ¹ septingentōrum millium.^a Tertium est ² contra septentriōnes, cui parti^b nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angūlus latēris maxīmè ad Germaniam spectat: huic^c millia^d passuum ³ octingenta in longitudīnem esse existimātur.^e Ita omnis insūla est in circuitu vices centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longè sunt ⁴ humanissīmi, qui Cantium incolunt, quæ regio est maritīma omnis; neque multum a Gallicā diffērent consuetudinē. Interiōres plerīque frumenta non serunt, sed lacte^f et carne vivunt, pellibusque^g sunt vestiti. Omnes verò ⁵ se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cœruleum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horridiōre sunt in pugna aspectu:^h ⁶ capillōqueⁱ sunt promisso atque omni parte corpōris rasā, præter caput et labrum superius. Uxōres habent ⁷ deni duodenīque inter se commūnes, et maxīmè fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum libēris; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eōrum habentur libēri, ⁸ quo^k primū virgo quæque deducta est.

15. Equites hostium essedariīque acriter prælio cum equitatu nostro in itinēre conflixērunt, ⁹ tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiōres fuērint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulērint: sed compluribus interfectis, cupidiūs^l insecūti, nonnullos ex suis amisērunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitiōne castrōrum, subitò se ex silvis ejecērunt, impetūque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocāti, acriter pugnāvērunt: duabusque ¹⁰ submissis cohortibus a Cæsāre, atque his primis legiōnum^m duārum, cū hæ, perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, ¹¹ constitissent, novo genēre pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissimè perrupērunt, seque inde in-

^a Gr. 576.^e Id. 51.^l Gr. 611, (cum.)^b Gr. 522, R. iii.^f Gr. 485.^k Gr. 611, (a.)^c Gr. 394, R. ii.^g Gr. 524, R. v.^l Id. 22, 3.^d Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^h Gr. 389, R. VII.^m Gr. 355, R. X.

colūmes recepērunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi, pluribus immissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnæ, ¹cū sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, ²intellectum est, ^anostros ^bpropter gravitatem armaturæ, quod neque insēqui ^ccedentes possent, neque ab signis discedere auderent, min⁹ aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; equites ^bautem magno cum periculo dimicare, ^cpropterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque ^dcederent, ^det, cū paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essēdis desilirent ^eet pedibus ^edispāri praelio contendērent. Equestris autem praelii ratio et cedentibus ^fet insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferēbat. Accedebat huc, ut, nunquam ^gconferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis ^gpræliarentur, ^hstationesque dispositas haberent, ^hatque ⁱalios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent. ^h

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constituerunt, rarique se ostendere et ⁱlenius, quā pridie, nostros equites praelio lacessere cōpērunt. Sed meridie, cū Cæsar pabulandi causā tres legiōnes atque omnia equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legāto misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatōres advolaverunt, sic, ^jut ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fecērunt, quoad subsidio ^kconfisi equites, cū post se legiōnes vidērent, præcipites hostes egērunt: magnōque eōrum numēro interfecto, neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essēdis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fugā protinus, quæ undique convenērant, auxilia discessērunt: ^lneque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contendērunt.

^a Id. 51, 2.

^d Gr. 634.

^g Gr. 573, R. XLII.

^b Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^c Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^h Gr. 627, 1, 4th.

^e Id. 96, 2.

^f Id. 19, & Gr. 501.

ⁱ Gr. 408, R. v.

18. Cæsar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamēsn in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod^a flumen uno omnino loco^b pedibus, atque hoc^c ægrè, transiri potest. Eò cum venisset, animadvertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat^d acutis sudibus^e præfixis munita; ejusdem generis sub aqua defixæ sudes flumine^f tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmisso equitatu, confestim legiones subséquì jussit. Sed eà^g celeritate atque eo^h impetu milites ierunt, ⁱcum capite solo ex aqua exstarent,ⁱ ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent,^k ripasque dimitterent ac se fugæ mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ^lut suprà demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentiōnis, ^mdimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat, paululumque ⁿex viâ excedēbat, locisque^b impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus,^b quibus^b nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellēbat: et, cum equitatus noster, liberius^h prædandi vastandique causâ, se in agros effundēret, omnibus viis^l notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittēbat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis configēbat, atque hoc metu latius^b vagari prohibēbat. ^oRelinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discēdi^k Cæsar pateretur, et tantum^l in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis ^phostibus^m noceretur,^k quantum labore^d atque itinere legionario milites efficere poterant.

20. Intērim Trinobantes, propè firmissima eārum regionum civitas, ex quā Mandubratius adolescens, Cæsaris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venērat (cujus pater Imanuentius in eā civitate regnum obtinuērat, interfec-

^a Id. 37, 6, Note 1.^c Id. 28, 1.ⁱ Id. 109, 2.^b Gr. 611, (m.)^f Gr. 630.^k Gr. 223, 3.^c Id. 13 (loco,) Sup (in.)^g Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^l Gr. 442.^d Gr. 542, R XXXV.^h Id. 22, 3.^m Id. 66, 7.

tusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugā mortem vitaverat), legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuriā Cassivellauni defendat,^a ¹ atque in civitatem mittat, qui præsit ^b imperiumque obtineat.^b His ^c Cæsar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui,^d Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ^e ad numerum frumentæque miserunt.

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuriā ^f prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibrœci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Cæsari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longè ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis ^g paludibusque munitum, quo ^h satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus conveniret. (ⁱ Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossâ muniunt,^j quò incursiōnis hostium vitandæ causâ convenire consueverunt.) Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregiè naturā ^k atque opère munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes, paulisper morati, militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt, seseque aliâ ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugâ sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum hæc in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod ^l esse ^m ad mare suprâ demonstravimus, quibus ⁿ regionibus ^o quatuor reges præerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuncios mittit, atque his imperat, uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improviso ^p ^q adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione factâ, multis eorum ^r interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc prælio nunciato, tot detrimentis accep-

^a Gr. 627, 1, 3d. ^o Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ¹ Id. 37, 1, (*regiones*.)

^b Gr. 643, 4th. [Id. 5, 1. ^f Gr. 611, (*in*.) ^k Gr. 393, R. i.

^c Gr. 501, R. XXIX, & ^g Gr. 630. [Id. 91. ¹ Gr. 236, 6.

^d Gr. 878, R. XV. ^h Gr. 671, R. LVIII, & ^m Gr. 355, R. X.

tis, vastātis finibus, maxīmè etiam permōtus defectiōne civitatum, legātos per Atrebātem Commium de deditiōne ad Cæsārem mittit. Cæsar, cūm statuisset ^a hiēmē in continenti propter repentinōs Galliæ ¹ motus agēre, neque multum æstātis superesset, atque id facīlè extrāhi posse intelligēret, obsīdes impērat, et, quid in annos singūlos vectigālis ^b Popūlo Romāno Britannia pendēret, ^c constituit; interdicit atque impērat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat. ^d

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit ^e refectas. His deductis, quod et ^f captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullæ tempestate deperiērant naves, duobus ^g commealibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero, tot ^h navigationibus, neque hoc, neque superiore anno, ⁱ ulla omnino navis, quæ milites portaret, ^j desideraretur: ^k at ex iis, quæ inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, ^l et ^m prioris commealibus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, ⁿ perpaucæ locum caperent; ^o reliquæ fere omnes rejicerentur. ^p Quas ^q cūm aliquamdiu Cæsar frustra expectasset, ^r ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod æquinocmium suberat, ^s necessariò angustius milites collocavit, ac, summā tranquillitate consecutā, secundā inīta cūm solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit, omnesque incolūmes naves perduxit.

24. ^t Subductis navibus, concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivæ^m peracto, quod eo anno ^u frumentum in Galliā propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter, ac superioribus annis, ^v exercitum in hibernis collocare, legionesque ^w in plures civitates distribuere: ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Caio Fabio legato dedit; alteram in Nervios

^a Gr. 631.^e Id. 124, 1.^l Gr. 644.^b Gr. 343, R. VIII.^f Gr. 565, R. XL.^k Sup. *accidit ut.*^c Gr. 627, 5.^g Gr. 636, R. i, & 638.^l Id. 38.^d Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^h Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^m Gr. 548, R. XXXVI.

Quinto Cicerōni; tertiam in Essuos Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labiēno in confinio Trevirōrum hiemāre jussit; tres in Belgio collocāvit: his Marcum Crassum, quæstōrem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium, legātos,^a præfēcit. Unam legiōnem, quam proximē trans Padum conscripsērat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxīma est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Cativolci erant, misit. His^b militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam, legātos,^c præesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus, facillimē inopiæ^d frumentariæ sese^e medēri posse existimāvit: atque harum^f tamen omnium hiberna (præter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dedērat),^g millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnes collocāset^h munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Galliā morārī constituit.

25. Erat in Carnutibusⁱ summo loco^j natus Tasgetius, cujus majores in suā civitatē regnum obtinuērant. Huic Cæsar, pro ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī ejus operā fuērat usus, majōrum locum restituērat. ^kTertium jam hunc annum^l regnantem inimici palam, multis etiam ex civitatē auctoribus, interfecērunt. Defertur ea res ad Cæsārem. Ille veritus, ^mquod ad plures pertinēbat, neⁿ civitas eōrum impulsu deficēret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio celeriter in Carnūtes proficisci jubet, ibique hiemāre; quorumque operā cognovērit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittēre. Intērim ab omnibus legātis quæstoribusque, quibus legiōnes transdidērat, certior factus est, ^oin hiberna perventum^p locumque hibernis esse munitum.

26. Diēbus circiter quindēcim, quibus in hiberna ventum est,^q initium repentinī tumultūs ac defectionis ortum est ab

^a Gr. 254.

^d Id. 19, (*legiōnum*.)

^e Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^b Gr. 393, R. i.

^f Gr. 627, 4.

^h Gr. 633, & Id. 121, 6.

^c Gr. 403, R. v.

^g Gr. 462, R. XXIII.

ⁱ Id. 67, 5, Note.

postrēmo, "quid esse ¹levius aut turpius, quàm, ²auctōre hoste,^a de summis rebus capere consilium?"

29. Contra ea Titurius, "serò factūros," ³clamitābat, "cum majōres hostium manus, adjunctis Germānis, convenissent: aut cūm aliquid calamitātis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum, brevem consulendi esse occasiōnem: ⁴Cæsārem^b arbitrāri profectum^c in Italiam: neque aliter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse captūros, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantā cum contentiōne nostri ad castra ventūros esse: ⁵non hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānis dolōri Ariovisti mortem^b et superiōres nostras victorias:^b ⁶ardēre Galliam,^b tot contumeliis acceptis sub Popūli Romāni imperium redactam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris extinctā." Postrēmo, "quis hoc sibi^d persuaderet,^e ⁷sine certā re Ambiorīgem ad ejusmōdi consilium descendisse^c? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: ⁸si nil sit durius, nullo periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānis consentiat, ⁹unam esse in celeritāte positā salutem. Cottæ quidem atque eōrum, qui dissentīrent, consilium quem habēret^e exītum? In quo si non ¹⁰præsens periculūm, at certē longinquā obsidiōne^f fames esset pertimescenda."

30. ¹¹Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habītā, cūm a Cottā ¹²primisque ordinibus acriter resisterētur,^g ¹³"Vincite," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabīnus, ¹⁴et id clariōre voce,^f ut magna pars militūm exaudīret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui^h gravissimē ex vobis mortis periculō terrear: ¹⁵hi sapient, et si gravius quid accidērit, abs te ratiōnem reposcent: qui,ⁱ si per te liceat, perendīno die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti, commūnem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, ¹⁶nec reiecti et relegāti longē ab cetēris aut ferro aut fame intereant."

^a Id. 110, 1.

^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX. ^e Id. 67.

^b Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^c Gr. 634.

^h Gr. 643, 2d, & Id. 40.

^f Id. 98, 2.

^g Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

ⁱ Gr. 645, R. iii, & 646.

31. ¹ Consurgitur^a ex consilio; comprehendunt ² utrumque et orant, “ ne suâ dissensiōne et pertinaciâ rem in summum pericūlum dedūcant: ^b facilem esse rem, seu maneant,^c seu proficiscantur,^c si modò unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrâ in dissensiōne nullam se salutem perspicere.” ³ Res disputationē ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem ⁴ dat Cotta permōtus manus; supērat sententia Sabīni. ⁵ Pronunciatur,^d primâ luce itūros: consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cūm sua quisque miles circumspiceret,^e quid secum portāre posset,^e quid ex instrumento hibernōrum relinquere cogeretur.^f ⁷ Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine pericūlo maneatur et languore militum et ⁸ vigiliis pericūlum augeatur. Primâ luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ⁹ ut quibus^g esset persuāsum,^h non ab hoste, sed ab homīne amicissīmo Ambiorige consilium datum,^h longissīmo agmīneⁱ maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremītu vigiliisque de profectiōne eōrum senserunt, collocātis insidiis bipartīte in silvis opportūno atque occulto loco, a^k millibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanōrum adventum expectābant: et, cūm ¹⁰ se major pars agmīnis in magnam convallem demississet, ex utrāque parte ejus vallis subitō se ostendērunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissīmo nostris^l loco praelium committere cœperunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, ¹¹ ut qui^m nihil antè providisset, trepidāre,^m concursāre, cohortesque disponere; ¹² hæc tamen ipsa timidè atque utⁿ eum omnia deficere viderentur: quod^o plerumque iis^p accidere consuēvit, qui ¹³ in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui^q cogitasset, hæc posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis

^a Id. 67, 5, Note.

^b Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^c Gr. 634.

^d Id. 51, 2.

^e Gr. 627, 5.

^f Gr. 522, R. iii.

^g Gr. 647.

^h Id. 98, 2.

ⁱ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^k Gr. 578.

^l Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^m Gr. 669.

ⁿ Gr. 627, 1, 2d, (*ita*.)

^o Id. 37, 9, Note 3.

^p Gr. 399, R. iv.

¹ auctor non fuisset, nullā in re commūni salutē⁴ deērat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus, imperatōris; et in pugnā, militis officia prāstābat. Cūmq̃ue propter longitudinē agminis ² minūs facilē per se omnia obīre, et, quid quoque loco⁵ faciendum esset, ³ providēre possent, ³ jussērunt pronuntiāre, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque ⁴ in orbem consistērent. Quod⁴ consilium etsi in ejusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen ⁵ incommōdē accidit: nam et nostris militibus⁵ spem minuit, et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōres effecit, quōd non sinē summo timōre et desperationē id factum videbātur. Præterea accidit, quod⁶ fieri necesse erat, ut ⁶ vulgō milites ab signis discederent, ⁷ quæ quisque eōrum⁶ carissīma habēret¹ ab impedimentis petēre atque abripēre properāret, ⁸ clamōre ac fletu omnia complerentur.⁸

34. At ⁹ barbāris⁹ consilium non defuit: nam duces eōrum totā acie pronuntiāre jussērunt, “ne quis ab loco discederet; illōrum⁹ esse prædam, atque illis reservāri, quæcumque Romāni reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoriā posita existimarent.” ¹⁰ Erant et virtūte et numēro pugnando¹ pares nostri, tamen etsi ab duce et a fortūnā deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte ponēbant, et, quoties quæque cohors procurrēret, ab eā parte magnus hostium numērus cadēbat. Quā⁴ re animadversā, Ambiorix pronuntiāri jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, neu propiūs accēdant, et, quam in partem Romāni impētum fecērint, ¹¹ cedant (levitāte armorum et quotidianā exercitatiōne ¹² nihil iis nocēri posse¹²); rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

35. Quo⁴ præcepto ab iis diligentissimē observāto, cūm quæpiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impētum fecerat, hostes velocissimē refugiebant. Intērim eam partem nudāri necesse erat et ab latēre aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cūm

^a Gr. 393, R. I.^b Gr. 627, 5.^c Gr. 611, (in.)^d Id. 38.^e Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^f Id. 37, 9, Note 3.^g Gr. 355, R. X.^h Gr. 627, 1, 4th.ⁱ Gr. 656.^k Gr. 364, R. XII.^l Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^m Id. 66, & 68, 2.

in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti cœperant, et ab iis, qui cessærant, et ab iis, qui proximi^a stetærant, circumveniebantur; sin autem ¹ locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti^b locus relinquebatur, neque ab tantâ multitudîne conjecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommôdis conflictâti, multis vulneribus acceptis, resistebant et, magnâ parte diei onsumtâ, cum a primâ luce ² ad horam octavâ pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis^c esset indignum, committébant. Tum Tito Balventio,^d qui superiori anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnæ auctoritâtis, ³ utrumque femur tragulâ transjicitur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis,^e fortissimè pugnans, dum circumvento filio^f ⁴ subvénit, interficitur: Lucius Cotta, legâtus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans, ⁵ in adversum os fundâ vulneratur.

36. His rebus permôtus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorîgem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interprêtem suum, Cneium Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogâtum,⁶ ut sibi^g militibusque parcat. Ille appellâtus respondit: "si velit secum collôqui, licere; sperare, a multitudîne impetrâri posse, quod^h ad militum salutem pertineat;ⁱ ⁶ ipsi^k vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se^l suam fidem interponere." Ille cum Cottâ saucio communicat, "si videatur, pugnâ ut excédant et cum Ambiorîge unâ colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de suâ ac militum salute impetrare posse." Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat⁷ atque in eo constitit.

37. Sabînus, quos ⁸ in præsentia tribûnos militum circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriônes, se sequi jubet, et, cum propiùs Ambiorîgem^m accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperatum facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Intèrim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt, longiorque

^a Gr. 274.^c Gr. 339, R. VII.¹ Gr. 684.^b Gr. 522, R. iii.^f Gr. 405, 2d.^k Id. 66, 7.^e Gr. 462, R. XXIII.³ Gr. 712, R. LXIII.^l Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^d Gr. 380, *Rule*⁴ Id. 87, 2.^m Gr. 611, (*ad*.)

consultò ab Ambiorīge instituītur sermo, paulātim circum-
ventus interficītur. Tum vero suo more ¹ victoriam conclā-
mant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostros facto,
ordīnes perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficītur
cum maxīmā parte milītum, reliqui se in castra recipiunt,
unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer,
cū magnā multitudine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā
vallum projēcit, ipse pro castris fortissimē pugnans occidī-
tur. ² Illi agrē ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent: nocte
³ ad unum ^a omnes, desperatā salutē, se ipsi ^b interficiunt.
Pauci ex praelio elapsi, incertis itinerīb^c per silvas ad Ti-
tūm Labiēnum legātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum
de rebus gestis certiorē faciunt.

38. Hāc victoriā ^c ⁴ sublātus Ambiōrix, statim cum equi-
tātu in Aduatūcos, qui erant ejus regno ^d finitimi, proficiasci-
tur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque se
subsēqui jubet. Re demonstratā, Aduatucisque concitātis,
postēro die in Nervios pervēnit, hortaturque, "ne sui ^e in
perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi ^f Romānos, pro iis,
quas acceperint, ^g injuriis, occasiōnem dimittant: interfectos
esse ^h legātos duo magnamque partem exercītus interisse"
demonstrat; ⁱ "nihil esse negotii, subitō oppressam legiō-
nem, quæ cum Cicerōne hiēmet, ^k interfici;" ^l se ad eam rem
profitētur adiutōrem. ¹ Facilē hāc oratiōe Nerviiis per-
suādet.

39. Itaque, confestim dimissis nunciis ad Centrōnes, Gru-
dios, Levācos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eōrum
imperio sunt, quāmaximas manus possunt, cogunt, et de
improvīso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum
famā de Titurii morte perlātā. ⁷ Huic quoque accidit, quod ^m
fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milītes, qui lignatiōnis munitionis-

^a Id. 19, (*hominem*.) ^e Id. 112, 5.

^b Id. 33, 1. ^f Gr. 236, 6.

^c Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ^g Id. 112, 1.

^d Gr. 382, R. XVI. ^h Gr. 655.

¹ Id. 97, 4, & 94, 1, 2d.

^k Gr. 634.

^l Gr. 251, R. I.

^m Id. 37, 9, Note 3.

que causâ in silvas discessissent,^a repentino equitum adven-
tu interciperentur.^b His circumventis, magnâ manu Ebu-
rônes, Nervii, Aduatûci atque horum omnium socii et cli-
entes, legiônem oppugnâre incipiunt: nostri celeriter ad
arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. ¹ Ægrè is dies sus-
tentâtur, quòd omnem spem hostes in celeritatè ponébant,
atque, hanc adepti ^c victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victô-
res^d confidébant.

40. Mittuntur ad Cæsarem confestim ab Cicerône litêræ,
magnis ² propositis præmiis, si pertulissent. Obsessis omni-
bus viis, missi ^e intercipiuntur. Noctu ex eâ materiâ, quam
munitionis causâ comportavérant, ³ turres admòdum centum
et viginti excitantur incredibili celeritatè: quæ^f deesse opè-
ri^g videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postèro die, multo ma-
joribus copiis coactis, castra oppugnant, fossam complent.
Ab nostris eâdem ratiône,^h quâ pridie, resistitur: ¹ hoc idem
deinceps reliquis fit dièbus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis
ad labôrem intermittitur: non ægris,^k non vulnerâtis, facul-
tas quiëtis datur: quæcumque^l ad proximi dièi oppugnationem
opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multæ ^m præustæ sudes,
magnus muralium pilòrum numèrus instituitur; ⁿ turres
contabulantur, pinnæ loricæque ex cratibus attexuntur.
Ipse Cicëro, ^o cùm tenuissimâ valetudinè^p esset, ne noctur-
num ^q quidem sibi tempus ad quiëtem relinquēbat, ut ^r ultro
militem concursu ac vocibus ^s sibi ^t parcere cogeretur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui ^u aliquem
sermônis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerône habē-
bant, collòqui sese velle dicunt. ^v Factâ potestâtè, eâdem,
quæ Ambiorix cum Titurio egérat, commemorant, ^w omnem
esse in armis Galliam, Germânos Rhenum transisse, Cæsâr-

^a Gr. 636, R. i.

^f Id. 37, 2.

¹ Id. 37, 8, Note 2.

^b Gr. 627, 1, 4.

^g Gr. 393, R. i.

^m Gr. 339, R. VII.

^c Id. 105, 1.

^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

ⁿ Id. 121, Note 2.

^d Gr. 819, R. V.

^k Id. 67, 1.

^o Gr. 627, 1, 1st, (ita.)

^e Id. 12, (homines.)

^l Gr. 522, R. iii, & Id. 19.

^p Gr. 403, R. v.

is reliquorumque hiberna oppugnâri." Addunt etiam de Sabini morte. ¹ Ambiorigem ostentant fidē faciendæ causâ: "errâre ² eos" dicunt, "si quicquam ab his præsidii sperent," qui suis rebus ³ diffidant; ⁴ sese tamen ⁵ hoc esse in Cicerōnem Populumque Romānum animo, ⁶ ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant^m atque hanc invoterascere consuetudinem nolint:^m ⁷ licere illis ⁸ incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere, et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci." Cicero ad hæc unum modò respondit. "Non esse consuetudinem Populi Romani, ullam accipere ab hoste armato conditionem: si ab armis discedere velint," se ⁹ adiutore utantur, ¹⁰ legatosque ad Cæsarem mittant: ¹¹ sperare, ¹² pro ejus justitiâ, quæ petierint, ¹³ impetraturos."

42. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii, vallo ¹ pedum undecim et fossâ pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Hæc et superiorum annorum consuetudine ² a nostris cognoverant, et, quosdam de exercitu nacti captivos, ab his docebantur: ³ sed, nullâ ferramentorum copiâ, ⁴ quæ sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis ⁵ cespitem circumcidere, manibus ⁶ sagulisque ⁷ terram exhaurire cgebantur. Quâ ⁸ quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minùs horis tribus ⁹ millium decem in circuitu munitiōnem perfecērunt: reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, ¹⁰ falces testudinesque, quas iidem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere cœperunt.

43. Septimo oppugnationis die, maximo coorto vento, ¹ ferventes fusili ex argillâ ² glandes fundis et ³ fervefacta jacula in casas, quæ more ⁴ Gallico stramentis erant tectæ, jacere cœperunt. Hæ celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et venti magnitudine ⁵ in omnem castrorum locum ⁶ distulerunt. Hostes, maximo clamore ⁷ insecuti, quasi partâ jam atque exploratâ victoriâ, turres testudinesque ⁸ agere et scalis val-

^a Gr. 627, 2.

^c Id. 66, 2.

¹ Id. 110, 1

^b Gr. 408, R. v.

^f Gr. 484, R. XXVI.

² Id. 38.

^e Gr. 644.

^g Gr. 625, 1st, & 145.

³ Gr. 541.

^d Gr. 389, R. VII.

^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^m Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

lum ascendere cœperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ca^a presentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flammâ torrerentur,^b maximâque telorum multitudîne premerentur,^b suâque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortûnas conflagrâre intelligerent^b non modò¹ demigrandi causâ de vallo decederet^c nemo, sed pœne ne respiceret^c quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes² acerrimè fortissimèque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris⁴ longè gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numèrus vulneraretur^c atque interficeretur, ut^e se sub ipso vallo constipaverant³ recessumque primis^f ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissâ flammâ, et quodam loco⁵ 4 turri^b adactâ et contingente vallum, tertiæ cohortis centuriões ex eo, quo⁵ stabant,¹ loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt; nutu^k vocibusque hostes, “si introire vellent,” vocare cœperunt, ³ quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus^h coniectis⁶ deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in eâ legiõne fortissimi viri centuriões, ⁷ qui jam primis ordinibus¹ appropinquarent, Tito Pulfio et Lucius Varënus. Hi perpetuas controversias inter se habebant, quinam anteferrêtur,^m omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus^k contendebant. Ex iis Pulfio, cum acerrimè ad munitiões pugnaretur, “Quid dubitas,” inquit, “Varëne? aut quem locum probandæ virtutis tuæ⁸ spectas? hic, hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.” Hæc cum dixisset,^b procedit extra munitiões, ⁹ quaque pars hostium confertissima visa est, in eam irrupit. Ne Varënus quidem tum vallo sese continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Tum, mediocri spatio^h relicto, Pulfio pilum in hostes mittit atque unum ex multitudîne¹⁰ præcurrentem transiicit, quo^h percusso et exanimato, ¹¹ hunc scutis protè-

^a Id. 28, 1.^c Gr. 628. [Id. 19. ¹ Gr. 160, 2.^b Gr. 631.^f Gr. 501, R. XXIX, & ² Gr. 542, R. XXXV.³ Gr. 627, 1, 1st.⁵ Gr. 611, (in.)¹ Gr. 399, R. iv.⁴ Gr. 383, R. XVI^h Id. 109, 2.^m Gr. 627, 5.

gunt hostes, ¹ in illum tela universi conjiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni^a et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti^b dextram moratur manum; impeditum^c hostes circumsistunt. ² Succurrit inimicus illi^d Varēnus et laboranti^e subvenit. Ad ³hunc se confestim a Pulfione omnis multitudo convertit, ⁴illum veruto transfixum arbitrantur. Occursat ocius gladio cominusque rem gerit Varēnus atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit: dum cupidius instat, ⁵in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio atque ambo incolūmes, compluribus interfectis, summā cum laude sese intra mutiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna ⁶in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri^d inimicus auxilio^f salutique esset, neque dijudicari posset, uter utri^g virtute^h antefendus videretur.

45. ⁷Quantoⁱ erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnationo, et maxime quod, magnā parte militum confecta vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tantoⁱ crebriores literae nuntique ad Cæsarem mittebantur: quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciātu necabatur. Erat ⁸unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico,⁹ loco natus honesto, qui a primā obsidione ad Cicerōnem perfugerat, suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic ¹⁰servo^k spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praeemiis, ut literas ad Cæsarem deferat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas effert, et, Gallus inter Gallos sine ullā suspitione versatus, ad Cæsarem pervenit. Ab eo^l de ¹¹periculis Cicerōnis legionisque cognoscitur.

46. Cæsar, acceptis literis ¹²horā circiter undecimā diēi, statim nuncium in Bellovācos ad Marcum Crassum quæs-

^a Gr. 380, *Rule*.

^b Id. 19, (*ei*.) & ^a.

^c Id. 19, (*cum*.)

^d Gr. 382, R. XVI

^e Gr. 403, R. v.

^f Gr. 427, R. XIX.

^g Gr. 522, R. iii.

^h Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.

ⁱ Gr. 579, R. XLIII, &

580, & Id. 44, 8, & 47.

^k Id. 68, & Gr. 501,

^l Id. 67, 1. [R. XXXIX.

torem mittit; cujus hiberna abérant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque. Jubet mediâ nocte legiōnem proficisci,^a celeriterque ad se venīre. Exiit cum nuncio Crassus, Atērum^b ad Caium Fabium legātum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legiōnem adducat,^c ¹ quâ sibi^d iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēno, ² si reipublicæ commōdo facere posset, cum legiōne ad fines Nerviorum veniat:^e reliquam partem exercitûs, quod paulò abērat longiûs, non putat expectandam;^f equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

47. Horâ circiter tertiâ ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia^f passuum viginti progreditur. Crassum Samarobrivæ^g præficit, legionemque ei^h attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitûs, obsides civitatum, ³ litēras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eò ⁴ tolerandæ hiemis causâ devexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, non ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus, interitū Sabīni et cæde cohortium cognitâ, cum omnes ad eum Trevirorum copię venissent,^h veritus, ne,ⁱ si ex hibernis fugæ similem profectiōnem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, præsertim quos^k recenti victoriâ efferrī sciret, litēras Cæsari remittit, quanto cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernis educturus esset:^l ⁵ rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit: docet, omnes peditatûs equitatûsque copias Trevirorum tria millia^f passuum longè ab suis castris conseedisse.

48. Cæsar, consilio ejus probato, etsi, ⁶opiniōne^m trium legiōnum dejectus, ad duas rediērat, tamen unum commūnis salutis auxilium in celeritatē ponēbat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quæ apud Cicerōnem gerantur,ⁱ quantòque in periculō res sit.^l Tum cuidamⁿ ex equitibus Gallia magnis præmiis persuadet,

^a Id. 90, 4.

^c Id. 108, 4.

¹ Gr. 638. [Id. 91, 4.

^b Id. 19, (numoium.) ^f Gr. 578, R. XLII.

^h Gr. 671, R. LVIII, &

^d Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^e Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^l Gr. 627, 5.

⁴ Id. 112, 5.

^h Gr. 639.

^m Gr. 618, R. LII.

ut ad Cicerōnem epistolam defērat. Hanc Gracis conscrip-
tam litēris mittit, ne, interceptā epistolā, nostra ab hostibus
consilia cognoscantur.^a ¹ Si adire non possit, monet, ut tra-
gūlam cum epistolā, ² ad amentum deligatā, intra munitiones
castrorum abjiciat.^b In litēris scribit, se cum legionibus
profectum celeriter affōre: hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem
retineat. Gallus, pericūlum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tra-
gūlam mittit. Hæc ³ casu ad turrim adhæsit, neque ^c ab
nostris biduo animadversa; tertio die a quodam milite con-
spicitur; deinde ad Cicerōnem deferitur. Ille ⁴ perlectam in
conventu militum recitat, maximāque omnes lætitiā afficit
Tum fumi incendiōrum procul videbantur, quæ res omnem
dubitationem adventus legionum ⁵ expulit.

49. Galli, re cognitā per exploratores, obsidiōnem relin-
quunt, ad Cæsarem omnibus copiis contendunt; eæ erant
armatorum circiter millia ^d sexaginta. Cicero, datā facul-
tate, Gallum ab eodem Verticōne, quem suprā demonstrav-
imus, repētit; qui litēras ad Cæsarem refērat; ^e hanc ^f ad-
mōnet, iter cautē diligenterque faciat: ^g perscribit in litēris,
hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ad eum multitudinē
convertisse. Quibus ^h litēris circiter mediā nocte Cæsar al-
latis suos facit certiōres, eosque ad dimicandum animo con-
firmat: postēro die luce primā movet castra, et circiter mil-
lia ⁱ passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallem magnam et
rivum multitudinē hostium conspicatur. Erat magni peri-
culi ^k res, cum tantis copiis iniquo loco ^l dimicāre. Tum,
quoniam liberātum obsidiōne ^m Cicerōnem sciēbat, eoque
omnino remittendum de celeritate existimābat, consēdit, et,
quā æquissimo potest loco, ¹ castra commūnit. Atque hæc,
etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum ^k millium septem, præ-
sertim nullis cum impedimentis, ⁶ tamen angustiis viarum

^a Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^c Gr. 643, 4th.¹ Gr. 573, R. XLII.^b Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^f Gr. 508, R. XXX.^k Gr. 339, R. VII.^c Gr. 242, 1.^g Gr. 627, 1, 3d, & 632.¹ Gr. 611, (in.)^d Gr. 402, R. XLVIII.^h Id. 38.^m Gr. 524, R. v.

quàm maximè potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemtionem hostibus^a veniat. Intèrim, speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis, explorat, quo commodissimo^b itinère vallem transire possit.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestribus prœliis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco continent; ¹ Galli, quod ampliōres copias, quæ nondum convenērant, expectābant; Cæsar, si fortè timōris simulatiōne hostes ² in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris prœlio contendēret;^c si id efficere non posset, ut, explorātis itineribus, minōre cum periculō vallem rivumque transiret.^c Primâ luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit, prœliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Cæsar consulto equites cedere,^d seque in castra recipere^d jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vallo muniri,^d ³ portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quàm maximè concursari et cum simulatiōne timōris agi jubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias transducunt, aciemque iniquo loco constituunt; nostris verò ⁴ etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt, et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus conjiciunt; præconibusque^e circummissis pronuntiari jubent, "seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ⁵ ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem:" ⁶ ac sic nostros contempsērunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitem, quod ⁷ eâ non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Cæsar, omnibus portis eruptione factâ equitatuque emisso, celeriter hostes dat in fugam, sic, uti omnino pugnandi causâ resisteret nemo; magnumque ex eis numerum occidit, atque omnes armis^f exuit.

52. ⁸ Longius prossequi veritus, quod silvæ paludesque intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento ⁹ illorum locum

^a Gr. 380, *Rule*.

^c Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

^c Id. 109, 2.

^b Gr. 274.

^d Id. 90, 4.

^f Gr. 514, R. XXXI.

relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copris eōdem die ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtas turres, testudīnes, munitionesque hostium admirātur: ¹productā legiōne cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse relictum militem sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum pericūlo et quantā cum virtūte res sint ²administratæ: Cicerōnem ³pro ejus merito, legionemque collaudat: centuriōnes singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Cicerōnis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottæ certiūs ex captivis cognoscit. Postēro die conciōne habītā ⁴rem gestam propōnit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quōd detrimentum ⁵culpā et temeritatē legātī sit ⁶acceptum, ⁷hoc æquiore animo ferendum docet, ⁸quōd, beneficio Deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum ⁹expiāto incommōdo, neque hostibus diutīna lætatio, neque ipsis longior dolor relinquantur.^c

53. Intērim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibīli celeritate de victoriā Cæsāris fama perfertur, ut, cū ab hibernis Cicerōnis abesset millia passuum circiter sexaginta, eoque ¹post horam nonam diēi Cæsar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrōrum clamor orirētur, ²quo clamōre significatio victoriæ gratulatiōque ab Remis Labiēno ³fiēret. Hāc famā ad Treviros perlātā, Indutiomārus, qui postēro die castra Labiēni oppugnāre decreverat, noctu profūgit, copiasque omnes in Treviros reducit. Cæsar Fabium cum legiōne in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivā ⁴trinis hibernis hiemāre constituit; et, quōd tanti motus Galliæ extiterant, totam hiēmem ipse ad exercitum manēre decrevit. Nam illo incommōdo de Sabini morte perlato, omnes ferē Galliæ civitatē de bello ⁵consultabant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittēbant, et ⁶quid reliqui consilii ⁷capērent ⁸atque unde initium belli fiēret, explorābant, nocturnaque in locis desertis ⁹concilia

^a Gr. 627, 5.^b Id. 77, 5.^c Gr. 522, R. iii.^d Gr. 629.^e Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^f Gr. 343, R. VIII.

habebant. Neque ullum ferè totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Cæsaris intercessit, ¹quin^a aliquem de conciliis ac motu Gallorum nuncium acciperet.^a In his ab Lucio Roscio legato, quem legioni decimæ tertie præfecerat, certior est factus, magnas Gallorum copias eorum civitatum, quæ ²Armoricæ appellantur, oppugnandi sui causâ convenisse: neque longius^b millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse, sed nuncio allato de victoria Cæsaris, discessisse, adeo ut fugæ similis discessus videretur.

54. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitatis ad se evocatis, aliis^c territando, cum se scire, quæ fierent, denunciaret, aliis cohortando, magnam partem Gallie in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quæ est civitas in primis firma et magnæ inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Cæsar apud eos regem constituerat (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu in Galliam Cæsaris, cujusque majores regnum obtinuerant), interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille præsensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno^d domoque expulerunt: et, missis ad Cæsarem satisfaciendi causâ legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire jussisset, ³dicto audientes non fuerunt. ⁴Tantum^e apud homines barbaros valuit, esse repertos aliquos principes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem ⁵attulit, ut præter Æduos et Remos, quos ⁶præcipuo semper honore Cæsar habuit, ⁷altèros pro vetere ac perpetuâ erga Populum Romanum fide, ⁷altèros pro recentibus Galliæ belli officiis, ⁸nulla ferè civitas fuerit non^f suspecta nobis. ⁹Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime,, ¹⁰quod, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus præferebantur, tantum se ejus opinionis deperdidisse, ut a Populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissimè dolèbant.

55. Treviri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermisèrunt, quin^a trans Rhenum legatos mitterent

^a Gr. 627, 3.^c Id. 124, 12.^e Gr. 442.^b Gr. 471.^d Gr. 613, R. LII.^f Gr. 588.

civitātes sollicitārent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā porte exercitūs nostri interfectā, multo minōrem superesse dicērent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitatī^a Germanōrum persuadēri potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cū “se bis expertos”^b dicērent, “Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherōrum transitū, non esse ampliūs fortunam tentandam.”^c Hāc spe^e lapsus Indutiomārus, nihilo minūs copias cogēre, exercēre, a finitimis equos parāre, exūles damnatosque totā Galliā^d magnis prae-miis ad se allicēre cōpit. Ac tantam sibi jam iis rebus in Galliā auctoritātem comparaverat, ut undīque ad eum legatiōnes concurrērent,^e gratiam atque amicitiam publicē privatimque petērent.

56. Ubi intellexit^a ultro ad se veniri, altērā ex parte Senōnes Carnutesque conscientiā facinōris instigāri, altērā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romānis parāre, neque aibi^f voluntariōrum copias defōre, si ex finibus suis progrēdi cōpisset: armātum concilium indicit (hoc more Gallōrum est initium belli), quo lege commūni omnes pubēres armāti convenire consueverunt; qui^g ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis^h omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorīgem, ⁱalterius principem^h factiōnis, genērum suum (quem suprā demonstravimus, ^kCēsāris secūtum fidem, ab eo non discessisse), hostem iudicat, bonāque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliæ civitatibus, ^lhuc iter facturumⁱ per fines Remōrum, eorumque agros populaturum,ⁱ ac prius, quā id faciat, Labiēni castra oppugnatūrum:ⁱ quæ fieri velit, praecepit.

57. Labiēnus, cū et loci naturā et manu munitissimis castris sese tenēret, de suo ac legiōnis pericūlo nihil timēbat; ne quam occasiōnem rei bene gerendæ dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis ora-

^a Gr. 522, R. iii, & Id. ^d Gr. 611, (ex.)

^e Id. 87, 8.

^b Id. 98, 2. [68, 2. ^c Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^h Gr. 251, R. ..

^f Gr. 611, (de.)

^g Gr. 393, R. i.

ⁱ Id. 94, 1, 2d, & 100, 1.

tiōne Indutiomāri cognitā, quam in concilio habuērat, nuncios mittit ad finitimās civitatēs, equitesque undīque evocat: iis^a certum diem conveniendi dicit. Intērim propē quotidie cum omni equitātu Indutiomārus¹ sub castris ejus vagabātur aliās^b ut situm castrōrum cognoscēret,^c aliās^b colloquendi aut erritandi causā: equītes plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciēbant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiōnes continēbat, timorisque opiniōnem, ²quibuscumque^d potērat rebus, augēbat.

58. Cum majōre in dies contēptiōne Indutiomārus ad^e castra accedēret, nocte unā, ³intromissis equitibus omnium finitimārum civitātum, ⁴quos arcessendos curavērat, tantā diligentīā omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut ⁵nullā ratiōne ea res enunciāri aut ad Trevīros perferri posset.^e Intērim ex consuetudīne quotidianā Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit, atque ibi magnam partem diēi consūmit; equītes tela conjiciunt, et ⁶magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespērum ⁷dispersi^f ac dissipāti^f discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equitātum emittit; ⁸præcipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod ⁹fore, sicut accidit, vidēbat), unum omnes petant^h Indutiomārum; neu quis quem prius vulneret,^h quā illum interfectum vidērit, quod ⁹morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugēre nolēbat: magna propōnit iis,^a qui occidērint,ⁱ præmia: submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. ¹⁰Comprōbat homīnis consilium fortūna; et, cū unum omnes petērent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomārus interficitur, caputque ejus refertur in castra: redeuntes equītes, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hāc re cognitā, omnes Eburōnum et Nerviorum, quæ convenērant, copiæ discēdunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Cæsar quietiōrem Galliam.

^a Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^d Id. 37, 7, Note 2.^e Id. 37, 9, Note 3.^b Id. 124, 12.^c Gr. 615.^h Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^c Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^f Gr. 274.ⁱ Gr. 644.

BOOK VI.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I Commotions throughout nearly all Gaul in consequence of the overthrow and death of Tiberius—Chap. 1-8. II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi—Chap. 9-28. III. Punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones—Chap. 29-44.

1. **MULTIS** de causis Cæsar, majorem Galliæ motum expectans, per Marcum Silanum, Caium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium, legatos, ¹ dilectum habere instituit: simul ab Cneio Pompeio proconsule petit, ² quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicæ causâ remaneret, ³ quos ⁴ ex Cisalpina Galliâ consulis sacramento rogavisset, ⁵ ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci juberet: ⁶ magni ⁷ interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliæ existimans, tantas videre Italiæ facultates, ⁸ ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modò id brevi tempore ⁹ sarciri, sed etiam majoribus adaugeri copiis posset. ¹⁰ Quod ¹¹ cum Pompeius et reipublicæ et amicitie tribuisset, ¹² celeriter confecto per suos dilectu, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus, duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Quinto Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid Populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.¹

2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ² ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treviris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt: cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, ³ obsidibusque de pecuniâ cavent: Ambiorigem sibi societate et fœdere adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar, cum

¹ Gr. 655.

² Gr. 495, R. XXVIII. ³ Id. 38.

⁴ Id. 87, (*militēs*.)

⁵ Gr. 671, R. LVIII. ⁶ Id. 81, 1.

⁷ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

⁸ Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

⁹ Gr. 627, 5.

undique bellum parari vidēret, Nervios,^a Aduatūcos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenānis omnibus Germānis, esse^b in armis, Senōnes^c ¹ad imperātum non venīre, et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicāre, a Treviris Germānos^c crebris legationibus sollicitari;^b maturius sibi^c de bello cogitandum putāvit.

3. Itaque ²nondum hieme confectā, proximis quatuor coactis legionibus, de improvīso in fines Nerviorum contendit, et prius, quā illi aut convenīre aut profugēre possent,^d magno pecōris atque hominum numēro capto, atque eā praeda militibus^c concessā, vastatisque agris, in deditiōnem venīre atque obsides sibi dare coēgit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo^e vere, ³ut instituērat, indicto, cū reliqui, praeter Senōnes, Carnutes, Trevirosque, venissent, initium belli ac defectiōnis hoc esse arbitrātus,^e ut ⁴omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus,^b civitatemque patrum memoriā conjunxerant;^e sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. ⁵Hāc re pro suggestu pronuntiātā, eōdem die cum legionibus in Senōnes proficiscitur, magnisque itineribus eō pervenit.

4. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire;⁷ conantibus,^c priusquā id effici posset,^d adesse Romanos^a nuntiatur; necessariō ⁸sententiā desistunt, legatosque ⁹deprecandi causā ad Cēsārem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitas erat in fide civitas. Libenter Cēsar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam, excusationemque accipit;¹⁰ quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quæstiōnis, esse arbitrabitur. Obsidibus imperātis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos¹ tradit. Eōdem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientelā: eādem

^a Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^d Gr. 627, 4.^e Id. 106, 1.^b Id. 96, 2.^c Gr. 522, R. iii.^b Gr. 382, R. XVI^c Gr. 699, R. LXL^e Id. 17, 1.¹ Id. 107, 1.

ferunt responsa. Perāgit concilium Cæsar, equitesque impērat civitatibus.*

5. Hāc parte Galliæ pacatā, ¹ totus et mente et animo in bellum Trevirōrum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinū cum equitatu Senōnum secum proficisci jubet, ² ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā, aut ex eo, quod meruērat, odio civitātis, motus existat.^b Hīs rebus constitūtis, quod ³ pro explorāto habēbat, Ambiorigem prælio non esse concertatūrum, ⁴ reliqua ejus consilia animo^c circumspiciebāt. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburōnum finibus,^d ^eperpetuis paludibus^e silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Galliā de pace ad Cæsārem legātos nunquam misērant. Cum iis esse hospitium Ambiorigi^f sciēbat: item per Treviros venisse Germānis^f in amicitiam, cognovērat. Hæc prius ^gilli^g detrahenda auxilia existimābat, quā ipsum bello lacessēret; ne, desperatā salūte, aut se in Menapios abdēret, aut ^hcum Transrhenānis congrēdi cogerētur. Hoc inīto consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Treviros mittit, duasque legiōnes ad eum proficisci jubet: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi, nullā coactā ⁱmanu,ⁱ loci præsidio^b freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt, suāque eodem confērunt.

6. Cæsar, partitis copiis cum Caio Fabio legāto et Marco Crasso quæstōre, celeriterque ¹⁰effectis pontibus ¹¹adit tripartitō, ædificia vicosque incendit, magno pecōris atque hominum numēro¹ potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii, legātos ad eum pacis petendæ causā mittunt. Ille, obsidibus acceptis hostium se habitūrum numēro confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legātos, finibus suis recepissent. His confirmātis rebus, Commium Atrebātem cum equitatu custōdis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treviros proficiscitur.

* Gr. 501, R. XXIX, & ^d Gr. 382, R. XVI.

^e Gr. 522, R. iii & Id. 5, 1.

^b Gr. 627, 1, 2d. [Id. 5, 1. ^c Gr. 394, R. ii.

^h Gr. 462, R. XXIII.

^e Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ^f Gr. 380, *Rule*.

ⁱ Gr. 484, XXVI.

7. Dum hæc a Cæsäre geruntur, Treviri, magnis coactis pedītātūs equitatūsque copiis, Labiēnum^a cum unā legiōne, quæ in eōrum finibus hiemābat, adoriri parābant: jamque ab eo non longiūs bidui viā^b abērant, cū duas venisse^c legiōnes missu Cæsāris cognoscunt. Posītis castris a^d millibus^e passuum quindēcim, auxilia Germanōrum expectāre constituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cognīto consilio, sperans, temeritātē^e eōrum fore aliquam dimicandi facultātem, præsidiū^f cohortium quinque impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnōque equitātu contra hostem profisciscitur, et, mille passuum intermisso spatio,^f castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficīli transītū^g flumen ripisque præruptis: hoc neque ipse transire in animo habēbat, neque hostes transitūros existimābat. ¹ Augēbātur auxiliōrum quotidie spes. ² Loquitur in consilio palam, “quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur,^h sese suas exercitūsque fortūnas ³ in dubium non devocatūrum, et postēro die primā luce castra motūrum.” Celerit̄r hæc ad hostes deferuntur, utⁱ ex magno Gallōrum equitatūs numēro nonnullos ⁴ Gallīcis rebus^k favēre natūra cogēbat. Labiēnus noctu, tribūnis militum ⁶ primisque ordinibus coactis, quid sui sit consilii, propōnit, et, quo faciliūs hostibus timōris det^l suspiciōnem, majōre strepitū^e et tumultu, quā Popūli Romāni fert consuetūdo, castra movēri jubet. His rebus^e fugæ similem profectiōnem efficit. Hæc quoque per exploratōres ante lucem, in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum, ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiōnes processerat, cū Galli, cohortāti inter se, “ne sperātam prædam ex manibus dimittērent; ⁶ longum esse, perterritis Romānis, Germanōrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam pati dignitā-

^a Gr. 618, R. LII.^d Gr. 578.^h Gr. 634.^b Gr. 573, R. XLII, &^e Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^l Gr. 628.

Gr. 471.

^f Id. 109, 2.^k Gr. 403, R. v.^g Id. 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.⁶ Gr. 339, R. VII.^l Gr. 627, 1, 2d.

tem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum,^a præsertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant;" flumen^a transire et iniquo loco^b prælium committere non dubitant. Quæ^a fore suspicatus Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, ¹ eādem usus simulatiōne^d itinēris, placidē progrediebatur. Tum, præmissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultu quodam collocatis, "Habētis," inquit, "milites,^e quam petistis, ² facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco^b tenētis: ³ præstāte eandem nobis^f ducibus virtutem, quam sæpenumēro imperatōri præstitistis: adesse eum et hæc coram cernere, existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem converti^g aciemque dirigi jubet, et, paucis turmis ⁴ præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latēra dispōnit. Celeriter nostri clamōre sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi ⁵ præter spem, quos^h fugere credēbant, ⁶ infestis signisⁱ ad se ire vidērunt, impetum modò ferre non potuerunt, ac, primo concursuⁱ in fugam coniecti, proximās silvas petierunt: quos^k Labiēnus equitatu consecratus, magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post diēbus civitatem recepit: nam Germāni, qui auxilioⁱ veniebant, perceptā Trevirōrum fugā, sese domum contulērunt. Cum iis propinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectiōnis auctōres fuerant, comitati eos, ex civitate excessere. ⁷ Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

9. Cæsar, postquā ex Menapiis in Treviros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum erat altera,^m quod auxilia contra se Treviris miserant; altera,^m ⁸ ne Ambiorix ad eos receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo antè exercitum transduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Notā atque institutā ratiōne, magno

^a Gr. 443.^a Gr. 448.¹ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^b Gr. 611, (in.) [Id. 38. ^f Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^k Id. 38.^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII, & ^e Id. 90, 4.¹ Gr. 432, (illis.)^d Gr. 484, R. XXVI. ^h Id. 38, & 91.^m Id. 27, 10.

militum studio, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmo in Tre-
viris præsidio ad pontem relicto, ne quis ab iis subitò motus
orirētur,^a reliquas copias equitatumque transducit. Ubi,
qui antè obsides dedērant atque in deditiōnem venērunt,
¹ purgandi sui causā ad eum legātos mittunt; qui doceant,^b
“neque ex suā civitatē auxilia^c in Treviros missa,^d ² neque
ab se fidem læsam:^d” petunt atque orant, “ut sibi parcat,^e
³ ne commūni odio Germanōrum innocentes pro nocentibus
pœnas pendant:” si amplius obsidum^f velit, dare pollicen-
tur. ⁴ Cognitā Cæsar causā^g repērit, ab Suēvis auxilia missa
esse:^d Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditus viasque in
Suēvos perquirat.

10. Intērim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suēvos^h
omnes unum in locum copias cogēre, atque iis nationibus,^h
quæ sub eōrum sintⁱ imperio, denunciāre, uti auxilia pedi-
tātūs equitatūsque mittant.^e His cognitīs rebus, rem fru-
mentariam providet, castris^h idoneum locum deligit, Ubiis^h
impērat, ut pecōra dedūcant^o suāque omnia ex agris in op-
pida confērant, sperans, barbāros atque ⁶imperitos homīnes,^c
inopiā cibariōrum affictos, ad inīquam pugnandi conditiō-
nem posse dedūci:^k mandat, ut crebros exploratōres in Suē-
vos mittant,^o quæque apud eos gerantur,^l cognoscant.^e Illi
imperāta faciunt, et, paucis diēbus intermissis, ⁶refērent,
“Suēvos^o omnes, posteaquam certiōres nuncii de exercitu
Romanōrum venērunt, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis,
quas coēgissent,^l penitus ad extrēmos fines sese recepisse:^d
silvam esse ibi ⁷infinītā magnitudine, quæ appellātur^m Ba-
cēnis: hanc^c longē introrsus pertinēre, et, pro natīvo muro
objectam, Cheruscos ⁸ab Suēvis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis,
injuriis incursionibusque prohibēre: ad ejus initium silvæ
Suēvos^c adventum Romanōrum expectāre constituisse.”nd

^a Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^o Gr. 627, 1, 3d.¹ Gr. 634.^b Gr. 643, 4th.^f Gr. 343, R. VIII.² Id. 87.^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^g Id. 104, 1.³ Gr. 627, 5.^d Id. 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^h Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^m Gr. 653, 1st.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,^a non ¹ali-
num, esse videtur,^b de Galliæ Germaniæque moribus, et
quo ^cdiffèrent^d eæ nationes inter sese, ²proponere. In Gal-
liâ, non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque ³in omnibus pa-
gis partibusque, sed pæne etiam in singulis^e domibus, fac-
tiones sunt: ⁴earumque factionum principes sunt, qui sum-
mam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quo-
rum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum con-
siliorumque redeat.^f ⁵Idque ejus rei causâ antiquitus insti-
tutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii^g
egëret: ^hsuos enim ⁶quisque opprimiⁱ et circumveniri non
patitur, neque, aliter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auc-
toritatem. ⁷Hæc eadem ratio est in summâ totius Galliæ:
namque omnes civitates in partes divise sunt duas.

12. Cùm Cæsar in Galliam venit, alterius^k factionis
⁸principes erant Ædui, alterius^k Sequani. Hi cùm per se
minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in
Æduis, magnæque eorum^l erant clientelæ, Germanos atque
Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis ⁹jacturis
pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Præliis verò compluribus
factis secundis, atque omni nobilitate Æduorum interfectâ,
¹⁰tantum potentiâ^c antecesserant, ut magnam partem clien-
tium ab Æduis ad se transducerent, obsidesque ab iis prin-
cipum filios acciperent, et publicè jurare cogèrent, nihil se
contra Sequanos consilii inituros; et partem finitimi agri,
per vim occupatam, possiderent: Galliæque totius principa-
tum obtinerent. Quâ necessitate adductus Divitiacus, aux-
ilii petendi causâ Romam ad Senatum profectus, ¹¹infectâ
re redierat. Adventu Cæsaris factâ commutatione rerum,
obsidibus Æduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, no-
vis^m per Cæsarem comparatis (quod hi, qui se ad ¹²eorum

^a Id. 67, 5, Note.^c Id. 26, 5.¹ Id. 90.^b Id. 51.^f Gr. 644.² Id. 27, 10.^e Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^g Gr. 483.¹ Gr. 364, R. XII.^d Gr. 627, 5.^h Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^m Id. 19, (*clientelis*.)

amicitiā aggregavērant, meliōre conditionē^a atque æquidre imperio se^b uti vidēbant), ¹ reliquis rebus^c eōrum, gratiā, dignitatē^c amplificatā, Sequāni principatū^d dimisērant. In eōrum locum Remi successērant; ² quos^d quod adæquāre apud Cæsārem gratiā intelligebātur, ii, qui propter ⁴ vetēres inimicitias nullo modo cum Æduis conjungi potērant, ⁵ se Remis^e in clientelam dicābant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repentē collectam auctoritatē tenēbant. Eo tum statu^f res erat, ut longē principes^g haberentur^h Ædui, secundum locum dignitātis Remi obtinērent.^h

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum, qui ⁶ aliquo sunt numeroⁱ atque honore,ⁱ genēra sunt duo: nam plebes pæne servōrum habētur loco,^f quæ per se nihil audet et nullo adhibētur consilio.^k Plerique, cū aut ⁷ æreⁱ aliēno, aut magnitudine tributōrum, aut injuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dicant nobilibus:^o ⁸ in hos eādē omnia sunt jura, quæ domīnis^m in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus ⁹ altērum est Druidū,^l altērum equitū. ¹⁰ Illi rebus^o divinis intersunt, sacrificia publicā ac privāta ¹¹ procurant, religiōnes interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinæ causāⁱ concurrit, magnōque ¹² ii sunt apud eos honore.^f Nam ferē de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est^o admissum facinus, si cædes facta, si de hæreditate, si de finibus controversia est,^o iidem decernunt; præmia pœnasque constituunt: si qui aut privātus aut publicus eōrum ¹³ decreto^p non stetit, sacrificiis interdūcunt. Hæc pœna apud eos est gravissīma. ¹⁴ Quibus ita est interdictum, ii numero impiōrum ac sceleratōrum habentur; iis omnes decēdunt, ¹⁵ aditū eōrum sermonemque defugiant, ne quid ex contagiōne incommōdi ac-

^a Gr. 484, R. XXVI. ^f Gr. 611, (in.) ⁱ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

^b Gr. 671, R. LVIII. ^g Gr. 319, R. V, & 322. ^m Gr. 394, R. ii.

^c Id. 109, 2, & Gr. 268. ^h Gr. 627, 1, 1st. ⁿ Gr. 393, R. i.

^d Id. 39 & 91. ^l Gr. 339, R. VII. ^o Gr. 629.

^e Gr. 501, R. XXIX. ^k Gr. 522, R. iii. ^p Gr. 403, R. v.

ciant: neque iis petentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus præest unus, qui ¹summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; at, si sunt plures pares, suffragio ^a Druidum deligitur, nonnunquam etiam armis ^a de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, ²quæ regio totius Galliæ media ^b habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decretis ^c judiciisque ³parent. ⁴Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur: et nunc, qui ^d ^ediligentiùs eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illò discendi causâ proficiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consuêrunt, neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt; ⁶militiæ vacatiõnem ⁷omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati ⁸præmiis, ^aet suâ sponte ^a multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ⁹ediscere dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli vicenos ^e in disciplinâ permanent. Neque fas esse existimant, ¹⁰ea literis mandare, cum in reliquis ferè rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Græcis utantur ^f literis. ¹¹Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quòd neque in vulgum ¹²disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discant, ^gliteris ^cconfisos, minùs memoriæ ^cstudere: quod ^hferè plerisque accidit, ut præsidio literarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. ⁱ ¹³In primis hoc volunt persuadere, ¹⁴non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios: atque hoc ^a maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum naturâ, de Deorum immortalium vi ac potestate ¹⁵disputant et juventuti tradunt.

^a Gr. 542, R. XXIX. ^d Id. 37, (ii.)

^e Gr. 644.

^b Gr. 319, R. V, & 322. ^e Id. 26, 1.

^h Id. 37, 9, Note 8.

^c Gr. 403, R. v.

^f Gr. 630.

ⁱ Gr. 627, 1, 4th.

15. *Altĕrum genus est equitum. Hi, ¹cū est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ^a ante Cæsaris adventum ferē quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsi ^b injurias inferrent, aut illātas propulsarent), omnes in bello ² versantur - atque eōrum ut quisque est genēre ^c copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ³ ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novērunt.*

16. *Natio est omnium Gallōrum admōdum ⁴ dedita religionibus, ^d atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in praeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant, aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utuntur; quōd, pro vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse aliter Deōrum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur: publicēque ejusdem genēris habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immāni magnitudine ^e simulācra habent, quorum ⁶ contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus ^f complent, quibus succensis, circumventi flammā exanimantur homines. Supplicia eōrum, qui in furto, aut in latrocinio, aut aliquā noxā sint comprehensi, ^g gratiōra Diis ^d immortalibus esse arbitrantur: sed, cū ⁶ ejus genēris copia deficit, ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.*

17. *⁷ Deum maxime Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt plurima simulācra, hunc ^h omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc ^h viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ^h ad quæstus pecuniæ mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc, ⁸ Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam: de his eandem ferē, quam reliquæ gentes, ⁱ habent opinionem; Apollinem ^h morbos depellere, Minervam ^h opĕrum atque artificiorum ⁹ initia tradere; Jovem ^h imperium cœlestium tenere; Martem ^h bella regere. Huic, cū praelio dimicare constituērunt, ea, quæ bello cepĕrint, plerumque de-*

^a Id. 37, 9, Note 3.

^d Gr. 332, R. XVI.

^e Gr. 656.

^b Id. 32, 3.

^c Gr. 339, R. VII.

^h Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

⁶ Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.

^f Gr. 514, R. XXXI.

ⁱ Gr. 308.

vōvent. ¹ Quæ superavērint,^a animalia capta immōlant; reliquas res in unum locum confērunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumūlos locis^b consecrātis conspiciārī licet: neque sæpe accīdit, ut, neglectā quispiam religiōne,^c aut capta^d apud se occultāre, aut ² posita^d tollere auderet: gravissimumque ei rei^e supplicium cum cruciātu constitūtum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognātos prædicant, idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam, ³ spatia omnis temporis non numēro dierum, sed noctium, finiunt; dies natāles et mensium et annōrum initia sic observant, ⁴ ut noctem dies subsequatur.^f In reliquis vitæ institutis, hōc^g ferè ab reliquis diffērunt, quòd suos libēros, nisi cūm adolevērint, ut munus militiæ sustinere possint, ⁵ palām ad se adire non patiuntur; filiumque puerili ætate in publico, in conspectu patris assistere, turpe^h ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomīne acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis, æstimatiōne factā, cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniæ ⁶ conjunctim ratio habētur, ⁷ fructusque servantur: uter eōrum ⁸ vitā superārit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervēnit. Viri in uxōres, sicut in libēros, vitæ necisque habent potestatem: et, cūm pater familiæ, illustriore loco natus, decessit, ejus propinquī conveniunt, et, de morte si res in suspiciōnem venit, ⁹ de uxoribus in servilem modum quæstiōnem habent, et, ¹⁰ si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funēra sunt ¹¹ pro cultu Gallōrum magnifica et sumtuōsa; omniāque, quæ ¹² vivis cordiⁱ fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem infērunt, etiam animalia: ac paulo supra hanc memoriā servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constābat, justis funeribus confectis, unā cremabantur.

^a Gr. 644.^d Id. 19, (*animalia*.)^e Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^b Gr. 611, (*in*.)^c Gr. 522, R. iii.^h Gr. 270. [Id. 19.^f Id. 109, 2.^g Gr. 627, 1, 1st.ⁱ Gr. 427, R. XIX. &

20. Quæ^a civitatēs¹ commodiūs suam rem publicā administrāre existimantur, habent legibus^b sanctum, si quis quid de republicā a finitimis rumōre ac famā accepērit, uti ad magistrātum defērat,^c neve cum quo alio communicet:^d quòd sæpe homīnes temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terrēri, et ad faciūsus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capēre cognitum est. Magistrātus, ²quæ visa sunt, occultant; quæque^d esse ex usu judicavērint, multitudīni produnt. De republicā nisi ³per concilium loqui non conceditur.

21. Germāni multū ab hac consuetudinē diffērunt: nam neque Druīdes habent, qui rebus divinis præsint,^e ⁴neque sacrificiis^f student. Deōrum numēro eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt, et ⁵quorum apertē opibus juvantur, Solem et ⁶Vulcānum et Lunam: reliquos ne famā quidem accepērunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militāris consistit: ⁷ab parvulis labōri^f ac duritiæ^f student. Qui diutissimē ⁸impubēres permansērunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hōc ali statūrā,^g ali hōc vires,^h nervosque confirmāri, putant. Intra annum verò vicesimū femīnæ notitiam habuisse, in turpissimis habent rebus: cujus rei nulla est occultatio, quòd et promiscuē in fluminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis ⁹rhēnōnum tegimentis utuntur, magnā corpōris parte nudā.

22. Agricultūræ^f non student; majorque pars victūs eōrum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistrātus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus^h cognationibusque homīnum, qui unā coiērint, ¹⁰quantum,ⁱ et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno pōst aliō transire cogunt. ¹¹Ejus rei multas affērent causas; ne assiduā consuetudinē capti, studium belli gerendi agricultūrā commū-

^a Id. 37, 4, (*civitates*.) ^d Gr. 644.

^e Gr. 671, R. LVIII.

^b Gr. 542, R. XXXV. ^c Gr. 641, R. ii.

^h Gr. 501, R. XXIX.

^g Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^f Gr. 403, R. v.

ⁱ Id. 46, 1.

tent; ^a ne latos fines parāre studeant, ^a potentioresque humil-
iōres possessionibus ^b expellant; ^a ne ¹ accuratiūs ad frigōra
atque æstus vitandos ^c ædificent; ^a ne qua oriātur ^a pecuniæ
cupiditas, quā ex re factiōnes dissensionesque nascuntur; ut
^a animi æquitāte plebem contineant, cū suas quisque opes
cum potentissimis æquāri videat.^d

23. Civitatibus ^e maxīma laus est, quā latissimas circum
se vastātis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc ³ proprium virtū-
tis ^f existimant, expulsos agris ^g finitimos ^h cedere, neque
quenquam ^h prope audere consistere: simul hōc se ^h fore tu-
tiōres arbitrantur, repentinæ incursiōnis timōre ⁱ sublāto.
Cū bellum civitas aut illātum defendit, aut infert; magis-
trātus, qui ei bello ^k præsint, ¹ ut vitæ necisque habeant potes-
tatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistrā-
tus, sed principes regiōnum atque pagōrum inter suos ⁴ jus
dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent
infamiam, quæ extra fines cujusque civitātis fiunt; atque ea
juventutis exercendæ ^m ac desidiæ minuendæ causā fieri præ-
dicant. Atque, ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit,
“se ducem fore; ^g qui ⁿ sequi velint, profiteantur; ^o” consur-
gunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxil-
ium pollicentur, atque ab multitudīne collaudantur: qui ex
iis secūti non sunt, in desertōrum ac proditōrum numēro
ducuntur, omniumque iis ^p rerum postea fides derogātur.
Hospites violāre, fas non putant; qui ⁿ quāque de causā ad
eos venērint, ab injuriā prohibent, sanctosque habent; iis
omnium domus patent, victusque communicātur.

24. ⁶ Ac fuit antea tempus, cū Germānos Galli virtūte
superārent, ⁷ ultro bella inferrent, propter hominū multitu-
dinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mittērent.

^a Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^f Gr. 349, R. IX.¹ Gr. 643, 4th.^b Gr. 613, R. LII.^g Gr. 613, R. LII.^m Id. 112, 5.^c Gr. 266, & Id. 112, 7.^h Gr. 671, R. LVIII.ⁿ Gr. 644.^d Gr. 630.ⁱ Id. 109, 2.^o Gr. 171, 1.^e Gr. 380, *Rule*.^k Gr. 393, R. i.^p Gr. 524, R. v.

Itaque ea, quæ fertilissimæ sunt, Germaniæ loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam^a Eratosthēni et quibusdam Græcis famā notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcæ Tectosages occupaverunt, atque ibi consederunt. Quæ^b gens ad hoc tempus iis sedibus sese continet, ¹ summamque habet justitiæ et bellicæ laudis opiniōnem: nunc quodque in eadem inopiā, egestatē, patientiā, quā Germāni, permānent, eodem victu^c et cultu corporis utuntur; ²Gallis^d autem Provinciæ propinquitās, et transmarinarum rerum notitia, ³ multa ad copiam atque usus largitur. Paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi præliis, ne se quidem ipsi^e cum illis virtute comparant.

25. Hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ suprā demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter^f ⁴expedito^g patet: non enim aliter^h finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum novērunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemētum et Rauracōrum finibus, rectaque fluminis Danubii regione^h pertinet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium: hinc se flectit ⁶sinistrorsus, diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniæ, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvæ dicat,ⁱ cū dierum iter^f sexaginta processerit,^k aut quo ex loco oriatur,^l acceperit. Multa in eā genēra^m ferarum nasci constat, quæ reliquis in locis visa non sint:^m ex quibus, quæ maxime differant ab ceteris et ⁷memoriæⁿ prodenda^o videantur, hæc sunt.

26. ⁸Est bos cervi figurā,^p cujus a mediā fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his, quæ nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summo, ⁹sicut palmæ, rami quān latè diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque naturā, eadem forma magnitudōque cornuum.

^a Gr. 671, R. LVIII.^f Gr. 573, R. XLII.¹ Gr. 627, 5.^b Id. 38, 2.^g Gr. 391, R. XVII.^m Gr. 644.^c Gr. 484, R. XXVI.^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.ⁿ Gr. 522, R. III.^d Gr. 378, R. XV.ⁱ Gr. 636, R. I.^o Id. 108, 6.^e Id. 33, 1.^k Gr. 630.^p Gr. 339, R. VII.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur ¹Alces.^a Harum est consimilis capreis^b figura et ²variëtas pellium; sed magnitudine^c paulo antecédunt, mutilæque sunt cornibus,^c et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quietis causâ procumbunt, neque, si ³quo afflictæ casu conciderint, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His^d sunt arbôres pro cubilibus: ⁴ad eas se applicant, atque ita, paulum modò reclinatæ, quietem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quò se recipere consuêrint,^e omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbôres tantum, ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverint, ⁵infirmas arbôres pondere affligunt, atque unâ ipsæ concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eorum, qui ⁶Uri^a appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine^c paulo infra elephantos, specie^f et colore et figurâ tauri. Magna vis eorum, et magna velocitas: neque homini,^g neque feræ, quam conspexerint, parcut. Hos studiôsè foveis^h captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore^h durant adolescentes, atque hoc genere^h venationis exercent; et, qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relâtis in publicum cornibus, ⁷quæ sint testimonio,ⁱ magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines, et mansuefieri, ⁸ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Hæc studiôsè conquisita ab labris argento^k circumclūdunt, atque in ⁹amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

29. ¹⁰Cæsar, postquam per Ubios exploratores compërit, Suëvos sese in silvas recepisse,^l inopiam frumenti veritus, quòd, ut suprâ demonstravimus, minimè omnes Germâni agriculturæ student, constituit, non progredi longius: sed, ne omnino metum reditûs sui barbaris^m tolleret, atque ut

^a Gr. 319, R. V.^c Gr. 627, 5.¹ Gr. 427, XIX, & 432.^b Id. 19, *formis*, &^f Gr. 339, R. VII.² Gr. 514, R. XXXI.Gr. 382, R. XVI. ^g Gr. 403, R. v.³ Id. 98, 2.^e Gr. 535, R. XXXIV.^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.⁴ Gr. 501, R. XXIX, &^d Gr. 394, R. ii.

Id. 19.

eōrum auxilia tardāret, reducto exercitū, partem ultimam pontis, quæ ripas Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmo ponte^a turrim tabulatōrum^b quatuor constituit, præsidiumque cohortium^c duodēcim pontis tuendi causā ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco^d præsidioque Caium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem præfēcit: ipse, cū maturescere frumenta incipērent,^e ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus (per Arduennam silvam, quæ est totius Galliæ maxīma, atque ab ripis Rhēni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertinet, milibusque^f ampliùs^g quingentis in longitudinē patet), Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu præmittit, ¹ si quid celeritate itinēris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit; monet, ut ignes fieri in castris prohibeat,^h ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat:ⁱ sese confestim subsequi^j dicit.

30. Basilus, ² ut imperatum est, facit; celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere, multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigeram contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. ³ Multum cum^k in omnibus rebus, tum^k in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum atque etiam imparatum incidēret,^l priusque ejus adventus ab hominibus videretur, quam fama ac nuncius adventus afferrētur:^m sic ⁴ magnæ fuit fortunæ,ⁿ omni militari instrumento,^o quod circum se habēbat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quod, ædificio circumdato silvā (ut sunt ferè domicilia Gallorum, qui, vitandi æstus causā, plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates), comites familiaresque ejus

^a Id. 17, 1.^f Gr. 471.¹ Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^b Gr. 339, R. VII.^c Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^m Gr. 627, 4.^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^h Gr. 627, 1, 2d.ⁿ Gr. 364, R. XII.^e Gr. 531.^l Id. 94, 3.^o Id. 109, 2.^g Gr. 573, R. XLII.^k Id. 124, 8.

angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis^a intulit: fugientem silvæ texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum, et ad vitandum, ¹multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas ²judiciōne^b non conduxit,^c quod prælio dimicandum^d non existimaret, an^b ³tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est: ⁴sed certe, dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi^e quemque consulere jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit: qui proximi Oceānum^f fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consueverunt: multi, ex suis finibus egressi, se suæque omnia ⁶alienissimis crediderunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiæ partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, ætate jam confectus, cum laborem aut belli aut fugæ ferre non posset, ⁶omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui^g ejus consilii auctor fuisset, ⁷taxo,^h cujus magna in Galliâ Germaniæque copia est, se exanimavit.

32. Segni Condrusique ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Trevirosque, legatos ad Cæsarem miserunt, oratum,ⁱ ne se in hostium numero duceret,^k neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, ⁸unam^l esse causam judicaret: ^knihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Cæsar, exploratâ re ⁹quæstiōne captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fugâ convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur,^k imperavit: si ita fecissent,^m fines eorum se violatūrum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc ferè est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causâ

^a Gr. 360.^c Gr. 403, R. v.ⁱ Gr. 712, R. LXIII.^b Id. 124, 18.^f Gr. 611, (ad.)^k Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^e Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^g Gr. 645, R. iii.^l Gr. 819, R. V, & 822.^d Id. 118, 5.^h Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^m Gr. 627, 2, & Id. 80, 2.

consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probabat, tum, quod superiōris anni munitiōnes intēgræ manēbant, ut militum labōrem sublevāret.^a Præsidio^b impedimentis legiōnem quatuordecimam reliquit, unam ex iis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas ex Italiā transduxerat. Ei legiōni^c castrisque Quintum Tullium Cicerōnem præficit, ducentosque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercitū, Titum Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Oceānum versus, in eas partes, quæ Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet: Caium Trebonium cum pari legiōnum numēro ad eam regiōnem, quæ Aduatūcis^d adjacet, depopulandam^e mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Sabim, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennæ partes ire constituit, quò cum paucis equitibus profectum^f Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdens, ¹ post diem septimum sese reversūrum, confirmat; quam ad diem ei legiōni,² quæ in præsidio relinquebātur, frumentum debēri sciēbat. Labiēnum Treboniumque hortātur, si reipublicæ commōdo³ facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur;⁴ ut, rursus communicato consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud belli initium capere possent.⁵

34. Erat, ² ut suprā demonstravimus, ³ manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non præsidium, quod¹ se armis defendēret; sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique^c aut vallis abdita, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedita, spem præsidii aut salutis aliquam offerēbat, consederat. Hæc loca⁴ vicinitalibus^m erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirēbat, non in summā exercitūs tuendā (nullum enim poterat unīversis ab perterritis ac dispersis pericūlum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quæ tamen ⁵ ex parte res ad salutem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et prædæ cupid-

^a Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^c Id. 112, 7.¹ Gr. 627, 1, 8d, & 632,^b Gr. 427, R. XIX.^f Id. 98, 2.² Gr. 627, 1, 2d. [(ut.)^d Gr. 501, R. XXIX.^e Gr. 522, R. iii.³ Gr. 636, R. i.⁴ Gr. 399, R. iv.⁵ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.^m Gr. 384, 4th.

itas multos longius evocabat, et silvæ incertis occultisque itineribus ¹ confertos adire prohibebant. ² Si negotium confici ³ stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici ⁴ vellet, dimittendæ ⁵ plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut ⁶ instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio ⁷ barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis ⁸ deerat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum ⁹ diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur; ut potius ¹⁰ in nocendo aliquid omitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Cæsar ad finitimas civitates nuncios dimittit, omnes ad se evocat spe prædæ, ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita, quam ¹¹ legionarius miles, periclitetur; ¹² simul ut, magnâ multitudine circumfusâ, pro tali facinore, stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. ¹³ Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

35. Hæc in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diebusque ¹⁴ appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Cæsar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum ¹⁵ in bello fortuna possit ¹⁶ et ¹⁷ quantos ¹⁸ afferat ¹⁹ casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, ²⁰ manus erat nulla, quæ parvam modò causam timoris afferret. ²¹ Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi ²² Eburones, atque ultro omnes ad prædam evocari. ²³ Congunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugâ Tenchthēros atque Usipētes ²⁴ suprâ docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque, triginta millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Cæsare relictum: primos Eburonum fines ²⁵ adeunt, multos ex fugâ dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris

¹ Id. 94, 3.² Id. 46, 1.³ Gr. 636, R. i.⁴ Id. 108, 2.⁵ Gr. 627, 1, 2d.⁶ Id. 96, 6.⁷ Gr. 427, R. XIX.⁸ Id. 48, 4.⁹ Gr. 618, R. LII.¹⁰ Gr. 396, & Id. 19, 1. ¹¹ Gr. 627, 5.

numéro, cujus^a sunt cupidissimi barbâri, potiuntur. Invitâti prædâ. longiùs procèdunt: ¹ non hos palus, in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvæ morantur: quibus in locis sit^b Cæsar, ex captivis quærunť; profectum longiùs reperiunt, omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis, "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc misèram ac tenuem sectamini prædam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis?"^c Tribus horis^d Aduatucam^e venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanòrum contulit: ²præsidiĩ tantum est, ut ne murus^f quidem cingi possit,^g neque quisquam egrèdi extra munitiões audeat."^h Oblatâ spe, Germâni, quamⁱ nacti erant prædam, in occulto relinquunt, ipsi Aduatucam^e contendunt, usi eòdem^j duce, cujus hæc indicio^k cognovèrant.

36. Cicëro, qui per omnes superiòres dies præceptis Cæsaris summâ diligentia milites in castris continuisset, ac ne calònem^l quidem quemquam extra munitiònem egrèdi passus esset, septimo die, diffidens de número dièrum Cæsarem fidem servatùrum, quòd longiùs eum progressum audièbat, neque ulla de reditu ejus fama afferebâtur; simul eòrum permòtus vocibus, ⁴qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiònem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egrèdi non licèret; nullum ejusmòdi casum expectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximòque equitatu, dispersis ac pæne delètis hostibus, in millibus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segètes misit, quas intèr et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant in castris ex legionibus ægri relictĩ; ex quibus ⁵qui hoc spatio dièrum convaluèrant, circiter trecenti sub vexillo unâ mittuntur: magna præterea multitudo calònum, magna vis jumentòrum, quæ in castris ⁶subsedèrat, factâ potestâte, sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore, ⁷casu Germâni equites interveniunt, protinusque eòdem illo, quo venèrant, cursu ab decu-

^a Gr. 349, R. IX.

^d Gr. 565, R. XLI.

^e Gr. 627, 1, 1st.

^b Gr. 627, 5.

^g Gr. 553, R. XXXVII.

^h Id. 37, 4.

^c Gr. 327.

^f Id. 121, Note 2.

ⁱ Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

manā portā in castra irrumpere conantur: nec prius sunt visi, objectis ab eā parte silvis, quā castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut, ¹ qui ^a sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur^b ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem^c aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tententur, ² reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur,^d neque quam in partem quisque conveniat,^d provident. Alius capta jam castra^e pronunciat; alius, delēto exercitu atque imperatore, victores barbaros^e venisse contendit: ³ plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt, Cottæque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint^f castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris,^g ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur, seque ipsi^h adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.ⁱ

38. Erat æger in praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, ⁴ qui primum pilum ad Cæsarem duxerat, cujus mentionem ⁵ superioribus praeliis fecimus, ac diem^k jam quintum cibo^l caruerat. Hic, diffusus suæ atque omnium salutis,^m inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminere hostes, atque in summo esse remⁿ discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in portā consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones ejus cohortis quæ in statione erat: paulisper unā praelium sustinent. ⁶ Relinquit animus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus: ægre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatium interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant, speciemque defensorum præbeant.

^a Id. 37, 4.^c Gr. 671, R. LVIII.¹ Gr. 627, 1, 3d.^b Id. 116, 6.^f Gr. 645, R. iii.² Gr. 565, R. XLI.^c Gr. 128, (*siquis*.)^g Gr. 380, *Rule*.³ Gr. 480, R. XXV.^d Gr. 627, 5.^h Id. 33, 1.^m Gr. 403, R. v.

39. Intērim confectā frumentatiōne, milītes nostri clamē rem exaudiunt; præcurreunt equītes, quanto sit ^a res in pericūlo, cognoscunt. Hic verò nulla munitio est, quæ ^b perterritos recipiat: modò conscripti, atque ¹ usūs ^c militāris imperiti, ad tribūnum militū centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his præcipiātur, ^a expectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin ^d rei novitate perturbetur. Barbāri, signa procul conspicātī, oppugnatione ^e desistunt: redisse primò legiōnes credunt, quas longiūs discessisse ex captivis cognovērāt: postea, despectā paucitate, ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

40. Calōnes in proximum tumūlum procurrunt: hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milītes. Alii, ² cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, ^f censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et, ³ si pars aliquā circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servāri posse confidunt: alii, ^g ut in jugo consistent, ^f atque eundem omnes ferant ^f casum. Hoc vetēres non probant milītes, quos ^h sub vexillo unā profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se ¹ cohortāti, duce Caio Trebonio, equīte Romāno, qui eis erat præpositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsequēti calōnes equitesque eōdem impetu milītum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in jugo constitērant, ⁴ nullo etiam nunc usu rei militāris percepto, neque in eo, quod probavērāt, consilio permanēre, ut se loco superiōre defendērent, neque eam, quam profuisse aliis ^k vim celeritatemque vidērant, imitāri potuerunt; sed, se in castra recipere conāti, iniquum in locum demiserant. Centuriōnes, quorum ¹ nonnulli, ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legiōnum, virtutis causā, ^m in superiōres erant ordīnes hujus legiōnis trans-

^a Gr. 627, 5.

^c Gr. 613, R. LII.

¹ Gr. 118, 5.

^b Gr. 636, R. I.

^f Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

^k Gr. 405, 1st.

^e Gr. 349, R. IX.

^g Gr. 308, (*censent.*)

¹ Gr. 355, R. X.

^d Gr. 627, 3.

^h Gr. 671, & Id. 91, 4. ^m Gr. 542, R. XXXV.

ducti ne antè partam rei militaris laudem amitterent,^a fortissimè pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute submòtis hostibus,^b præter spem incolūmis in castra pervēnit; pars a barbāris circumventa periit.

41. Germāni, desperatā expugnationē^b castrōrum, quod nostros jam constitisse^c in munitionibus vidēbant, cum eā prædā, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte,^d cū Caius Volusēnus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset,^e ¹ fidem non faceret,^f adesse cum incolūmi Cæsārem exercitū. Sic omnium animos timor præoccupaverat, ut, ² pæne alienatā mente,^b delētis omnibus copiis equitatum tantum se ex fugā recepisse,^c dicērent,^f neque, incolūmi exercitū, Germānos castra oppugnatūros fuisse contendērent. Quem^g timōrem Cæsāris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignōrans, ³ unum, quòd cohortes ex statione et præsidio essent^h emissæ, questus, ⁴ ne minīmo quidem casuⁱ locum relinqui debuisset, multum fortunam in repentinò hostium adventu potuisse indicāvit; multo etiam ampliùs, quòd pæne ab ipso vallo portisque castrōrum barbāros avertisset. ⁵ Quarum^g omnium rerum^k maxīmè admirandum videbātur, quòd Germāni, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur,^f ad castra Romanōrum delāti, ⁶ optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulērint.^l

43. Cæsar, rursus, ⁷ ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coacto numēro^b ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia, quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur: præda ex omnibus locis agebātur: frumenta non solūm a tantā multitudīne jumentōrum atque homīnum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque im-

^a Gr. 627, 1, 2d.^b Gr. 631.^c Gr. 522, R. iii.^b Id. 109, 2.^f Gr. 627, 1, 1st.^k Gr. 600, R. XLVII.^c Id. 98, 2.^g Id. 38.^l Gr. 627, 1, 4th.^d Gr. 565, R. XL.^h Gr. 627, 1, 3d.

br̄ibus procubuērant; ut, si qui etiam in præsentia se occul-
tassent, tamen iis,^a deducto exercitū, rerum omnium inopiā
pereundum viderētur. Ac sæpe in eum locum ventum est,^b
tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modò visum^c ab
se Ambiorigem^d in fugā captivi, nec planè etiam abisse^e
ex conspectu contendērent, ut, spe consequendi illatā atque
infinīto labōre suscepto, qui se summam ab Cæsāre gratiam^o
initūros putārent,^f ¹pæne natūram studio vincērent,^g sem-
perque paulum ²ad summam felicitatem defuisse viderētur,^h
atque ³ille latēbris aut saltibus se eripēret,ⁱ et noctu occul-
tatus alias regiōnes partesque petēret,^j non majore equitum
præsidio, quā quatuor, quibus^k solis vitam suam commit-
tere audēbat.

44. Tali modo vastātis regionibus,^l exercitum Cæsar duā-
rum cohortium damno Durocortōrum^k Remōrum reducit,
conciliōque in eum locum Galliæ indicto,^l de conjuratiōne
Senōnum et Carnūtum quæstiōnem habere instituit; et de
Accōne, qui princeps¹ ejus consilii fuērat, graviore senten-
tiā¹ pronunciātā, ⁴more majōrum supplicium sumsit. Non-
nulli judicium veriti profugērunt; ⁵quibus^m cū aquāⁿ at-
que igni^o interdixisset, duas legiōnes ad fines Trevirōrum,
duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senōnum finibus Agen-
dici in hibernis collocāvit; frumentōque ⁶exercitū^p proviso,
ut instituērat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

^a Gr. 699, R. LXI.^f Gr. 645, R. iii.¹ Gr. 319, R. V.^b Id. 67, Note.^g Gr. 627, 1 1st.^m Gr. 399, R. iv.^c Id. 98, 2.^h Gr. 501, R. XXIX.ⁿ Gr. 611, (ab.)^d Gr. 671, R. LVIII.ⁱ Id. 109, 2.^o Gr. 90, 7.^e Gr. 713, R. LII.^k Gr. 553, R. XXXVII.^p Gr. 522, R. iii.

NOTES ON BOOK I.

PAGE 53.—1. *Quarum*, supply *partium*, of these parts.—2. (Ii) *qui appellantur Celtæ ipsorum linguâ, Galli nostrâ* (linguâ, incolunt*) *tertiâ* (partem).—3. *Institûtis*, customs.—4. *Inter se*, among themselves; from each other.—5. Arrange: *Flumen Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitânis, Matrôna et Sequâna* (dividunt Gallos) *a Belgis*.—6. *Cultu*, civilization, mode of living—*humanitatē*, refinement, mental culture.—7. *Minimè sæpe*, least often, i. e. very seldom.—8. *Eos*, i. e. *Germânos*.—9. *Ipsi*, i. e. *Helvetii*.—10. *Eorum*, of them, i. e. of the Germans.—11. *Eorum*, (finium), of those confines, or territories, of that country, i. e. one of the three general divisions of Gaul.—12. *Vergit ad Septentriones*, it inclines, or extends towards the north.

P. 54.—1. *Ab extrêmis finibus*, from the remotest, or most distant confines of Gaul; meaning the most northern limit of the division then inhabited by the Celtæ, or Gauls, called *Gallia propria*, and here called *extrêmis*, because farthest distant from Rome.—2. *Spec-tant*, &c., they look towards—the country faces—the northeast.—3. *Ad Hispaniam*, at—next to—Spain, viz: the Bay of Biscay.—4. *Consûles*, See Index.—5. *Civitâti*, his state:—*Civitas* means all the people living under one government.—6. *Potiri imperio*, to obtain the government.—7. *Persuâsit id eis facilius hoc*, he persuaded them to that measure more easily, on this account.—8. *Naturâ loci*, by the nature of the place, or, of their situation; by their natural situation.—9. *Pro multitudîne hominum*, for, in proportion to, the number of inhabitants; in proportion to the population.—10. *Bellî atque fortitudinis*, for war and bravery.—11. *Qui patēbant*, which extended.—12. *Adducti his rebus*, induced by these circumstances.—13. *Ad proficiscendum*, for their departure.—14. *Carrorum quam maximum numêrum*, as great a number of wagons as possible.—15. *Sementes quàm maximas*, as great sowings as possible.

P. 55.—1. *In tertium annum*, against the third year.—2. *Occu-pâret*, that he should take possession of:—The imperfect subjunctive here follows the present (*persuâdet*) on the principle stated.

* Latin words not in Italics, or enclosed in parentheses, are not in the text, but are here supplied, to shew the full construction of the sentence.

§ 137, Obs. 1.—3. *Principatum*, the highest power or authority.—4. *Probat illis, perficere esse factu, perficere conata*, he (Orgetorix) assures them that the accomplishment of their designs would be easily done; that their designs would be easily accomplished.—5. *Totius Galliae, i. e. civitatibus totius Galliae, &c.*, Of the states of all Gaul the Helvetii,—*possent (facere) plurimum*, could do most, i. e. were most powerful.—6. *Inter se*, among themselves, to each other, mutually.—7. *Per tres—populos*, viz: the Helvetii, Sequani, and Aedui.—8. Arrange: *Sperant sese posse potiri (imperio) totius Galliae*.—9. *Ea res*, this design.—10. *Per indicium*, by information.—11. *Ex vinculis*, Out of chains, i. e. in chains.—12. Arrange: *Opportebat panam sequi (Orgetorigem) damnatum, ut cremaretur igni*, it behoved this punishment to follow, overtake, Orgetorix, being condemned, that he should be burned with fire.—13. *Familiam*, household—including domestics, slaves, &c.—14. *Ad millia decem*, about ten thousand;—*Ad*, with a numeral, signifies about, near, or towards.

P. 56.—1. *Magistratus cogèrent*, the magistrates (of the Aedui) were collecting.—2. *Quin ipse*, but that he.—3. *Ad*, about.—4. *Trimensium*, for three months.—5. *Molita cibaria*, ground provisions, i. e. meal or flour.—6. *Usi eodem consilio*, following the same counsel or design; adopting the same resolution.—7. *Boiosque, &c.*,—*receptos ad se, &c.*, having received the Boii, &c., they join them to themselves as allies; Or, they receive, and join to themselves as allies, the Boii, &c. For this use of the perfect participle see Idioms, 104.—8. *Vix quâ*, scil. viâ, where, or, by which way.—9. *Provinciam nostram*, our province; the Roman province in the south of Gaul, afterwards called Gallia Narbonensis.—10. *Propterea quod*, because; literally, on this account that.—11. *Isque transitur vado*, and it is crossed by a ford, i. e. it is fordable.

P. 57.—1. *Bono animo*, of a good mind, friendly disposition, well affected.—2. *Diem*, see *Dies*, Index.—3. *Ante diem quintum, &c.* The fifth before the Kalends of April, i. e. the 28th March. See Gr. App. I.—4. *Lucio Pisone, &c.*, that was, A. U. C. 696, B. C. 58.—5. *Urbe*, scil. *Româ*.—6. *Galliam ulteriorem*, farther Gaul, i. e. Gaul beyond the Alps.—7. *Provincia toti, &c.* he orders as many soldiers as possible from the whole province, i. e. he levies, &c.—For explanation of this construction see § 123, Exp.—8. *Ad*, near.—9. *Facti sunt certiôres*, were made more certain; were informed.—10. *Esse sibi in animo*, that they had it in design; that it was their intention; literally, that it was in the mind to them.—11. *Voluntate*, with his consent.—12. *Sub jugum missum*, sent under the yoke:—

Two spears were set upright in the ground, and another was laid across them at top, forming what the Romans called *jugum*. Under this they who were admitted to surrender upon these terms were compelled to pass unarmed, *nudi*.—13. *Concedendum* (esse sibi,) that he ought to yield to their request.—14. *Ante diem Idus Aprilis*, i. e. the 12th April, see App. I.

P. 58.—1. *Qui in flumen*—As the Rhone flows through the lake Lemanus, and of course out of it, it is here said that the lake flows into it. 2. *Ad montem Juram*, towards mount Jura.—3. *Millia passuum novem decem*, nineteen miles in length. See App. VI. Table 5.—4. *Castella commūit*, he strongly fortifies castles, or redoubts. § 91, Obs. 1. 5th.—5. *Se invito*, he being unwilling, i. e. against his will, or inclination.—6. *Negat se*, more, &c. he declares that he can not, consistently with the custom, &c. *Negat* is equivalent to *dicit non*.—7. *Navibus junctis ratibusque*, &c., some by means of boats joined together, and numerous rafts being made; before *navibus* supply *Alii*.—8. *Quā minima*, &c., where the depth of the river was least. 9. *Perrumpere*, break through, force a passage.—10. *Eo deprecatore*, he being intercessor; by his mediation.—11. *Gratiā et largitione*, by his personal influence and liberality—*poterat* (facere) *plurimum*, could accomplish a very great deal.—12. *In matrimonium duxerat*, had married; literally, had led into matrimony. *Ducere uxorem* (domum) “to marry,” is said of the husband, because a part of the ceremony consisted in leading the wife home to his house. *Nubere* (se) *viro*, “to marry,” is said of the wife, (literally, “to veil herself to her husband,”) because during the ceremony she wore a flame-colored veil.—13. *Novis rebus studēbat*, desired, wished for, new things; aimed at, plotted, a revolution in the state.

P. 59.—1. *Sequāni* (dent obsides);—*Helvetii* (dent obsides). 2. *Ne prohibeant*, that they would not prevent, or hinder, the *Helvetii* from (using) this route.—3. *Cæsari renunciatur*, Intelligence is brought to Cæsar; § 126, R. III.—4. *Intelligebat*, &c.—he perceived it would be very dangerous to the province—*ut haberet*, to have; (literally, that it should have).—5. *Proxtimum*, nearest, i. e. shortest.—6. *Quod est extrēmum* (oppidum) *citeriōris Provinciæ*, which is the most distant town (viz: from Rome,) of the hither province, i. e. of Cisalpine Gaul; See Index.—7. *Rogātum auxilium*, to ask assistance.

P. 60.—1. *Necessarii*, &c., friends and relations.—2. *Sibi præter agri*, &c. that nothing was left to them except the soil of their land; except a desolate country.—3. *Flumen est Arar*, The Arar

(now the Saone) is a river.—4. *Incredibili lenitate*, with surprising smoothness.—5. *In utram partem*, into which part; which way; in which direction.—6. *Id transibant*, were crossing that;—*intribus*, canoes, small boats.—7. *De tertiâ vigiliâ*, at the third watch, i. e. midnight; See App. I.—8. *Impeditos*, encumbered with their baggage.—9. *In proximas silvas*, &c., went into the neighboring forests and hid themselves:—This expresses the force of the accusative after *in*.—10. *Princeps pœnas persolvit*, first suffered punishment; § 98, Obs. 10, i. e. was the first to suffer punishment.

P. 61.—1. Arrange: *Tigurini interfecerunt L. Pisōnem legatum, avum L. Pisōnis ejus* (i. e. Cæsaris,) *socrî eodem prœlio quo Tigurini interfecerant Cassium*.—2. *Consequi*, come up with, overtake.—3. *Pontem in Arârî*, &c. that a bridge should be made over the Arar.—4. *Cassiâno bello*, in the war with Cassius; See Index, *Cassius*.—5. *Ita cum Cæsare agit*, thus speaks with, or addresses Cæsar:—This address of Divico is in the form of oblique narration; See § 140, 6, & § 141, R. VI., with explanation, &c.—6. *Vetëris incommôdi*, the old disaster; alluding to the defeat of Cassius.—7.—*Tribuëret* (quidquam) *magnopërè*, &c., should ascribe any thing too greatly to his own bravery.—8. *Ne committeret*, that he should not cause; bring it to pass—*aut prodëret*, &c., or hand down to posterity the memory of such an event.—9.—*Cæsar respondit*, Cæsar replied. All that follows in this chapter is oblique narration; the verb *respondit* being in the perfect indefinite, the leading verb governed by it in the present infinitive is translated as the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; See Idioms, Nos. 96, 98.—10. *Qui si*, if they, viz: the Roman people.

P. 62.—1. *Non fuisse*, &c., it would not have been difficult to guard against it; the subject of *fuisse* is *cavere*, and strictly rendered is, "that to guard against it would not have been difficult."—2. *Sed eo deceptum esse*, &c., but that they (the Roman people) had been deceived by this, because they did not think anything had been done by them;—Supply *quidquam* before *commissum*.—3. *Timendum* (esse sibi,) that they should fear.—4. *Quòd si vellet*, but if, even although, he were willing.—5. *Num etiam—posse*, &c.? Could he also lay aside, &c.?—6. *Eodem pertinere*, were to the same effect; *pertinere* has for its subject the two preceding clauses.—7. *Secundiores res* more prosperous things; greater prosperity.—8. *Quum ea sint ita*, although these things are so; although this is the case.—9. *Testem ejus rei*, a proof of that custom.—10. *Cupidius*, too eagerly.— *Aliëno loco*, in a disadvantageous, or unfavorable place.

P. 63.—1. *Novissimo agmīne*, the rear, *i. e.* the “last line” “the hindmost” on the march.—2. *Satis habēbat*, &c., considered it sufficient for the present.—3. *Nostrum primum* (agmen), our van.—4. *Quinis aut senis*, &c., five or six miles (each day).—5. *Flagitāre* (for *flagitābat*,) continued to importune—*publicē*, in the name of their state.—6. *Frigōra*, the cold; the coldness of the climate.—7. *Sub septentrionibus*, under the north; towards the north.—This must be understood in relation to Italy.—8. *Fumento*, corn:—At this time not meal or bread was served out to the Roman soldiers, but raw corn, which they themselves prepared.—9. *Conferri*, &c., that it was collecting, bringing in, at hand.—10. *Diutius*, too long; See Idioms, 22.—11. *Qui summo*, &c., who was invested with the office of chief magistrate.

P. 64.—1. *Tacuerat*, had concealed.—2. *Valēat plurimum*, is very powerful; has great influence.—3. *Privāti*, though private individuals.—4. *Necessariō coactus*, compelled by necessity, (*Necessariō* for *necessitāte*.)—5. *Designāri*, was meant.—6. *Nolēbat eas res jactāri, multis presentibus*, he was unwilling, he did not wish, that these affairs should be discussed, so many being present; in the presence of so many.—7. *Solo*, (*Lisco*.) of him alone.—8. *Redempta habēre*, &c., had farmed the customs, and all the other public revenues of the *Ædui*: *Portoria* means duties on exports and imports,—*vectigalia* means every other kind of tax or revenue. Those who “farmed” them bought them at the lowest price they could, from the government, and collected them for their own use.

P. 65.—1. *Facultātes magnas comparāsse*, &c., had acquired great means for bestowing presents, namely, for the purpose of extending and strengthening his influence. 2. *Largit̃er posse*, had great influence—*collocāsse* (nuptum), had given in marriage.—3. *Cupēre* (for *bene velle*), wished well to.—4. *Si quid (adversī) accidat*, if any thing unfortunate should happen; if any calamity befall.—5. *Inquirendo*, by enquiry, on enquiring.—6. *Equit̃atu* (the old dative for *equitatui*; § 16, Exc. 2.) *præerat*, was over, or commanded the cavalry.—7. *Certissimæ res*, most certain; most unquestionable facts.—8. *Injussu suo*, &c without his order and the order of the state (*viz*: of the *Ædui*).

P. 66.—1. *Voluntātem*, affection.—2. *Commonef̃cit*, reminds him.—3. *Ostendit*, shews him.—4. *Causā cognit̃ā*, the cause being tried or investigated.—5. *Nequid gravius*, &c. that he (*Cæsar*) should not determine any thing too severe; that he should not pass too severe a sentence.—6. *Ipse*, he himself (*viz*: *Divitiacus*).—

7 *Ille*, he (*i. e.* Dumnorix).—8. *Fraterno amore*, by brotherly love; by love or affection for his brother.

P. 67.—1. *Adhibet*, brings in—*proponit*, lays before him.—2. *Divitiāco fratri*, to his brother, *i. e.* at the request of, and for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.—3. *Custōdes*, spies.—4. *Consedisse*, had sat down, *i. e.* had encamped.—5. *Facilem* (*ascensum*) *esse*, that the ascent was easy.—6. *Vigiliā*; See Index; also Appendix to Gr. I.—7. See Index, *Legātus*.—8. See Index, *Prætor*—*Legātum prætoris*, a lieutenant with prætorian powers.—9. *Et iis ducibus*, and with those as guides.—10. *In* (*exercitu*) *M. Crassi*.—11. *Primâ luce*, at the first daylight; at the dawn of day.—12. *Ipse*, he himself (*i. e.*) Cæsar.—13. *Equo admissa*, his horse being put to it; spurred up, *i. e.* at full gallop.

P. 68.—1. *Multodie* (*acto*) much of the day being past; when much of the day was past.—2. *Pro viso*, literally, for seen, *i. e.* as if it had actually been seen by him.—3. *Quo consuevit intervallo*, at the distance at which he had been accustomed to follow, *i. e.* at the usual distance. 4. *Exercitu* (the old dative for *exercitui*), *frumentum metiri*, to measure out, *i. e.* to serve out corn for the army.—5. *Rei frumentariæ prospiciendum* (*esse sibi*), that he must provide for a supply of corn.—6. *Decurio*, See Index.—7. *Discedere*, were departing from them.—8. (*Helvetii*) *confiderent* (*Romānos*) *posse*, &c.—9. *Animum advertit*, (same as *animadvertit*), perceives; § 44. I. 3.—10. *Qui sustineret impetum*, to sustain the charge.

P. 69.—1. *Citeriore Galliâ*, hither Gaul; the north of Italy. 2. *Compleri*, to be filled, to be covered.—3. *Eum*, it, *i. e.* the place in which the baggage was.—4. *Confertissimâ acie*, &c., in very close array—*phalange factâ*, a phalanx being made. The German phalanx consisted of a very close body of men with their shields held over their heads, and overlapping so as to form a shed or screen like the Roman testudo, to defend them from the missiles of the enemy. The Macedonian phalanx, on the other hand, consisted of a body of men, sixteen deep and five hundred long.—5. *Sub*, close up to.—6. *Suo* (*equo remōto*).—7. *Pericūlo omnium* (*i. e.* Imperatoris et militum) *æquāto*, the danger of all being equal; all being exposed to equal danger.—8. *Scutum*, See Index.—9. *Satis commōdè*, conveniently enough; with sufficient ease or readiness.—10. *Nudo*, naked, unprotected:—Their bodies were exposed to the darts of the enemy, from having thrown down their shields.—11. *Pedem referre*, to retreat; literally, to take back the foot.—12. *Claudēbant agmen*, closed up the rear,—13. *Bipartito*, in two parties; in two divisions

The army was drawn up in three lines, of which the first and second lines, forming one division, made head against those who had been defeated and compelled to retreat, *i. e.* the Helvetians, who were now returning to the attack; and the third line sustained the attack of those advancing (*venientes*;) against them, the fresh troops, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi, who were coming up in the rear.

P. 70.—1. *Ancipiti pralio*, in doubtful battle, *i. e.* victory inclining to neither side.—2. *Alteri*, the one, *i. e.* the Helvetii—*alteri*, the other, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi.—3. *Ab septimâ horâ*, from the seventh hour, *i. e.* one o'clock p. m.; See Index, *hora*.—4. *Aversum*, turned away; who had turned his back; retreating; flying.—5. *Pugnatum est ad multam noctem*; It was fought till a great part of the night was past; till late at night.—6. *Matrâs ac tragûlas*, &c. continued throwing lances and javelins from beneath.—7. *Qui, si juvissent*, for, if they should aid them; See Idioms, 39.—8. Arrange: *Se habitûrum eos* (Lingonas) *eodem loco quo ille*, (Cæsar,) *haberet Helvetios*.—9. *Qui, cûm convenissent*, and they, when they had met; See Ref.

P. 71.—1. *Occultari*, be concealed, (*viz.* from Cæsar).—2. *Omnino ignorari*, be altogether unknown; remain altogether unnoticed.—3. *Primâ nocte*, at the beginning of the night.—4. Arrange *Imperatû his per quorum fines ierant, uti*, &c.—5. *Habuit*, &c., treated as enemies; *i. e.* either put them to death or sold them as slaves.—6. *Ipsos*, them, *viz.* the Helvetii, Tulingi, and Latobrigi.—7. *Vacare*, to be empty; to be uninhabited.—8. Arrange, *Concessit Æduis petentibus, ut* (Ædui) *collocarent Boios in suis finibus, quod* (Boii) *cogniti erant egregiâ virtute: quibus* (Scil. Boiis) *illi* (Ædui) *dederrunt agros*.—9. *Tabulæ*, lists; literally, tablets:—These were made of wood covered with wax, on which the Romans were accustomed to write with the stylus.—10. *Confectæ Græcis littëris*, written in Greek letters.—11. *Ratio*, an account.

P. 72.—1. *Capitum*, literally, “of heads,” *i. e.* persons, souls. 2. *Censu habito*, the census having been held; the number having been taken:—This was only a numbering of the army, and consequently very different from the Roman *census*; See Index, *Census*.—3. *Gratulatum*, to congratulate him:—After *gratulatum* supply *dicentes*, expressing past time; See Idioms, 94, 4, and 1, 2d.—4. *Pro veteribus injuriis*, &c., for the ancient injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Here two genitives are governed by one noun, the one, (*Helvetiorum*) in an active sense, and the other (*Populi Romani*) in a passive sense; § 106, Obs. 1, & 2.—5. *Ne quis*, &c.

that no one should disclose their deliberations, unless those to whom this charge should be given by the assembly at large.

P. 73.—1. *Non minus*, &c.; See Note 3, preceding page. The statement of the chiefs, and of Divitiacus who spoke for them, it will be perceived, is given in the form of oblique narration—of course, the leading verbs are in the infinitive mood governed by *dicentes*, or *dicens* expressing past time, because agreeing with the subject of verbs in the perfect tense. Hence the present infinitive, with a subject, will be translated in the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, in the pluperfect, as the references show; and also all the verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive; See § 140, 6, and § 141, R. VI., &c.—2. *Harum* (factionum) &c. that the Ædui were at the head of one of these factions, and the Averni at the head of the other.—3. *Hi cum contendrent*, &c.; since these (the Ædui and Averni) had contended for the superiority.—4. *Horum*, of the latter, (viz: the Germans).—5. *Copias*; *copia* in the singular means “abundance,” in the plural, commonly “forces,” but here, great abundance; the plural form rendering it emphatic.—6. *Neque recusaturos quo minus essent*, &c. nor refuse to be forever under their sway and government: Idioms, 78, Note, & 7.—7. *Se unum*, that he (Divitiacus) was the only one.

P. 74.—1. *Quibus locus*, &c. for whom a settlement and habitations were to be procured.—2. *Futurum esse*, that it would be; that the consequence in a few years would be.—3. *Neque enim*, &c., For neither was the Gallic territory to be compared with that of the Germans.—4. *Ut semel*, when once, i. e. as soon as.—5. *Omnia exempla cruciatusque*, all manner of cruelties: by Hendiadys (§ 150, 2, 2d,) for *exempla cruciatuum*.—6. *Nisi si*, same as *nisi*, unless.—7. *Ut*, namely, that.

P. 75.—1. *Habita*, being delivered.—2. *Exprimere*, draw, extort.—3. *Hoc*, on this account.—4. *Præ* (fortuna) *reliquorum*, in comparison with the fortune of the rest; or simply, than the rest.—5. *Fugæ facultas*, the means of escape.—6. *Omnes cruciatus*, all tortures, i. e. all kinds of torture.—7. *Eam rem futuram* (esse) *cura sibi*, that that thing would be a care to him; that he would attend to that matter.—8. *Secundum ea*, &c., besides these things, many circumstances induced him—*quare putâret*, to think; literally, why he should think.

P. 76.—1. *Occurrendum*, &c., he must meet, or thwart, as early as possible.—2. *Placuit ei*, it pleased him, i. e. he resolved.—3. *Et summis utrisque rebus*, matters of the greatest importance to

both.—4. *Si quid ipsi*, &c. if any thing had been wanted by him from Cæsar, i. e. if he had wanted any thing from Cæsar.—5. *Si quid ille se velit*, if he (Cæsar,) wished any thing from him (Ariovistus).—6. *Sine magno commeātu atque emolimento*, (better than *emolumento*,) without great expense and trouble.—7. Arrange. *Quid negotiū esset aut Cæsari*, &c.

P. 77.—1. *Hanc gratiam referret*, he should make this return—*ut graveretur*, that he grudged, or, was reluctant.—2. *Neque*, used conjunctively, equivalent to *et non*.—3. *Dicendum sibi et cognoscendum*, &c., that he should not think it necessary for him to speak, and inform himself about a matter of common interest.—4. *Nequam*, &c. (equivalent to *ne aliquam*,) that he should not lead any, &c.—5. *Injuriā* literally, with injury, i. e. without just cause.—6. *Quod*, i. e. *secundum id quod*, according to that which, i. e. as far as (equivalent to *quantum*) he could do it consistently with the interest of the republic.—7. *Item*, in like manner.—8. *Non oportere se impediri*, that he ought not to be hindered.

P. 78.—1. *Longè iis abfutūrum*, would be far from them. i. e. would do them no good. 2. *Quod sibi*, &c. as to what Cæsar threatened to him, namely.—3. *Inter*, during.—4. *Virtūte* (facere) *possent*, could effect by valor.—5. *Ædui* (veniebant) *questum*.—6. *Treviri autem* (veniebant) *questum*.—7. *Ne—minùs facile*, &c., lest—he (Ariovistus) might be less easily resisted.—8. *Re frumentariā comparatā*, having provided a supply of corn; Idioms, 104.—9. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—10. *Contendere*, was hastening—*processisse*, had advanced—*ad occupandum Vesontionem*, to take possession of Vesontio.—11. *Summa facultas*, the greatest abundance. 12. *Ad ducendum bellum*, for protracting the war.

P. 79.—1. *Ut circino circumductum*, as if traced around it with a pair of compasses.—2. *Non amplius* (spatio), not more than the space.—3. *Continet*, closes, occupies.—4. *Murus, circumdātus hunc* (montem,) *efficit arcem, et conjungit* (montem) *cum oppido*, a wall, thrown around, converts this mountain into a citadel, and connects it with the town.—5. *Ex percunctatione*, &c., from the enquiries of our men, and the statements of the Gauls.—6. *Vultum et aciem oculorum*, their look and the fierceness of their eyes.—7. *Tribunis,—præfectis*; See Index.—8. *Quorum alius*, &c., of whom one having assigned one reason, another, another reason, which they said was a necessary one, (or rendered it necessary,) 'for them to return home.—9. *Fingere vultum*, compose their countenance.

P. 80.—1. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—2. *Dicto audiens*, obedient to the order:—*Dicto* is governed in the dative here by *audiens*, § 111, R.: both words together commonly signify obedient, and govern a dative by the same rule; as, *Duci dicto audiens*, obedient to the general.—3. *Consilio convocato*, a council (of war) being called; or, having called a council of war.—4. *Sibi quarendum*, that they must enquire, i. e. that it was their business to enquire.—5. *Sibi quidem persuaderi*, that he was even persuaded.—6. *Suis postulatis*, &c., his demands being known, and the fairness.—7. *Sua*, their own.—8. *Factum (esse) periculum*, that trial had been made.—9. *Servili tumultu*, (equivalent to *servorum tumultu*) the insurrection of the slaves.

P. 81.—1. *In suis*, in their own, (i. e. the Helvetii)—*illorum* (i. e. *Germanorum*) *finibus*, in their territories.—2. *Quos*, for *aliquos*. any.—3. *Neque sui potestatem fecisset*, and had not given an opportunity of coming to an engagement with him:—*Facere potestatem sui*, means to allow one's self to be approached.—4. *Ratione et consilio*, by stratagem and cunning.—5. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—6. *Quod non fore dicto*, &c., As to this, that it was said the soldiers would not be obedient to orders.—7. *Scire enim quibuscumque*, &c., for he knew, to whomsoever, (i. e. in all cases in which; § 99, Obs. 7,) an army would not be obedient, that either, &c.—8. *Itaque se, quod*, &c., that he would therefore do immediately that which he was going to put off to a more distant day.

P. 82.—1. *Prætoriam cohortem*, a body guard.—2. *Confidebat maximè*, trusted most.—3. *Princeps*, first.—4. *Egerant*, strove—before *se neque*, supply *dicentes* or *dixerunt*; See Idioms, 94, 4.—5. *Satisfactione*, their apology, excuse.—6. *Exquisitio*, being reconnoitred.—7. (Supply *qui dicèrent*.) *quod*, &c., to say that that which, &c.—8. *Fore uti desisteret*, that he would desist; See Ref.

P. 83.—1. *Ne quem peditem*, &c. that Cæsar should not bring any infantry.—2. *Tolli*, should be prevented, thwarted.—3. *Commodissimum*, most expedient.—4. *Omnibus equis*, &c., All their horses being taken from the Gallic cavalry, to mount on them, (literally, thereon).—5. *Si quid opus*, &c., if there should be any need of action; § 118, R. XXII.—6. *Nunc rescribere ad equum*, he now enrolled them among the cavalry.—7. *Ex equis*, on horseback—*denos*, ten each.—8. *Ubi ventum est ad*, when they came to the place appointed; See Ref.

P. 84.—1. *Necessitudinis*, &c., of alliance existed between them and the Ædui.—2. *Nihil sui*, nothing of their own.—3. *Aucti-*

ores increased, farther advanced.—4. *Quos amplius*, any more—
5. *Rogatum et arcessitum*, having been asked and sent for.

P. 85.—1. *Quòd multitudinem, transducit*, as to his leading, &c.,; literally, as to this that he led; See Idioms, 38, Note.—2. *Defenderit*, had warded it off.—3. *Quid sibi vellet?* (Cæsar) What did he (Cæsar) want?—Here *sibi* refers to Cæsar, *suas* to Ariovistus.—4. *Hanc Galliam*, &c. That this Gaul (viz: in the north,) belonged to him (Ariovistus)—*Sicut illam nostram*, just as that (viz: the Roman Province) to us.—5. *Qui*, Since we.—6. *Quòd diceret*, as to that which he said; or since he said.—7. *Sese facturum esse gratum*, that he would do an agreeable thing, a favor; would oblige.

P. 86.—1. *In eam sententiam*, to this effect.—2. *Esse Ariovisti*, &c., belonged to Ariovistus, rather than to the Roman people.—3. *Quodque tempus*, &c., if all ancient time—the most ancient—the most distant period ought to be regarded.—4. *Voluisset*, had decreed.—5. *Propius* (ad) *tumulum*.—6. *Per fidem*, by relying on his faith.—7. *Vulgus militum*, among the common soldiers.—8. *Quòd arrogantia usus*, &c., using what arrogance, or with what arrogance Ariovistus had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul, and his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that affair had broken up the conference:—These subjunctives are all in the same construction, containing an indirect question, the first and second indicated by *quòd arrogantia*, and the third by *ut*; § 140, 5.—9. *Injectum est*, was infused.

P. 87.—1. *Neque perfectæ essent*, and had not been completed; § 93, 1.—2. *Quin conjicerent*, from throwing; See Ref.—3. *In eo peccandi*, &c., and because in him the Germans had no cause of sinning, of committing any act of violence.—4. *Causâ speculandi?* for the sake of spying? on purpose to act as spies?

P. 88.—1. *Ei potestas non deesset*, an opportunity might not be wanting to him, i. e. he might have the opportunity.—2. *Quos ex omni*, &c., literally, whom they had selected from the whole army, each horseman one.—3. *Si quòd*, &c. if they had to advance farther than usual in any direction.—4. *Cursum adæquarent*, equalled their speed.—5. *Quo in loco*, &c. in which the Germans had encamped.—6. *Quæ copiae*, that these forces.

P. 89.—1. *Suo instituto*, according to his custom, or design.—2. *A majoribus* (castris) from the larger camp.—3. *Sortibus et vaticinationibus*, by lots and auguries.—4. *Ex usu esset*, &c., whether or not it would be of advantage that the battle should be joined.—

5. *Non esse fas*, that it was not the will of the gods.—6. *Alarios*, the auxiliaries:—So called from their being in general placed on the wings (*alæ*) of the army when in the order of battle.—7. *Pro*, in front of.—8. *Ad speciem*, for show; for appearance.—9. *Generātim*, by nations.—10. *Rhedis*, carriages,—*carris*, baggage wagons.—11. *Ed*, on them.

P. 90.—1. *Singulis legionibus*, &c., placed a lieutenant and quæstor over each legion.—2. *Minimè firmam*, least firm, weakest. 3. See Note 4, p. 69.—4. *Expeditor*, more disengaged; more at liberty.—5. *Neque destiterunt fugere*, nor did they cease to fly; discontinue their flight.—6. *In his*, among these.—7. *Quam duxerat*, whom he had married.—8. *Dux filia*, &c. the two daughters of these,—the one was killed and the other taken captive.

P. 91.—1. *In ipsum Cæsarem*, &c., fell in with Cæsar himself. 2. *Beneficio*, by the favor.—3. *Proximi*, next to; bordering upon.—4. *In ciliariorem Galliam*, into hither Gaul:—The northern part of Italy, or that part of Gaul south of the Alps, was called Cisalpine, or hither Gaul, from being on *this side* of the Alps with regard to Rome.—5. *Ad agendos conventus*, to hold the assizes, or courts of justice:—This was usually attended to in the winter, when military operations could not be carried on.

NOTES ON BOOK II.

PAGE 92.—1. *Cum esset Cæsar*, &c.:—The time here indicated was in the year of the city 697, and 57 years B. C.—2. *Crebri rumores*, frequent reports. 3. *Dixerāmus*, we had said; B. I. Ch. 1.—4. *Conjurandi*, of the conspiracy.—5. *Partim qui*, some of whom; *ut*, as on the one hand—*ita*, so, on the other.—6. *Partim qui*, while others.—7. *Novis imperiis studēbat*, were in favor of a change of government.—8. *Ab nonnullis* (solicitentur).—9. *Qui ad conducendos*, &c., who had the means for hiring troops.—10. *Eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant*, could accomplish that object under our government.—11. *Inta æstāte*, in the beginning of summer.—12. *Dat negotium*, he gives a commission, he directs.—13. *Cognoscant*, should learn.

P. 93.—1. *Quin proficisceretur*, but that he should march; about marching.—2. *Celeriusque*, &c., and sooner than the expectation of all, (of any one,) i. e. than all (or any one) expected.—3. *Neque se consensisse*, that they had neither agreed; approved of the design; joined, entered into the confederacy.—4. *Furōrem*, insatiation.—5. *Ab his*, from these, viz: the ambassadors from the Remi.—6. *Quantæ*, how powerful.—7. *Omnia se habere explorata*, that they had all things fully examined.

P. 94.—1. *Divitiacum*, Divitiacus—not the Æduan.—2. *Totius belli summam*, the direction of the whole war.—3. *Longissimè absint*, are very remote.—4. *Qui appellantur uno nomine Germāni*, who are called by one name, Germans—*ad quadraginta millia*, about forty thousand.—5. *Liberaliter prosecutus oratione*, having complimented them highly in a speech.—6. *Ad diem*, by the day appointed.—7. *Magno opere*, i. e. *magnopere*, greatly—*quanto opere*, i. e. *quantopere*, how much it concerned.—8. *Ne cōstigendum sit*, that he might not have to contend.

P. 95.—1. *Quæ res*, this position.—2. *Cohortibus*; See Gr. App. V.—3. *Duodeviginti pedum*, (in latitudinem) eighteen feet broad.—4. *Gallorum eadē atque*, &c. of the Gauls as well as of the Belgæ.—5. *Quod tum*, &c. this was then easily done.—6. *Potestas consistendi in muro erat nulli*, the power of standing on the wall was to none; no man was able to stand on the wall.—7. *Præerat*, was over; had the command of; was governor of.—8. *De mediâ nocte*, soon after midnight.

P. 96.—1. *Quos*, &c., which, (viz: villages and buildings,) they could reach.—2. *Et ab millibus passuum* &c., at less than two miles distant (viz: *castris*, from the camp).—3. *Prælio supersedere*, to defer a battle.—4. *Solicitationibus periclitabatur*, trial was made in skirmishes.—5. *Ex utrâque parte*, &c., had a steep descent on both sides; literally, had descents of the side on both sides.—6. *Et frontem leniter fastigatus*, and in front gently sloping.—7. *Ad extrēmas fossas*, at the extremities, or ends of the ditches.—8. *Tormenta*, military engines, viz: the *Catapulta* and the *Balista*; See Index.—9. *Quod tantum multitudine potērat*, because they could do so much by their great number; were so powerful, or strong, in numbers.—10. *Si quâ opus*, &c. if it should be needful any where.

P. 97.—1. *Non magna palus erat*, there was a small morass.—2. *Expectabant*, continued waiting to see.—3. *Secundiore nostris*, being more favorable to our men.—4. *Demonstratum est*, has been

shown: See Ch. 5.—5. *Si minùs potuissent*, if they could not do this;—*ad gerendum bellum*, for carrying on the war; for prosecuting the war.—6. *Impeditos*, embarrassed.—7. *Quorum in fines*, into whose soever boundaries, or territory.—8. *Et domesticis copiis*, &c., and enjoy the abundance of provisions which they had at home.

P. 98.—1. *Hæc quoque ratio*, this consideration also.—2. *His persuaderi*,—*non potèrat*, these could not be persuaded; See Idioms, 68, 1.—3. *Nullo certo ordine*, in no fixed, determined, regular order. 4. *Cùm sibi quisque*, &c.:—Since each one sought to be foremost on the route.—5. *Insidias veritus*, fearing a stratagem, an ambuscade,—*qui moraretur*, that they might delay; in order to delay.—6. *Cùm (illi) ab extremo*, &c., when those in the rear, to which they had come.—7. *Tantam multitudinem, quantum*, &c., as great a number as the length of the day allowed.

P. 99.—1. *Vacuum ab defensoribus*, empty, unprotected by defenders.—2. *Vineas aggere*, to move forward the vineæ; See Index.—3. *Aggere jacto*, a mound being thrown up; See Index.—4. *Turribusque constitutis*, and towers being erected on it; See Index, *Turris*.—5. *Potentibus Remis*, the Remi requesting it; at the request of the Remi.—6. *Impetrant*, they obtain it; viz: that they should be preserved.—7. *Majores natu*, greater by birth, i. e. older, more advanced in age.—8. *Passis manibus*, with extended hands.—9. *Facit verba*; literally, makes words, i. e. speaks,—present tense for the past; § 44, I. 3:—The pupil may here note the difference between *facere verba*, and *dare verba*,—the first means “to make a speech;” the last, “to put off with words,” i. e. “to deceive.” 10. *In fide*, &c., under the protection, and in the friendship of, &c., i. e. had always been protected and befriended by.

P. 100.—1. *Non solum Bellovacos*, &c., that not only the Bellovaci themselves, but also the Ædui for them, entreated that he would use.—2. *Cùm quæreret*, when he enquired; on enquiry.—3. *Nihil vini*, no wine.—4. *Increpitare*, &c., that they inveighed against and accused.—5. *Confirmare*, asserted, declared; were determined, it was their fixed resolution.—6. *Conditionem*, offer, proposal.—7. *Expectare*, were expecting, were waiting.—8. *Expectari*, were expected, were waited for.

P. 101.—1. Arrange: *Conjecisse, mulières (et homines) qui viderentur inutiles*, &c.—2. *Eorum dierum*, &c., the custom of those days in respect of the march:—*Exercitus* is governed by *itinèris*.—3. *Neque esse quicquam*, &c., literally, and that when the first legion

had come into the camp, &c.,—to attack this legion under its baggage would be a matter of no great difficulty; *i. e.* there would be no great difficulty in attacking, &c.—4. *Quâ (legionē) pulsâ, reliquâ (legiones).*—5. *Ei rei*, to this subject, *viz.* the training of cavalry.—6. *Valent (efficere).*—7. *Incisus atque inflexis*, being cut in, and bent over.—8. *Crebris in latitudinem*, &c., numerous branches, and briars, and thorns, intervening in a lateral direction:—The young trees being gashed but not separated from the root, still continued to grow, and when bent over, their branches stood out in a lateral direction; the interstices were filled with briars and thorns, so that the whole formed a strong and impervious barrier.—9. *Loci—quem locum*, of the place which.

P. 102.—1. *Infimâ (parte) apertus*, &c., open, clear at the bottom, woody towards the top.—2. *Secundum flumen*, along the river,—*Stationes equitum*, troops of horse on guard.—3. *Aliter se habebat ac*, literally, had itself otherwise than; *i. e.* was different from what.—4. *Expeditas*, free from all encumbrance, *i. e.* without the load of baggage which the soldier was accustomed to carry, generally amounting in all to sixty pounds besides his arms.—5. *Identidem*, from time to time.—6. *Quâm quem ad finem*. *i. e.* *ad finem ad quem*, to the limit to which; as far as.—7. *Quod tempus*, &c., which had been agreed upon as the time of joining battle.—8. *In manibus*, close at hand.—9. *Adverso colle*, up the hill, *viz.* the hill opposite that on which they had stood.

P. 103.—1. *Vexillum proponendum*, the standard had to be displayed.—2. (II) *qui processerant paullo longius causâ petendâ aggeris*, (erant) *arcessendi*, those, who had gone to a greater distance, in order to fetch materials for the rampart were to be recalled.—3. *Successus et incursus*, the near approach and onset.—4. *Erant subsidio*, were of advantage.—5. *Singulisque legionibus*, and from their respective legions,—*singulos legatos*, every lieutenant.—6. *Nihil*, equivalent to *non* or *nullum*;—the construction is *quod ad nihil*, did not now at all wait for any order from Cæsar.—7. *Per se*, of themselves, of their own accord.—8. *Videbantur (illis)*, seemed to them proper; they thought best.—9. *Quam in partem*, into whatever part.—10. *Ne perturbarentur animo*, nor be agitated in their minds.—11. *Exiguitas*, the shortness.

P. 104.—1. *Dejectus*, declivity.—2. *Necessitas*, urgency.—3. *Prospectus impediretur*, and the view in front was obstructed.—*Neque certum*, neither with certainty; § 98, Obs. 10.—4. *In tantâ iniquitate rerum*, in such an unequal situation of affairs.—5. *In cunctis*

trā pars acie, on the left part of the line; (*acie*) an old form of the genitive for *aciei*; § 17, Exc. If *acie* be regarded as the ablative, it will then be rendered "in the line on the left part."—6. *Exanimātes*, out of breath, panting,—*confectos*, spent, exhausted.—7. *Nam his ea pars obvenerat*, that party had fallen to their lot; had been accidentally opposed to them.—8. *In fugam dederunt*, put to flight.—9. *Diversæ legiones*, other legions, different from those mentioned before.—10. *At tum*, but at this time.—11. *Summum locum castrorum*, literally, the top of the place of the camp, i. e. the summit on which the camp stood.—12. *Levisque armaturæ pedites*, foot soldiers of the light armor; the light armed infantry.—13. *Quos pulsos (esse)*, who had been routed.—14. *Adversis hostibus occurrēbant*, met the enemy in front, face to face.

P. 105.—1. *Calōnes*, the soldiers' servants.—2. *Decumānā portā*, the decuman or rear gate of the Roman camp:—So called because the tenth cohorts were situated there.—3. *Versāri*, were actively engaged.—4. *Mandābant sese præcipites fugæ*, committed themselves headlong to flight.—5. *Diversos dissipatosque*, scattered in every direction.—6. *Urgēri*, were overpowered.—7. *Primopilo*; See Index, *Primopilus*.—8. *Confecto*, i. e. *ita confecto ut*.—9. *A fronte*, in front.—10. *Subeuntes*, advancing.

P. 106.—1. *Signa inferre*, to carry forward the standards; i. e. to advance,—*laxāre manipulos*, to extend the maniples.—2. *Cujus adventu*, by his arrival; 38.—3. *Pro se quisque*, they, each one for himself; i. e. to the best of his ability.—4. *Legiones sese conjungerent et inferrent conversa signa*, that the legions (viz: the 7th and 12th, should unite and advance with the standard turned two ways; i. e. with double front.—5. *Ne aversi*, that when turned away.—6. *Versaretur*, were.—7. *Nihil ad celeritatem*, &c.; Arrange: *fecerunt nihil reliqui esse sibi*, they caused that nothing remaining was to them; they did all they could as to speed; they made all the haste they could.—8. *Omnibus in locis*, &c., in every quarter of the fight they thrust themselves before the legionary soldiers; i. e. they strove to surpass them in valor.—9. *Præstitērunt*, displayed.

P. 107.—1. *Qui superessent*, those who survived.—2. *Uti ex tumulo*, as if from an eminence.—3. *Redegit*, had rendered.—4. *Prope ad interneciōnem*, almost to extermination.—5. *Æstuaris*, &c., the low grounds and marshes.—6. *Nihil (esse) impeditum*, that nothing was a hindrance.—7. *Quos Cæsar*, &c., Cæsar, that he might appear to have exercised mercy towards the unfortunate and suppliants, preserved them, &c.. (39).—8. *Altissimas rupes despece-*

tusque, very steep rocks and commanding views of the country below.—9. *Non amplius* (quàm ad mensuram) *ducentòrum pedum*.

P. 108.—1. *Iis impedimentis*, to that baggage.—2. *Cùm* (hi) *aliàs inferrent bellum* (finitimis), *aliàs defendèrent* (bellum) *illatum* (sibi a finitimis), when they at one time made war on their neighbors, at another time resisted the war made on themselves by their neighbors; when, at one time they acted on the offensive, at another time, on the defensive.—3. *Duodècim pedum*, of twelve feet.—4. *Vineis*; See Index.—5. *Quò*, for what purpose?—6. *Præ*, in comparison of.—7. *Movèri et appropinquàre*, moving and approaching; See Idioms, 89, 1.—8. *Ad hunc modum*, after this manner.—9. *Tantæ altitudinis*, of so great height.—10. *Et ex propinquitàte*, &c., and fight close at hand.—11. *Unum petère ac deprecàri*, that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing (supply *eum*) from him.

P. 109.—1. *Sibi præstàre*, that it was better for them;—*in eum casum*, to that state.—2. *Priùsquàm aries*, &c., before the battering ram should touch their wall; See Index, *Aries*.—3. *In Nervii*, in the case of the Nervii.—4. *Muri aggerisque*, of the wall (of the town) and the agger of the Roman camp; See Index, *Agger*.—5. *Sub vespèrum*, towards evening.—6. *Tertià vigilià*; See Appendix I.—7. *Ignibus*, by signal fires.

P. 110.—1. *Ita acriter ut*, &c., as fiercely as it ought to have been fought; See Idioms, 88, 7.—2. *Ad* (used adverbially) about.—3. *Sectionem*, booty:—So called, because divided into small sections or portions, to be sold.—4. *Capitum numèrus millium*, &c. the number of fifty-three thousand souls.—5. *Oceànum*, the Atlantic.—6. *Certior factus est*, he was informed.—7. *Dies quindècim supplicatio decreta est*, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed.

NOTES ON BOOK III.

PAGE 111.—1. *Quo* (itinère), by which (road).—2. *Cum magnis portoriis*, with heavy duties, or imposts:—The duty levied on goods in harbor, (*in portu*) was called *portorium*. This term was afterwards extended, as here, to denote the duty paid for liberty to carry goods through a particular country, or the tax paid at bridges.—3. *Hic vicus*, this village.—4. *Eum locum*, this part, i. e. the part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.

P. 112.—1. *Neque eam plentestmam*, and that not very full. See Index, *Legio*.—2. *Singillatim*, individually.—3. *Decurrerent*, should run down.—4. *Ne primum quidem posse*, &c., they thought that that legion could not withstand even the first onset:—*Wit posse* supply *illam legiōnem*.—5. *Accedebat*, to this was added; another reason was.—6. *Sibi persuasum habebat*, literally, they had persuaded unto themselves; they were firmly persuaded.—7. *Neque satis provtsum esset*, nor had it been sufficiently provided; nor had sufficient supply been provided.—8. *Nihil de bellum timendum*, he had thought that nothing was to be feared, i. e. that he had nothing to fear concerning the war.—9. *Neque subsidio ventri*, literally, neither could it be come to them with assistance, i. e. neither could assistance come to them.—10. *Placuit majōri parti*, it pleased the greater part; it was the opinion of the majority.

P. 113.—1. *Collocandis atque administrandis* (the dative of the end or design,) for arranging and executing.—2. *Gastæque*, and javelins (the Gallic iron javelin).—3. *Intēgris virtibus*, with fresh strength.—4. *Frustra*, in vain, without effect.—5. *Sed hæc* (nostri) *superari*, but in this they (our men) were overcome, were inferior.—6. *Paucitatem*, their fewness.—7. *Non modo*, &c., an opportunity was not given not only to the wearied.—8. *Perducta ad extrēmum casum*, brought to an extreme case, to the last extremity.—9. *Quem confectum* (esse), &c., who, we have said, was worn out; (See Idioms; 96, 2, & 94, 1, 1).—10. *Convocatīs centurionibus celeriter* (per eos) *mīlites*, &c. the centurions being called together, he quickly, through them, directs the soldiers;—*excipērent*, to take up.—11. *Omnibus portis*, from all the gates of the camp:—Of these there were four; See Index, *Castra*.

P. 114.—1. *Ex* (numēro) *homīnum amplius quān millibus triginta*, literally, from a number of men more than thirty thousand, i. e. from more than thirty thousand men.—2. (Parte) *plus tertiā parte*, &c. literally, a part more than the third part being slain.—3. *Fusis* &c., being routed, and stripped of their arms:—Here *exutis* agrees with *copiis*, and governs *armis* in the ablative, by § 126, R. V.—4. *Alio*,—*alius*, &c., with one view,—they had encountered things very different.—5. *Cæsar existimāret, de omnibus causis*, Cæsar supposed, from all reasons; Cæsar had every reason to suppose.—6. (Ad) *mare Ocednum*, to the Atlantic Ocean.—7. *Prefectos tribunosque militum*; See Index, *Legio*.

P. 115.—1. *Scientiā atque usu*, knowledge and experience.—2. *In magno impētia maris atque aperto*, in the great and open vio-

face, force, swell (or surge) of the sea.—3. *Ipsi*, (Venēti,) they themselves, (the Veneti).—4. *Consueverunt uti*, are accustomed to use; use to trade in; or usually trade in.—5. *Vectigāles*, tributary.—6. *Ut consilia Gallorum*, since the designs (resolves) of the Gauls.—7. *Omnes*; Accusative plural for *omnes*, the subject of *laturos* (esse).—8. *Suos*, his (Crassus') countrymen; § 28, Exc.;—*sibi*, to them, (the Veneti) the main subject of discourse.—9. *Naves longas*, ships of war,—so called from their being much longer than the ships of burden (*naves onerariae*).—10. *Remiges*, rowers,—*institui*, to be raised.—11. *Pro magnitudine*, in proportion to the greatness.—12. *Hoc faciunt*, this they do.—13. *Pedestria itinera*, roads, or approaches by foot; i. e. by land.

P. 116.—1. *Navigatōnem*, access by sea.—2. *Neque nostros*, &c., and they were confident that our army could not, &c. *Neque* here is copulative, and means “and not.”—3. *Opinōnem*, the expectation.—4. *Longē aliam atque*, &c., that the navigation was far other in a confined or inland sea (such as the Mediterranean,) than, &c.—5. *Hæ erant difficultates*, such were the difficulties, &c.—6. *Injuriae retentorum equitum* (the genitive passive; § 106, Obs. 1.)—7. *Rebellio*, a renewal of hostilities,—*defectio*, a revolt, a refusal of obedience.—8. *Ne arbitrentur*, in order that they might not think; § 140, 1, 2d.—9. *Idem* (facere) *sibi licere*, that to do the same thing would be permitted to them.—10. *Novis rebus studere*, are fond of changes.—11. *Naturā libertati studere*, are naturally fond of liberty.—12. *Conditionem servitutis*, a state of slavery.

P. 117.—1. *Auxiliō* (sibi) &c., who were said to have been sent for by the Belgæ as aid to themselves.—2. *Qui eam manum*, &c., that he should take care that that body should be kept apart.—3. *Situs*, the situations.—4. *In extremis lingulis*, on the extreme points or tongues of land.—5. *Cum ex alto*, &c., when the tide had flowed in from the deep; i. e. when it was full tide, or high water.—6. *Minuente* (sese) *æstu*, the tide ebbing, or when the tide ebbs.—7. *Naves in vadis*, &c., the ships aground on the shallow places would be dashed with the waves.—8. (In) *utrâque re*, in either case.—9. *Aggère ac molibus*, by a mound and dams.—10. *Appulso*, being brought up.—11. *Magnis æstibus*, &c., on account of the great tides, and there being few or almost no harbors.—12. *Factæ armatæque erant*, were built and equipped.—13. *Aliquanto planiores*, considerably flatter.

P. 118.—1. *Excipere*, withstand, or admit of.—2. *Ad quamvis vim*, for enduring any violence and shock.—3. *Peditibus*, &c.,

of planks a foot in breadth.—4. *Digitī pollicis crassitudine*, of the thickness of one's thumb; *i. e.* an inch thick.—5. *Pelles pro velis*, &c., for sails there were to them (*i. e.* they had) raw hides and thin dressed skins;—*lini*, of linen, of canvass.—6. *Regi*, could be managed.—7. *Cum his navibus*, &c., the meeting of our fleet with these vessels was of such a nature, that the former had the advantage in swiftness only, and the sweep of the oars.—8. *Reliqua*, other things.—9. *Neque enim his*, &c. for our ships could not hurt them with the beak.—10. *Copulis*, grappling irons.—11. *Savire*, to blow hard.—12. *Casus*, the chances or dangers.—13. *Neque his noceri posse*, and that they could not be hurt.—14. *Paratissimæ atque*, &c., in the best order, and equipped in the best manner, with every kind of tackling.

P. 119.—1. *Bruto*, &c., nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus.—2. *Aut quam rationem*, &c., or what mode of fighting they would adopt.—3. *Ut*, so that.—4. *Gravius acciderent*, fell with greater force.—5. *Falces præcûtæ*, hooks with sharpened edges towards the points.—6. *Muralium*, mural hooks; *i. e.* hooks used to pull down the walls in a siege; or their defenders.—7. *Comprehensi adductique*, were grappled and pulled towards us.—8. *Latere posset*, could escape notice; could pass unnoticed, or unobserved.—9. *Cum singulas*, &c., when two or three of our ships had surrounded each one of the enemy's.—10. *Transcendere in naves hostium*, to climb over into the ships of the enemy; to board the enemy's ships.—11. *Quò ventus ferebat* (naves), where, to which the wind carried them (*the ships*); *Singulas nostri*: &c., our men having pursued, took them one by one.

P. 120.—1. *Graviôris ætâtis*, of heavier, *i. e.* of more advanced age.—2. *In quos*, &c., on these Cæsar resolved to inflict severer punishment, on this account that, &c.—3. *Vendidit reliquos sub coronâ*, he sold the rest under the crown; *i. e.* he sold the rest for slaves:—Prisoners taken in war wore a chaplet (*coronâ*) on their heads when exposed to public sale. At sales by auction a spear was set up; hence, *vendere sub hastâ*, to sell by auction.—4. *Atque his paucis diebus*, and within these few days.—5. *Perditorum hominum*, of ruined men; *i. e.* men of desperate fortunes.—6. *Nonnihil carparètur*, was in some degree carped at, railed at:—*Nihil* and *nonnihil* in such sentences may be considered as accusatives governed by *quod ad*; § 128, Exc.

P. 121.—1. *Eo absente qui tenèbat summam imperiî*, he being absent who held the supreme command; in the absence of the commander in chief.—2. *Hâc confirmatâ opiniône timôris*, (the enemy's)

opinion of his fear being confirmed.—3. *Propōnit*, he lays before them, tells them of.—4. *Neque longius abesse*, &c.; and that it was not farther off, but that on the next night; i. e. at no greater distance of time than the next night.—5. *Ad castra iri oportere*, literally, that it ought to be gone to the camp; See Idioms, 67.—6. *Perfūga confirmatio*, the assertion of the deserter.—7. *Quibus*, with which, i. e. that with these.—8. *Quām minimum spatii*, as little space of time as possible.—9. *Exanimāti*, out of breath.

P. 122.—1. *Intēgris viribus*, with strength still fresh.—2. *Sabīnus* (factus est certior) *de*, &c.—3. *Minimē resistens*, by no means firm.—4. *Ex tertiā parte*, as the third part,—an unusual expression, and probably the text is incorrect.—5. *Non mediocrem*, &c., that more than ordinary diligence must be used by him.—6. *Quo plurimum valēbant*, in which they were very powerful.

P. 123.—1. *Cujus rei*, &c., in which art the Aquitani are by far the most expert.—2. *Ærariæ sectūra* copper mines.—3. *Nihil his rebus profici posse*, that they could be profited nothing by these things.—4. *Quorum hæc est conditio*, the condition of whom (i. e. of whose association) is this.—5. *Sibi mortem consciscant*, or make away with themselves.—6. *Barbāri*, the barbarians (referring to the Vocātes and Tarusātes).—7. *Et naturā loci et manu*, both by natural situation and by art.

P. 124.—1. *Citeriōris Hispaniæ*; See Index.—2. *Loca capere*, to select proper ground.—3. *Facilē*, easily; i. e. with safety.—4. *In dies*, every day; literally, from day to day.—5. *Hæc re delātā ad consilium*, this matter or plan being laid before a council (of war).—6. *Sentire idem*, thought the same thing; were of the same opinion, viz: with himself.—7. *Duplici acie*, a double line:—The Romans usually drew up their army in three lines; on the present occasion only two were formed, probably on account of their being inferior in number to the enemy.—8. *Auxiliis*, &c., the auxiliaries being placed in the centre,—their usual place was on the wings.—9. *Cum suā cunctatiōe*, &c., when the enemy had by their own delay, and the opinion which was now entertained of their cowardice, made our soldiers the more eager for battle.

P. 125.—1. *Constanter ac non timiddē*, steadily and boldly.—2. *Decumānā portā*, at the decuman, or rear gate; See Index, *Castra*.—3. *Intrita*, not worn out, not fatigued.—4. *Longiōre itinēre*, by a longer route than usual.—5. *Possēt planē vidēri ab iis*, it could be distinctly seen by them.—6. *Intendērunt*, strove.

P. 126.—1. *Multâ nocte*, late at night,—or *multâ nocte actâ*, much of the night being spent.—2. *Supererant*, (supply *soli*, evidently implied,—hence the subjunctive following *qui*; § 141, R. V.) alone remained.—3. *Qui longè aliâ ratione ac*, &c., and they resolved to prosecute the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.—4. *Continentesque silvas*, &c., and because they had extensive, uninterrupted forests:—Before *continentes* supply *quod*. 5. *Longius*, too far.—6. *Inermibus*, &c., on the soldiers unarmed.—7. *Materiam*, timber.

P. 127.—1. *Conversam*, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. *Confecto*, being cleared.—3. *Extrema* &c. the last of the baggage.—4. *Sub pellibus*, literally, under skins; i. e. in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. *Quæ proximè*, &c., which had made war upon him last.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 128.—1. *Eâ hieme*, &c., the winter which followed; the next or following winter.—2. *Cneio Pompeio*, &c.:—Before Christ 55, A. U. C. 699.—3. *Quo Rhenus*, &c. where the Rhine flows into it; near the mouth of the Rhine.—4. *Qui domi manserint*, since or because they remain at home.—5. *Nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur*, nor are the art and practice of war disused, discontinued, forgotten.—6. *Maximam partem*, for the most part; See Ref.—7. *Nullo officio*, &c., they are trained by no duty or discipline.

P. 129.—1. *Ut quæ bello cepèrint*; Arrange: *ut habeant* (eos) *quibus vendant* (ea) *quæ cepèrint bello*.—2. *Jumentis importâtis*, imported cattle.—3. *Quotidianâ exercitatione hæc prava atque deformis* (jumenta) *quæ sunt nata apud eos, ut* (hæc jumenta) *sint summi laboris*:—*Ut*, &c., that they, (these beasts) are capable of the greatest labor, i. e. of enduring the greatest labor.—4. *Audent adire ad quemvis numerum*, they dare to go to any number; they have courage to advance against, to attack, any number.—5. *Publicè*, to the nation.—6. *Significâri*, that proof is given.—7. *Vacâre*, to be empty, desolate uninhabited.—8. *Ad alteram partem*, on the other side.—9. *Ut est captus Germanorum*, as the state of the Germans is; i. e.—

considering the condition of the Germans.—10. *Amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis*, the extent and populousness of their state (viz the Ubii).

P. 130.—1. *In eadem causâ*, in a similar case.—2. (In regiones) *quas regiones*, to the regions which.—3. *Clam*, privately, unobserved.—4. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—5. *Reliquam partem hiemis*, the remaining part of the winter; the rest of the winter;—*aluerunt*, maintained, supported.—6. *Infirmiâtem*, the fickleness.—7. *Nihil his committendum (esse)*, that nothing should be trusted to them.—8. *Est autem hoc*, &c., for this belongs to Gallic custom; this is one of the customs of the Gauls.

P. 131.—1. *De summis rebus*, &c., they enter into designs, concert measures, respecting the most important affairs.—2. *E vestigio*, literally, out of the footstep; i. e. speedily, instantly.—3. *Cum incertis rumoribus serviant*, since they are mere slaves to uncertain rumors.—4. *Ne graviôri bello occurreret*, that he might not meet with a more formidable war (viz: than he expected).—5. *Facta (esse)*, had been done already.—6. *Dissimulanda sibi*, should be concealed by him.—7. *Resistere (iis)*, to resist them and not to sue for peace.—8. *Suam gratiam*, their (the Germans') favor.—*Sibi*, to them, the Germans.—9. *Eos (agros) quos*, those lands which; i. e. such lands as; See Ref.—10. *Concedere*, yielded, acknowledged themselves inferior to.—11. *In terris*, upon the earth.

P. 132.—1. Arrange: *Cæsar respondit ad hæc, quæ visum est (ei respondere)*.—2. *Exitus*, the conclusion.—3. *Verum*, just, reasonable, proper, right:—*Verus* has this sense chiefly when joined to the verb *esse*; as *verum est*, it is proper.—4. *Neque ullos in Galliâ*, &c., nor were there any lands vacant in Gaul.—5. *Et, parte*, &c.:—This is the reading of the Bipont edition. It is adopted by Anthon, and is manifestly better than the common text.—6. *In plures diffuit partes*, divides into several branches.—7. *Multis capitibus*, by many heads, or mouths.

P. 133.—1. *Sibi jurejurando*, &c. should give them security by an oath.—2. *Eodem illo pertinere*, tended to the same end:—*Eodem* and *illo*, here used adverbially, are properly old forms of the dative from *idem* and *ille*.—3. *Sustinere*, should stand their ground.

P. 134.—1. *Amplissimo genere natus*, descended from a very illustrious family.—2. *Intercluso*, intercepted.—3. *Se obtulit*, presented himself; rushed against.—4. *Summæ dementiæ esse judicabat*, he judged it to be the greatest folly; literally, to belong to, or to be

the part of the greatest folly.—5. *Ne quem diem*, &c., not to let a day pass without a battle.—6. *Omnibus principibus*, &c., all their leading men and elders being brought along; literally, being taken unto them.—7. *Sui purgandi*, for the sake of clearing, excusing themselves.—8. *Contra atque*, otherwise than; contrary to what had been said.—9. *Quos sibi Cæsar*, &c., Cæsar rejoicing that these had been cast in his way.

P. 135.—1. *Perturbantur*, &c., are thrown into confusion, so that they were at a loss whether it would be best, &c.—2. *Significaretur*, was discovered, was evident.—3. *Pristini diei*, of the day before;—for *pridie*.—4. *Clamóre*, a shout, or noise, (either of the Roman cavalry attacking those with whom they came up in the rear,—or the wailing of those attacked).—5. *Ad confluentem*, at the confluence.—6. *Reliquâ fugâ desperatâ*, despairing of making good their flight any farther.—7. *Ex tanti belli timóre*, &c., from the alarm of so great a war, since the number of the enemy had been about four hundred and thirty thousand:—Before *capitum*, supply *ad numerum*.—8. *Discedendi potestatem*, the liberty of departing.

P. 136.—1. *Suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit*, wished they should be alarmed for their own possessions.—2. *Et posse et audere*, had both the power and the courage.—3. *Accessit etiam*, it was added also; i. e. another reason was.—4. *Cur sui quicquam*, &c., why should he (Cæsar) demand that any command or authority should belong to him beyond the Rhine?—5. *Occupationibus reipublicæ*, by the business of the republic.—6. *Neque Suxæ neque Populi Romani*, and thought that it became neither his own dignity nor that of the Roman people.—7. *Proponebatur*, was placed before him, was manifest.

P. 139.—1. *Instituit*, &c., he determined on this plan of a bridge.—2. He joined together at the distance of two feet, *tigna bina*, beams, or piles, two by two, (or in pairs,) sharpened a little at the lower end, and measured, (or proportioned) to the depth of the river.—3. *Hæc cum machinationibus*, &c., when he had fastened these, being let down into the river by machines, and had driven them down with rammers (*fistucis*).—4. *Non subitæ*, &c., not perpendicularly after the manner of a stake, but bending forward and sloping (downward, or down the stream).—5. *Iis item contraria*, &c., likewise opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet down the river, (*ab inferiøre parte fluminis*,) he placed two others joined in the same manner, but turned (up the stream) against the force and current of the river.—6. *Hæc utraque insuper*, &c., both these

(viz: the pair above and the pair below,) were kept apart (or from falling towards each other,) by beams let in from above, two feet thick, being as much as the joining of these piles was apart, (i. e. as the piles, joined by the braces, were apart,)—each having two braces, one on each side near the end.—7. *Quibus disclusis*, &c., these (pairs) being kept apart, and (at the same time,) bound together in the contrary direction.—8. *Ea rerum natura*, such the nature of the materials.—9. *Quo major vis*, &c., literally, by how much a greater force of water urged itself on; i. e. that the more the force of the current pressed on, the more closely were they held bound together.—10. *Hæc* (tigna, i. e. beams of two feet square reaching from one pair of piles to the other below it,) *directa materie*, &c., were fastened together with timbers laid lengthwise (*directa*) of the bridge; i. e. from beam to beam.—11. *Longuriis*, &c., and covered over with long poles and hurdles.—12. *Ac nihilo secius*, &c., and besides all this, piles were driven in obliquely at the lower part of the stream.—13. *Pro pariete*, for a buttress, or support.—14. *Et aliæ item*, and likewise others.—15. *Dejiciendi operis* (causâ), for the sake of throwing down (destroying) the work,—the bridge.—16. (Ex) *Quibus materia*, &c., after the days in which, or, after that the materials had been begun to be brought together:—*Quibus*, i. e. *ex diebus quibus*, is here used instead of the more common expression, *postquam*, or *ex* (tempore) *quo*;—See also B. III. Chap. 23d. and Gr. § 131, Obs. 3d.—17. *Ad utramque partem*, at each end.

P. 140.—1. *Iis hortantibus*, by the advice of those.—2. *In solitudinem ac silvas abdidérant*, had gone into the deserts and forests to conceal themselves;—This rendering gives the force of the accusative after *in*, which is evidently a better reading than *in solitudine*, &c., which excludes the idea of going to;—So also, *in silvas deponeret*, below.—3. *Hunc esse delectum*, that this was selected as nearly the middle, or centre.—4. *Ulcisceretur*, that he might punish.—5. *Satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum*, that enough had been done, both for his honor and for utility, (*profectum* is from *proficio*, and means the same as *perfectum*).—6. *Matûræ*, early.—7. *Inde*, thence, i. e. from Britain.

P. 141.—1. *Temèrè*, rashly, without good reason.—2. *Neque iis ipsis quicquam notum est*, nor is anything known even by them.—3. *Quem usum belli*, &c., what experience they had in war, or what customs they followed.—4. *In eâ sententiâ*, in that mind, resolution.—5. *Horteturque*, and that he should urge them.—6. *Fidem sequantur*,

to embrace the alliance; literally, should follow the faith.—7. *Quantum ei facultatis*, &c., as far as opportunity could be given; literally, with so much of opportunity as, &c.; See Idioms, 46, 1.—8. *Qui since ha*.

P. 142.—1. *De superioris*, &c., for their past conduct.—2. *Has tantularum*, &c., these engagements in such trifling affairs.—3. (Tot) *navibus oneratis*, so many ships of burden, &c.,—quot, as; See Index, *Naves*.—4. *Tertiâ fere vigiliâ*, near the third watch, or midnight.—5. *Solvit* (naves), looses his ships, sets sail.—6. *Conscendere naves*, to go on board; to embark.—7. *Horâ quartâ*, the fourth hour, i. e. 10 o'clock, A. M.; See Gr. App. I.—8. *Expositas*, drawn out, displayed.

P. 143.—1. *Adeo angustis*, so steep.—2. *Ad egrediendum*, for disembarking, for landing.—3. *Ad nonam horam*, till the ninth hour, i. e. 3 o'clock P. M.—4. *Monuitque*, &c., and warned them that all things should be done at a beck, and in a moment, as the principles, &c.—5. *Et essedariis*, and the essedarii, i. e. those who fought from the essëdum, or two wheeled chariot.—6. *Prohibebant*, attempted to hinder; See § 44. II. 2.—7. *Militibus—desiliendum*, &c., the soldiers had to leap down from the ships.—8. *Omnibus membris expediti*, having the free use of all their limbs.—9. *Inuēfactos*, accustomed to such exercise.—10. *Quarum et species*, both the appearance of which.

P. 144.—1. *Remis incitari*, to be pushed on, rowed briskly forward, with the oars.—2. *Tormentis*, engines (for throwing heavy darts or stones, namely, the balista and catapulta).—3. *Quæ res*, this expedient.—4. *Ac paulum modò*, &c. and retreated only a little, a very little.—5. *Qui* (he), who.—6. *Ea res*, that thing (viz: which he was about to do).—7. *Magnâ voce*, with a loud voice.—8. *Ex navi se projecit*, he threw himself out of the ship, overboard.—9. *Singulâres*, one by one, one after another.—10. *Quod cum animûm advertisset*, i. e. *Cum vertisset animûm ad quod*.—11. *Scaphas longarum navium*, the boats belonging to the vessels of war.—12. *Speculatoria navigia*, spy vessels.

P. 145.—1. *Cursum tenere*, hold on their course;—*atque insulam capere*, and reach the island.—2. *Suprà*, viz: Ch. 21.—3. *Modo oratoris*, in the character of an ambassador.—4. *Culpam contulerunt*, laid the blame.—5. *In continentem*, to the continent, i. e. to Gaul.—6. *Imprudentiæ*, their indiscretion.—7. *Arcessitam*, having been sent for.—8. *Post diem quartum*, after the fourth day, i. e.,

on the fourth day after.—9. *Suprà*; See Ch. 23.—*sustulèrant*, had taken on board.—10. *Quæ cùm appropinquàrent*, and when they were drawing near.—11. *Quæ est propius solis occàsus*, which is more to the west.—12. *Quæ*, these.—13. *Necessariò adversà nocte in altum provecta*, from necessity, being carried out to sea in an unfavorable, stormy, night.

P. 146.—1. (*Dies qui dies*, a day which (viz: the day of the full moon.—2. *Nostris id incognitum erat*, to our men this (viz: the great rising of the tide,) was unknown:—The phenomena of the tides were but little known to the Romans, as the tides in the Mediterranean with which they were most familiar, are scarcely observable.—3. *Quæ deligatæ erant ad anchòras*, which had been tied to the anchors; which had been riding at anchor.—4. *Afflictabat*, dashed violently against; drove from their moorings.—5. *Quòd omnibus constabat*, because it was evident to all.—6. *His in locis*, in these places (viz: in Britain).—7. *Rem producere*, to prolong the war.—8. *Ex eventu navium*, from what happened to, from the disaster of, the ships (the genitive passive).—9. *Et ex eo quòd*, &c., and from this, because they had intermitted; i. e. and from their having intermitted.

P. 147.—1. *Ad omnes casus*, for every emergency; against all contingencies.—2. *Reliquis ut navigàri*, that it could be navigated with the rest.—3. *Dum ea geruntur*, whilst these things are carrying on, doing; during these transactions.—4. *In statione*, on guard.—5. *Quàm consuetùdo ferret*, than custom brought; i. e. than was usual.—6. *In stationibus*, on guard.—7. *In stationem succedere*, to succeed on guard.—8. *Et, confertâ legiòne, tela*, &c., and that the legion being crowded together, weapons were hurled upon it from all quarters.—9. *Quòd*, because, inasmuch as.—10. *Incertis ordinibus*, on account of not knowing their ranks, (They had been scattered about, reaping, and being attacked while thus employed, they could not find their ranks).—11. *Genus hoc est*, &c., the manner of fighting from the chariots was this.—12. *Ipsò terròre equòrum*, by the very terror occasioned to the horses (the genitive passive); and the noise, *rotàrum*, of the wheels (the genitive active); § 106, Obs. 1.

P. 148.—1. *Insinuavèrint*, when they have wrought themselves in.—2. *Aurigæ*, the charioteers, or drivers:—Each chariot contained a driver called *auriga*, and one who fought, called *essedarius*.—3. *Atque ita curru se collocant*, and place themselves with the chariot in such a situation.—4. *Præstant mobilitatem equitum*, &c.; they perform, unite the swiftness of cavalry and the steadiness

of infantry.—5. *Ac efficiunt tantum*, and they acquire such dexterity.—6. *Inciatōs equos sustinere*, to rein in their horses when at full speed.—7. *Et brevi* (tempore), and in a moment.—8. *Continuos plures dies*, many days in succession.—9. *Suis* (civibus), to their own countrymen.—10. *Quanta facultas*, &c., how favorable an opportunity was presented of getting booty, and of regaining their independence forever.

P. 149.—1. *Antè dictum est*, viz: Ch. 21, & 27.—2. *Omnibus afflictis incensisque longè latèque*, having destroyed and burned every thing far and wide; See Idioms, 104, 1.—3. *Die æquinocitii*, the equinox.—4. *Hîemi navigationem subjiciendam*, that his voyage ought to be exposed to a storm (viz: the equinoctial storm).—5. *Eosdem quos reliquæ portus capere*, to make the same harbor which the rest made.—6. *Quibus ex navibus*, &c., had been landed from these ships.—7. *Non ita magno*, with not so great. i. e. with no very great number.—8. *Si nollent*, if they did not wish.—9. *Orbe facto*, forming themselves into a circle; See above, Note 2.—10. *Vertērunt terga*, turned their backs; fled.

P. 150.—1. *In densissimas silvas abdidērant*, had gone into the thickest parts of the forests to hide themselves; See Note 2 page 140.

NOTES ON BOOK V.

P. 151.—1. *Lucio Domitio*, i. e. A. U. C , 700,; B. C. 54.—2. *Quam plurimas possent*, &c., that as many new ships as possible should be built, and old ones repaired.—3. *Ad celeritatem onerandi*, &c., for despatch of lading and drawing them on shore, he builds them a little lower than those which, &c.—4. *Nostro mari*, in our sea, viz: the Mediterranean.—5. *Actuarias*, light, easily driven; See Index, *Naves*.—6. *Adjuvat multum*, contributes much.—7. *Ad armandas*, for equipping.—8. *Omnibus rationibus*, in every proper way.

P. 152.—1. *Qui litem æstiment*, to estimate the damage (Idioms, 83, 2,) and fix the compensation.—2. *Conventibus*, the assizes.—3. *Instructas*, got ready finished.—4. *Neque multum abesse*, &c., nor was much wanting but that they could be launched in a few

days; *i. e.* there was so little to do that they could, &c.—5. *Transmissum*, &c., the passage across into Britain was the most convenient, being a passage of about thirty miles.—6. *Expeditis*, unincumbered with baggage.—7. *Alter*, the one (*viz.* Cingetorix).—8. *In silvam*, &c., having gone and concealed themselves in the forest of Arduenna; See Note 2, p. 240.

P. 153.—1. *Civilāti consulere*, take measures for the state, for the common good.—2. *Laberetur*, should fall off, revolt.—3. *Permissurum* (*esse*) would give up.—4. *Suam gratiam*, that his influence.—5. *Exarsit multo gravius hoc dolore*, he was much more exasperated at this affront.—6. *Non potuisse tenere cursum*, could not keep their course; could not proceed on their voyage.

P. 154.—1. *Antea dictum*; B. I. Ch. 3.—2. *Cupidum novarum rerum*, fond of changes, of insurrections, of a revolution in the state.—3. *Id factum*, this fact.—4. *Petere contendit*, endeavored to obtain,—*religionibus*, religious obligations.—5. *Non sine causâ fieri*, that it was not done without some secret motive; that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.—6. *Fidem reliquis interponere*, that he pledged his word to the rest.—7. *Quod esse ex usu*, &c., whatever they should understand to be for the interest of Gaul.—8. *Quòd tantum dignitatis*, because he had always shewn so much respect.—9. *Longius progredi*, was going too far.—10. *Prospiciendum*, that he ought to take care.

P. 155.—1. *Ne quid sibi*, &c. that he (Dumnorix) should not be able, have it in his power, to do any injury to him and the state.—2. *Corus*, the northwest wind.—3. (*Ut*) *cognosceret*, that he should find out.—4. *Omnium animis impeditis*, the minds of all being engaged.—5. *Hunc pro sano*, that he, as a man in his senses.—6. *Ille enim*, but, or nevertheless he.—7. *Consiliumque pro tempore*, &c., and that he might take measures, (form his plans,) according to time and circumstances.—8. *Pari numero equitum quem*, &c with a like number of cavalry which; *i. e.* with a number of cavalry equal to that which he left.—9. *Longius delatus æstu*, being carried down by the tide farther than usual.—10. *Secutus*, taking advantage of.

P. 156.—1. *Virtus*, the valor, *i. e.* the efforts, the exertions, 2. *Vectoriisque navigiis*, in transports and heavy laden vessels.—3. *Accessum est* (*ab illis*) *ad*, they (the Romans) reached, arrived at.—4. *Cum annotinis*, with the ships of the previous year.—5. *Veritus navibus*, fearing for the ships,—instead of *de navibus*.—6. *In littore molli atque aperto*, on a smooth and open shore.—

7. *Præclusi*, blocked up.—8. *Testudine factâ, et aggere, &c.*, a testudo being erected and a mound thrown up against their fortifications.

P. 157.—1. *Tripartitè*, in three divisions,—*mîlites*, the foot soldiers, the infantry.—2. *Superiøre nocte*, in the former night.—3. *Afflictas atque, &c.*—had been dashed against each other, and driven on shore.—4. *Subsistèrent*, could hold out.—5. *Ex eo concursu*, from that rencounter of the ships; from the ships running foul of one another.—6. *Incommòdum*, injury, damage.—7. *Coram*, openly, with his own eyes.—8. *Res*, a work.—9. *Subdûci*, to be drawn on shore.—10. *Summa imperii, &c.* the chief command and administration of the war.—11. *Superiøre tempore*, at a former period.

P. 158.—1. *Quos natos, &c.*, “who, they say it was handed down by tradition, were born on the island,”—an opinion prevalent among many ancient nations respecting themselves.—2. *Bello illâto*, the war having been waged, being over.—3. *Creberrima*, very thick, close together.—4. *Fere Gallicis consimilia*, almost like; i. e. closely resembling those of the Gauls.—5. *Taleis ferreis ad certum pondus, &c.*, pieces of iron tried by, i. e. of a certain weight.—6. *Plumbum album*, tin (literally, white lead).—7. *Copia*, the quantity.—8. *Materia*, wood, timber.—9. *Causâ animi voluptatisque*, for the sake of amusement and pleasure.—10. *Loca*, places, climate.—11. *Remissioribus*, less intense.—12. *Triquetra*, triangular.—13. *Ad Cantium*, in Kent:—from Land’s end to the eastern extremity of Kent, is about 344 British miles, or 356 Roman miles in a straight line. It would be much more to follow the irregularities of the coast.—14. *Ad Hispaniam*:—This statement is erroneous, as Spain lies to the south, not to the west of Britain.—15. *Dimidiò minor*, less by one half:—Great Britain is computed at 77,370 square miles,—Ireland at 30,370.—16. *Sed pari spatio transmissus*, but the passage across to Britain is the same distance as from Gaul.—17. *Mona*, the Isle of Man.—18. *Dies continuos, &c.*, that there is night for thirty successive days at the winter solstice, i. e. the 22d December:—This is not true in fact, unless the dark, cloudy, and foggy weather, at that season, is here improperly called “night.”—19. *Nisi certis ex aquâ, &c.* but we perceived, by accurate water measures, that the nights were shorter than on the continent.—The “water measure” is the *Clepsydra*, or water-clock,—an invention similar to the sand-glass.

P. 159.—1. *Septingentorum millium*, seven hundred miles:—The true length of the western coast is 590 British or 610 Roman

miles.—2. *Contra septentriones*, opposite the north.—This is not correct; the east is much nearer the truth.—3. *Octingenta millia passuum*, eight hundred miles:—This exceeds the true estimate 230 Roman miles.—4. *Humanissimi*, most civilized.—5. *Se vitro inficiunt*, stain themselves with woad.—6. *Capilloque sunt promisso*, and are with, i. e. they have, long hair.—7. *Deni et duodeni*, parties of ten and twelve,—*habent uxores communes inter se*.—8. *Quo primum virgo*, &c., by whom each female, when a virgin, was first married. 9. (Ita) *tamen ut*, in such a way however that.—10. *Submissis*, being sent to their aid,—*atque his*, and these.—11. *Constitissent*, had taken their ground.

P. 160.—1. *Cum*, since, or as; § 140, Obs. 3.—2. *Intellectum est* (a nobis) *nostros*, we perceived (Idioms 67,) that our men.—3. *Cedentes*, those giving way—4. *Cedèrent*, gave way, yielded.—5. *Pedibus dispari praelio*, on foot, in an unequal contest; i. e. with great advantage (against us).—6. *Conferti*, close, in a close body;—*vari*, scattered here and there—7. *Alios alii deinceps exciperent*, &c., and they continued one to relieve another in succession, and the vigorous and the fresh succeeded (took the place of) those fatigued.—8. *Lenius*, with less spirit.—9. *Ut non absisterent ab*, that they kept not far from, i. e. close to, &c.—10. *Neque post id tempus*, &c., nor after that time did the enemy ever engage us with all their forces; nor did the enemy, after that time, ever come to a general engagement with us.

P. 161.—1. *Acutis sudibus præfixis*, with sharp stakes fixed in front.—2. *Cum capite*, &c., when they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head alone; i. e. were up to the neck in the water.—3. *Ut supra*, &c.; Ch. 17.—4. *Dimissis amplioribus copiis*, the greater part of the forces being dismissed.—5. *Ex viâ excedebat*, withdrew from the road.—6. *Relinquebatur*, &c., it remained that Cæsar did not suffer;—*discèdi* (abequitibus) that the cavalry should go; Idioms, 67.—7. *Hostibus noceretur*, &c., that the enemy were injured by laying waste their lands and setting fire to their property, as far as the legionary soldiers could effect it in the midst of labor and on their march, i. e. on a laborious march.

P. 162.—1. *Atque mittat* (eum, i. e. Mandubratium,) *qui præsit*, &c., and send him (Mandubratius) into the state that he might rule over it, and hold the government.—2. *Ad numerum*, to the number,—*imperatum*, required,—*frumentaque*, and abundance of corn:—“Abundance” is expressed by the plural term, *frumenta*.—3. *Prohibitis*, being protected.—4. *Vocant oppidum*, call it a town

5. *Ad mare*, on the sea shore; Ch. 13.—6. *Adoriantur atque oppugnent*, should attack and storm; take by assault.

P. 163.—1. *Motus*, disturbances, commotions, insurrectiones. 2. *Refectas*, repaired,—his (navibus) *deductis* (in mare), these ships being brought down into the sea; i. e. being launched.—3. *Captivorum*, of prisoners.—4. *Commeatibus*, embarkations.—5. *Navigationibus*, voyages, trips.—6. *Desideraretur*, was missing, lost.—7. *Et prioris commeatus*, both those of the previous convoy,—et *quas*, and of those which.—8. *Perpauca locum caperent*, very few reached their destination.—9. *Necessario angustius milites collocavit*, from necessity stowed his soldiers more closely (than usual).—10. *Subductis navibus* (in aridum), the ships being drawn on shore. 11. *Frumentum provenerat angustius*, corn, grain had (come forth) been produced more scantily; the crop had been less abundant.—12. *In plures civitates*, among a greater number of states than usual.

P. 164.—1. *Mederi*, cure, remedy.—2. *Millibus passuum*, &c., were contained within the space of a hundred miles:—(Probably an error as to the extent.)—3. *Natus summo loco*, descended from a very noble family; of very noble birth.—4. *Tertium jam annum*, &c. killed him, (Tasgetius) now reigning the third year, many belonging to the state being the instigators.—5. *Quod ad plures*, &c., because it pertained to more than one; i. e. more than one were concerned in it.—6. *In hiberna perventum* (esse), that they had arrived at winter quarters; literally, it had been come by them to winter quarters.

P. 165.—1. *Qui cum ad fines*, &c., and when they had met Sabinus and Cotta at the borders of their kingdom.—2. *Desperata re*, having despaired of success.—3. *De communi re*, concerning their common interests.—4. *Minui posse*, could be adjusted; literally, diminished.—5. *Missu Cæsaris*, by the sending of Cæsar; i. e. being sent by Cæsar.—6. *Ad hunc modum*, to this purpose.—7. *Sese*, that he (Ambiorix):—This speech is given in oblique narration; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—8. *Plurimum ei debere*, that he was under very great obligations to him.—9. *De oppugnatione castrorum*, respecting the attack on the camp.—10. *Suæque esse*, &c., that his authority was of such a nature,—*multitudo*, the people.—11. *Ex humilitate suâ*, from his weakness, slender circumstances.—12. *Esse Gallia communi consilium*, &c., that it was the purpose of the whole of Gaul, that this day had been appointed by them for attacking (at once) all the winter quarters of Cæsar; so that no legion could bring aid to another.

P. 166.—1. *Quibus quoniam pro pietate*, &c., since he had done justice to them so far as affection (to his country) required, that he now had regard to the claims of duty for the kindnesses of Cæsar to him.—2. *Pro hospitio*, by the ties of friendship.—3. *Ipsorum esse consilium*, it belonged to them (Titurius and Cotta,) to consider,—*velintne*, whether they should.—4. *Quod cum faciat*, since he was doing this, i. e. in doing this he consulted, &c.—5. *Existit*, arises.—6. *Sustineri*, could be withstood, resisted.—7. *Rem esse testimonio*, that fact was for proof; i. e. that facts proved this.

P. 167.—1. *Levius aut turpius*, weaker or more cowardly.—2. *Auctore hoste*, an enemy being the author; on the information of an enemy.—3. *Clamitabat*, kept crying out; § 44, II. 2.—4. *Cæsarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam*, that he supposed that Cæsar had gone into Italy.—5. *Non hostem auctorem*, &c., that he did not look at the enemy's being the adviser, but at the thing itself.—6. *Ardere*, burned with resentment.—7. *Sine certâ re*, without certain information.—8. *Si nil sit durius*, if nothing occurred more difficult than ordinary.—9. *Unam salutem*, their only security.—10. *Præsens*, immediate.—11. *Hæc in utramque*, &c., this dispute being maintained on both sides.—12. *Primisque ordinibus*, and the chief centurions.—13. *Vincite*, prevail, carry your point:—This is spoken in the direct discourse; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—14. *Et id*, and that, i. e. *et dixit id*.—15. *Hi* (milites), these (referring to the Roman soldiers within hearing,) will understand;—*abs te rationem*, will demand satisfaction from you (Cotta); will call you to account.—16. *Nec rejecti nec relegati*, &c., and not perish with either the sword or famine, as if forced away and banished far from the rest.

P. 168.—1. *Consurgitur*, they arise, break up.—2. *Utrumque*, both; viz: Cotta and Titurius.—3. *Res disputatione ad mediam noctem*, the affair is protracted by their dispute; i. e. the subject is debated till midnight.—4. *Dat manus*, gives his hands; i. e. yields,—a mode of expression borrowed from the form of making a surrender by stretching forth, or holding up the hands.—5. *Pronunciatur*, it is published; orders are given,—*vigiliis*, without sleep.—6. *Quid*, i. e. *spectans*, or *visurus quid*, to see what.—7. *Omnia excogitantur*, &c., every reason is suggested to show,—*quare*, why.—8. *Vigiliis*, want of sleep.—9. *Ut quibus persuasum esset*, since they were persuaded.—10. *Se demisisset*, had gone down.—11. *Ut qui*, since he, or because he.—12. *Hæc tamen ipsa* (fecit) these very things however (he did),—*atque* (ita) *ut*, and so that; in such a way that.—13. *In ipso negotio*, &c., to deliberate in the very moment of action.

P. 169.—1. *Auctor*, an adviser.—2. *Possent minus facillè obtre omnia per se*, they could less easily perform every thing themselves; every part of their duty could not be performed by them in person (viz. Cotta and Titurius).—3. *Iussérunt* (duces) *pronunciàre* (militibus).—4. *In orbem consistérunt*, and form (Idioms, 85,) themselves into a circle.—5. *Incommodè accidit*, it proved unfortunate.—6. *Vulgè*, every where.—7. (Ut) *quæ quisque*, &c. that whatever things any one of them considered the most valuable, these he hastened, &c.—8. *Consilium non defuit barbaris*, prudence was not wanting to the barbarians; the barbarians were not deficient in prudence, skill.—9. *Illorum esse prædam*, &c., that the booty belonged to them, (the Gauls) and that whatever the Romans should leave would be reserved for them; (Idioms, 94, 3.)—10. *Erant et virtute*, &c., both in valor and number, our men were a match for them in fighting.—11. *Cedant*, they should give way before them.—12. *Nihil iis noceri posse*, that they could not be hurt:—For *nihil* see § 116, Obs. 3.

P. 170.—1. *Locum tenere*, to keep their place (in the circle).—2. *Ad horam octavam*, till the eighth hour (2 o'clock, P. M.).—3. *Utrumque femur tragulâ transiçitur Tito Balventio*, each thigh is pierced through with a dart, to T. Balventius, a brave, &c.; a dart transfixes both the thighs of T. Balventius.—4. *Subvenit*, is bringing aid; is endeavoring to rescue.—5. *In adversum os*, full in the mouth.—6. *Ipsi vero nihil nocturnum iri*, but that he should not be hurt; that no harm should be done to himself;—*se interponere*, that he pledged.—7. *Atque in eo constitit*, and persisted in it.—8. *In præsentia* (tempora), at present.

P. 171.—1. *Victoriam conclàmant*, shout victory.—2. *Illi*, they, viz. those who had retreated to the camp.—3. *Ad unum*, to a man.—4. *Sublatus*, being elated.—5. *Nihil esse negotii*, that it was an easy matter.—6. *Se proficitur*, he offers himself.—7. *Huic quoque accidit*, to him, to this officer (Cicero) it happened.

P. 172.—1. *Ægrè is dies sustentatur* (a nostris), that day is maintained by our men with difficulty; i. e. our men hold out that day with difficulty.—2. *Propositis*, being offered.—3. *Turres admodum*, &c., one hundred and twenty towers in all, altogether.—4. *Præusta rudes*, stakes burned at the end.—5. *Turres contabulantur*, towers of several stories are raised;—*pinnae loricaque*, &c., battlements and parapets are constructed of interwoven hurdles.—6. *Cum esset tenuissimâ valetudine*, though he was in a very feeble state of health.—7. *Sibi parcere*, to spare himself.—8. *Aliquem*

aditum sermōnis, any intimacy.—9. *Factā potestate*, leave being given.

P. 173.—1. *Ambiorigem ostendant*, &c., for the sake of gaining credit, they ostentatiously point to Ambiorix; i. e. they tell of his arrival.—2. *Eos*, that they; viz: Cæsar and his army.—3. *Hoc animo*, of such a disposition; are so favorably disposed.—4. *Lictre illis*, that it would be permitted to them (the Romans),—*per se*, by them (the Nervii).—5. *Adjutōre*, as an intercessor.—6. *Pro ejus justitiā*, through his regard for justice.—7. *Sed nullā ferramentōrum copiā*, but there being no quantity (or abundance) of iron tools.—8. *Sagūlis* (dim. of *sagum*), short cloaks.—9. *Terram exhaurire*, to remove the earth.—10. *Millium* (passuum).—11. *Falces testudinesque*, mural hooks and sheds; See Index, *Vineæ* and *Testudo*.—12. *Ferventes glandes ex fusili argillā*, red hot balls of cast clay.—13. *Fervefacta jacūla*, fiery javelins.—14. *Distulērunt*, spread the flames.—15. *Agēre*, advance.

P. 174.—1. *Demigrandi*, of retiring from the fight, yielding.—2. *Acerrimè fortissimèque*, with the greatest ardor and bravery.—3. *Recessumque primis*, &c., and the last (the farthest off) did not give a retreat, (an opportunity of retreating,) to the foremost.—4. *Turri*, a tower, (of the enemy),—*vallum*, (our) rampart.—5. *Quorum*, of whom; viz: the enemy;—*progrēdi*, to come forth; viz: from the tower.—6. *Deturbāti*, &c., they were dislodged and the tower set on fire.—7. *Qui jam primis ordinibus*, &c., who were advancing (rising) to the first ranks.—8. *Spectas*, do you look for.—9. *Quāque*, and where.—10. *Procurrentem*, running forward (to engage him).—11. *Hunc*, him (the wounded enemy).

P. 175.—1. *In illum*, at him (Pulſio).—2. *Succurrit inimicus*, &c. Varenus, though his rival, runs up and assists him in danger.—3. *Hunc*, him, (Varenus).—4. *Illum*, that he (Pulſio).—5. *In locum dejectus*, &c., stumbling, he fell; or, he stumbled and fell into a hollow place.—6. *In contentiōne et certamine*, in this honorable rivalry and contest;—*utrumque versāvit*, &c., employed, directed, both, that the one, though the rival, alternately brought aid and security to the other.—7. *Quanto gravior*, &c., the more severe and difficult,—*tanto crebriōres*, the more frequently; § 98, Obs. 10.—8. *Unus Nervius*, a certain Nervian.—9. *Honesto loco*, of an honorable family.—10. *Servo* (suo) a slave of his.—11. *Periculis*, the great danger (literally, the dangers).—12. *Undecimā horā*, the eleventh hour, 5 o'clock, P. M.; see Gr. App. I.

P. 176.—1. *Quà sibi iter faciendum scēbat*, where he knew he would have to pass.—2. *Si reipublicæ commōdo* &c., if he could do it with advantage to the state.—3. *Litteras publicas*, the public documents.—4. *Tolerandæ hiēmis causâ*, for the sake of enduring the winter; for a winter supply.—5. *Rem gestam*, the things done, the course pursued.—6. *Opiniōne dejectus*, disappointed in his expectation; literally, cast down from his expectation.

P. 177.—1. *Si adire non possit*, if he could not gain access (to the camp).—2. *Ad amentum deligatâ*, tied to the thong, or strap: The *amentum* was a strap fastened to the middle of a spear or javelin, by means of which it was thrown with greater force.—3. *Casu*, by chance.—4. *Perlectam*, being read over; after he had read it over himself.—5. *Expulit*, dispelled, put an end to.—6. *Tamen angustis viarum*, nevertheless, by the narrowness of the ways (or passages) between the tents.

P. 178.—1. *Galli (hoc faciunt) Cæsar (hoc facit)*.—2. *In suum locum*, to his own ground; i. e. ground favorable to him.—3. *Portasque obstrui*, &c., the gates to be blocked up, and in doing this, that they should run to and fro as much as possible:—This was designed to lead the enemy to believe that there was great trepidation and fear in the camp.—4. *Etiam de vallo deductis*, &c., and being drawn back, even from the rampart, they (the enemy,) approach nearer.—5. *Ad se*, to them, viz: from the Roman camp.—6. *Ac sic nostros contemserunt*, and to such a degree did they show their contempt of us.—7. *Eâ (viâ)*, in that way.—8. *Longius*, too far.—9. *Illorum*, of them, viz: the enemy.

P. 179.—1. *Legiōne productâ*, &c., having led forth the legion; having reviewed the legion, he finds; (Idioms, 104,).—2. *Pro ejus merito*, according to his merit; as he deserved;—*appellat*, he addresses by name.—3. *Rem gestam propōnit*, he lays before them (viz: Cotta and Sabinus) the matter as it took place.—4. *Culpâ*, by the misconduct.—5. *Hoc*, on this account.—6. *Quòd*, seeing, since.—7. *Incommōdo expiâto*, &c., the loss being retrieved; the disaster having been remedied by the kindness, &c.—8. *Post horam nonam*, after 3 o'clock, P. M.; See Gr. App. I.—9. *Trinis hibernis*, in three several winter quarters; i. e. in three different places.—10. *Consultabant*, were consulting, deliberating; § 44, II. 2.—11. *Quid consilii reliqui caperent*, &c., what measures the rest were adopting, and where a beginning of the war would be made.—12. *Concilia*, assemblies, meetings.

P. 180.—1. *Quin aliquem*, &c., but he heard, (that he did not hear,) some intelligence.—2. *Armorica*, states lying along the north of Gaul, now Bretagne.—3. *Dicto audientes*, obedient:—In this phrase *audientes* governs *dicto*, by § 112, R. V.; again, the words *audientes dicto*, together, are equivalent to *obedientes*, and often govern another dative by the same Rule; as, *Nobis dicto obediens*, obedient to us.—4. *Tantum valuit*, prevailed so much; had so much influence.—5. *Attulit*, produced, caused.—6. *Præcipuo semper honore habuit*, treated always with special honor.—7. *Altēros*,—*altēros*, the former,—the latter.—8. *Nulla fere civitas*, &c., almost every state was suspected by us.—9. *Idque adeo*, &c., and I do not know whether this is to be wondered at.—10. *Quod, qui*, &c., because they grieved most bitterly that they who were accustomed to be ranked before all nations in valor, had lost so much of that reputation that they should endure the commands of the Roman people.—*Qui* has for its antecedent *se* in the next clause.

P. 181.—1. *Lapsus hâc spe*, having fallen from this hope; *i. e.* being disappointed in this hope.—2. *Utro ad se ventri* (ab hominibus, 67, 7,) that men were coming to him of their own accord.—3. *Omnibus cruciatibus*, by every species of torture.—4. *Alterius factionis*, of the opposite faction.—5. *Secutum fidem Cæsaris*, having put himself under the protection of Cæsar.—6. *Huc*, to them.

P. 182.—1. *Sub castris*, close up to the camp.—2. *Quibuscumque poterat rebus*, by whatever means he could.—3. *Intromissis*, being let in (to the Roman camp).—4. *Quos arcessendos*, &c., who he had taken care should be sent for.—5. *Nullâ ratione*, in no way.—6. *Cum magnâ contumeliâ*, with great insult of words; with most abusive language.—7. *Dispersi ac dissipati* in a dispersed and scattered manner.—8. *Præcipit atque interdicat*, commands and forbids, —*præcipit* has for its object, *unum omnes petant Indutiomârum*; and *interdicat*, the next clause, *neu quis*, &c.—9. *Morâ reliquorum*, by the delay (of pursuing) the rest.—10. *Compröbat*, favors.

NOTES ON BOOK VI.

P. 183.—1. *Dilectum habere*, to hold a levy; to raise forces.—2. *Quoniam ipse ad urbem*, &c., since he (Pompey) remained near the city with military command, on account of the republic (The

laws did not allow a person invested with military powers to enter the city,) that he would order those troops which he had raised in Cisalpine Gaul (and had bound) by the oath of fidelity to the consul.—3. *Sarciri*, &c., be repaired, but even be more than compensated by greater forces.—4. *Quod cum Pompeius*, &c., Pompey having granted this.—5. *Ut docuimus*, as we have shewn.—6. *Obsidibusque de pecuniâ cavent*, secure the payment of the money by means of hostages.

P. 184.—1. *Ad imperatum*, to the thing commanded; *i. e.* to do the thing commanded.—2. *Nondum hieme confectâ*, the winter being not yet ended, *i. e.* before the end of winter.—3. *Ut instituerat*, as he had been accustomed.—4. *Omnia* every thing else.—5. *Sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur*, but were supposed to be absent from, (not concerned in) this scheme (plot).—6. *Hæc re*, &c., this thing (the adjournment) being published from the tribunal; (an elevated place formed of turf or other material heaped up together, *suggestus*).—7. *Conantibus*, &c., to them attempting to do this.—8. *Sententiâ*, from this design.—9. *Deprecandi*, of excusing their conduct.—10. *Quodd æstivum*, &c., because the summer was the time for prosecuting the war, not for legal investigations.

P. 185.—1. *Totus et mente et animo*, wholly with his mind and soul; *i. e.* with his whole heart and soul.—2. *Ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiâ*, &c., that no commotion might arise, either from this man's violent temper, or from that hatred on the part of the state which he had incurred (in consequence of having been made king over it by Cæsar).—3. *Pro explorato*, for certain.—4. *Circumspicebat ejus* (*Ambiorigis*) *relîqua consilia animo*, watched his other plans in his mind (*i. e.* with attention).—5. *Perpetuis paludibus*, continued, uninterrupted marshes.—6. *Illi*, from him (*Ambiorix*),—*ipsum*, (*Ambiorix*) himself.—7. *Congrêdi cum Transrhenânis*, to unite with those beyond the Rhine.—8. *Manu*, an army.—9. *Præsidio loci*, to the protection of the place, the strength of their position.—10. *Effectis*, erected, built.—11. *Adit tripartito*, marches against them in three divisions.

P. 186.—1. *Augebatur* (*hostibus*) was increased to the enemy.—2. *Loquitur*, he (*Labienus*) speaks.—3. *In dubium non devotaturum*, would not endanger, involve in doubt.—4. *Gallîcis rebus*, the interest, the affairs of the Gauls.—5. *Primis ordinibus*, the chief centurions.—6. *Longum esse*, that it would be long, too long, too late.

P. 187.—1. *Usus eâdem simulatione itinêris*, practising the same deception respecting his march.—2. *Facultâtem*, opportunity. 3. *Præstâre*, display.—4. *Præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis*, being detached to the baggage for a guard; i. e. to guard the baggage.—5. *Præter spem*, contrary to expectation.—6. *Infestis signis*, with hostile standards.—7. *Cingetorigi—traditum est*, was conferred on Cingetorix; See B. V. Ch. 3. and 56.—8. *Ne Ambiorix ad eos receptum haberet*, that Ambiorix might not have a retreat to them; a place of refuge among them.

P. 188.—1. *Causâ purgandi sui*, on purpose to clear, to justify themselves.—2. *Neque ab se fidem læsam*, nor had their promise been violated by them.—3. *Ne communi odio*, &c., lest in his common hatred of the Germans.—4. *Causâ cognitâ*, on enquiry.—5. *Imperitos ignorant*.—6. *Refêrunt*, report.—7. *Infinitâ* &c. of vast extent.—8. *Ab Suevis*, on the side of the Suevi.

P. 189.—1. *Alienum*, improper, foreign to the purpose.—2. *Proponere*, to treat of, lay before, to give some account of.—3. *In omnibus pagis partibusque*, in all the cantons and parts of cantons.—4. *Principes eârum factionum*, &c., the heads of these factions are (persons) who in their opinion are considered to have the greatest interest, on whose will and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions hinge, depend.—5. *Idque ejus rei causâ*, &c., and this custom seems to have been instituted from early times, for this reason.—6. *Quisque non patitur*,—*neque habent*, each leader (patron),—neither do they have:—The pupil may here notice the transition from the singular, *patitur*, with *quisque*, to the plural, *habent*; § 102, Obs. 5.—7. *Hæc eâdem ratio est*, &c., this same principle exists, prevails, in the government of all Gaul.—8. *Principes*, chief, at the head of.—9. *Jacturis*, expenses, gifts:—This is a pure use of the word, which denotes a present loss in expectation of future benefit.—10. *Tantum potentiâ antecesserant*, they (the Sequani) so far excelled (the Ædui) in power.—11. *Re infectâ*, the business, his object, being unaccomplished.—12. *Eorûm amicitiam* their (the Ædui's) friendship.

P. 190.—1. *Reliquis rebus*, &c., here the participle, *amplificatâ*, agrees with the nearest noun; See § 98, Obs. 4.—2. *Dimiserant*, (for *amiserant*.) had lost.—3. *Quos quoddâ adæquâre*, &c., and because it was understood that they (the Remi) equalled the Ædui in Cæsar's favor; i. e. had an equal share of Cæsar's favor with the Ædui; stood as high in &c.—4. *Vetêres inimicitias*, ancient feuds.—5. *Dicabant se Remis in clientelam*, gave up themselves to the Re

mi for protection; put themselves under the protection of the Remi, 6. *Aliquo numero*, of any note;—*genera*, classes.—7. *Aere alieno*, by debt, literally, the money of another.—8. *In hos eadem*, &c., over these the nobles have all the same rights as masters have over their slaves.—9. *Alterum est Druidum*, one is that of the Druids (See Index)—the other, that of the knights.—10. *Illi*, the former;—*ad hos*, to the latter.—11. *Procurant*, have charge of.—12. *Hi (Druides) sunt apud eos (adolescentes)* they (the Druids) are in great honor among them, viz: their pupils.—13. *Non stetit decretis*, &c., has not stood by, has violated their decree,—they exclude them from the public rites, excommunicate them.—14. *Hi quibus ita interdictum est*, those who are thus excommunicated (Idioms, 66,).—15. *Defugunt aditum eorum*, &c., shun their company and conversation.

P. 191.—1. *Habet summam auctoritatem*, possesses the supreme authority; whose authority is absolute.—2. Arrange: *Quæ regio habetur media (regio) totius Gallie*, which is esteemed the middle, or central region of all Gaul.—3. Parent, obey, abide by, acquiesce in.—4. *Disciplina*, &c. this institution is thought to have originated in Britain.—5. *Diligentiùs*, more accurately.—6. *Militiæ vacatiónem*, exemption from military service.—7. *Immunitatem omnium rerum*, immunity, privilege, free use, enjoyment, of all things; all immunities.—8. *Premiis*, rewards, advantages, privileges.—9. *Ediscere*, to learn by heart; to commit to memory.—10. *Ea litera mandare*, to commit these things to writing.—11. *Instituisse id*, to have instituted this custom.—12. *Disciplinam efferri*, that their doctrine should be spread abroad.—13. *In primis hoc volunt*, &c., they (the Druids) in particular wish to inculcate this idea; it is a favorite maxim of the Druids.—14. *Animas non interire*, &c., that souls do not die, but pass from one body to another.—15. *Disputant*, &c., they reason and impart their reflections to the young.

P. 192.—1. *Cum est usus*, when there is need.—2. *Versantur*, are engaged.—3. *Ambactas*, retainers.—4. *Dedita religionibus*, given, addicted to religious rites, to superstitions.—5. *Condita viminibus*, interwoven with twigs.—6. *Ejus generis (nocentium)*, of this class of offenders.—7. *Deum maxime Mercurium colunt*, they (the Gauls) worship chiefly the god Mercury; i. e. Mercury is the chief or favorite deity of the Gauls:—Not however the Mercury of the Grecian mythology, but a Gallic deity.—8. (Colunt) *Apollinem*, &c.—9. *Initia*, the beginnings, the first knowledge.

P. 193.—1. *Quæ superavērint*, &c. they sacrifice the captured animals which remain.—2. *Posta*, deposited (in sacred places).—3. *Spatia omnis temporis*, all their periods or divisions of time.—4. *Ut noctem dies subsequatur*, that the day follows the night; i. e. their day is from sunset to sunset as among the Jews.—5. *Palam*, openly; i. e. publicly, in public.—6. *Conjunctim ratio habetur*, a joint account is kept.—7. *Fructusque servatur*, and the interest is laid up.—8. *Vitā superarit*, shall survive the other.—9. *Habent questionem de uxoribus in servilem modum*, they examine their wives by torture, after the manner of slaves; like slaves.—10. *Si comperitum est*, if any discovery is made.—11. *Pro cultu*, considering their mode of life.—12. *Vivis cordi fuisse*, to have been pleasing to them living.—*ac paulo*, and not long before our time.

P. 194.—1. *Commodius*, to greater advantage than others; more judiciously.—2. *Quæ visa sunt*, what seemed proper to them; i. e. what they thought proper.—3. *Per consilium*, through, or during; i. e. in the time of the council.—4. *Neque student*, nor do they pay attention to.—5. *Opibus quorum*, &c., by whose power they are manifestly benefited.—6. *Vulcānum*, fire.—7. *Consistit*, is spent.—8. *Impubēres*, chaste.—9. *Rhenōnum*, of deer's hides.—10. *Quantum et quo loco*, &c., as much land as, and where they think proper.—11. *Afferunt multas causas ejus rei*, they produce many reasons for this practice.

P. 195.—1. *Accuratiùs*, with greater care.—2. *Animi æquitāte*, in evenness of mind, contentment.—3. *Proprium virtutis*, peculiar to, or a proof of, their valor.—4. *Dicunt jus, controversiasque minuunt*, administer justice and decide controversies.—5. *Qui velint sequi profiteantur*, let those who wish to follow signify it, give their names.—6. *Ac tempus fuit antea*, but there was a time formerly.—7. *Ultra bella inferrent*, they (the Gauls) without provocation brought war.—*Germanis*, upon the Germans.

P. 196.—1. *Summam opinionem*, a very high character, reputation for justice, and military glory.—2. *Gallis autem*, &c., the nearness of the (Roman) province to the Gauls, and their acquaintance with foreign commodities.—3. *Largitur multa ad copiam atque usus*, supplies many articles of luxury and convenience.—4. *Expedito*, to a traveller without baggage; to an expeditious traveller.—5. *Fintri*, be measured.—6. *Sinistrorsus*, to the left hand (viz. of the Danube,) stretches northward from the Danube.—7. *Memoria prodenda videantur*, seem worthy to be handed down to remembrance.—8. *Bos* See Index, *Bison*.—9. *Sicut palmæ*, like palma.

P. 197.—1. *Alces*, elk; See *Alce*.—2. *Varitas pellium*, the spots, varied color, of their skins.—3. *Si afflictæ quo casu conciderint*, if, being thrown down by any accident, they have fallen.—4. *Applicæ se ad eas*, they lean themselves against these.—5. *Infirmas*, being weakened.—6. *Uri*; See *Urus*.—7. *Quæ sunt testimonio*, to serve as a proof.—8. *Ne parvuli quidem excepti*, not even those caught young.—9. *Amplissimis*, their most splendid.—10. *Cæsar*:—Cæsar having finished his digression, respecting the manners of the Gauls and Germans, (Ch. 11—28,) here resumes his narrative.

P. 198.—1. *Si quid celeritate*, &c., to see if he may be able to gain any thing by rapidity of march and favorable opportunity.—2. *Ut imperatum est*, as was ordered.—3. *Fortuna potest (facere) multum*, &c. fortune can do much; *i. e.* has great influence, not only, &c.—4. *Magnæ fuit fortunæ*, it was a piece of great good fortune.

P. 199.—1. *Multum fortuna valuit*, fortune did much, had great power or influence.—2. *Judicio*, from choice, designedly.—3. *Exclusus tempore*, prevented by want of time.—4. *Sed certè*, but it is certain.—5. *Alienissimis* to total strangers.—6. *Omnibus precibus*, with every sort of execration.—7. *Taxo*, with yew; *i. e.* with a decoction of the leaves or berry, both of which were regarded as poisonous.—8. *Causam omnium Germanorum esse unam*, that the cause of all the Germans was one and the same.—9. *Questione captivorum*, from an examination of the captives.

P. 200.—1. *Post diem septimum* (inchoatum), after the seventh day was begun; *i. e.* on the seventh day;—2. *Ut supra*, Ch. 31.—3. *Nulla certa manus*, no regular force.—4. *Vicinitatibus*, to the neighborhoods; *i. e.* to the people in the neighborhood:—a very common mode of speech in our own language.—5. *Ex parte*, partly, in a measure.

P. 201.—1. *Confertos*, in large parties.—2. *Si vellet*, if he (Cæsar) wished.—3. *Instituta ratio*, established discipline.—4. *Ut potius in nocendo*, &c., that some opportunity of injuring the enemy should be omitted, rather than that this injury should be inflicted with any danger to his soldiers.—5. *Legionarius miles*, the legionary soldiery; the soldiers of the legion; *i. e.* the regular troops.—6. *Appetebat*, was drawing near.—7. *Quantos casus afferat*, how great accidents she brings; *i. e.* how great changes she brings about.—8. *Manus erat nulla*, there was no collected body.—9. *Suprà docuimus*, we have shewn above; B. IV. Ch. 16.

P. 202.—1. *Non palus non silvæ morantur hos*, &c., no marsh, no woods hinder these men, &c.—2. *Tantum præsidii ut ne*, &c., so little of garrison that not even the walls could be surrounded with men; *i. e.* could be manned.—3. *Duce*, guide,—*indicio*, information. 4. *Qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiõnem*, &c., who called his forbearance almost a siege, since they were not permitted to go out of the camp.—5. *Qui convalescerant*, &c., those who had recovered during this interval.—6. *Subsederat*, had remained.—7. *Casu*, by chance, by accident.

P. 203.—1. *Mercatores qui sub vallo tenderent*, the sutlers who pitched their tents close to the ramparts.—2. *Reliquos aditus*, and other places of entrance.—3. *Plerique novas sibi*, &c., most of them form to themselves strange superstitious notions from the place; and they place before their eyes the disaster of Cotta and Titurius, since they were overthrown in that fort.—4. *Qui primum pilum*, &c., who had led the first rank with Cæsar; *i. e.* who had been his chief centurion.—5. *Superioribus præliis*; See B. II. Ch. 25, and B. III. Ch. 5.—6. *Relinquit animus Sextium*, Sextius faints.

P. 204.—1. *Imperiti usus militaris*, not acquainted with the usages of war.—2. *Cuneo facto*, a wedge being made; being drawn up in the form of a wedge.—3. *Si*, if, even if:—*at*, still, yet.—4. *Nullo usu militaris rei percepto*, &c., no experience in military affairs being yet acquired.

P. 205.—1. *Non faceret fidem*, he did not gain credit, was not believed.—2. *Pæne alienatâ mente*, with a mind almost alienated; devoid of reason.—3. *Questus unum*, having complained of only one thing.—4. *Locum debuisse relinqui*, *ne minimo quidem casu*, that a place, or occasion, ought not to have been left, for even the smallest accident; See § 16, Exc. 2.—5. *Quarum omnium rerum maxime*, &c., of all these things it seemed the most astonishing.—6. *Obtulerint optatissimum beneficium Ambiorigi*, rendered the most acceptable service to Ambiorix.—7. *Ad vexandos hostes*, to annoy the enemy.

P. 206.—1. *Pæne naturam studio vincerent*, they almost overcame nature by exertion.—2. *Ad summam felicitatem*, to complete success.—3. *Ille eriperet*, &c., he continued to snatch himself from them; to escape from them by the aid of lurking places and forests: 4. *Summit supplicium more majorum*, he inflicted punishment according to the practice of their ancestors.—5. *Cum interdixisset quibus aqua atque igni*, when he had interdicted them from water and fire;

i. e. had banished them:—This was the Roman judicial mode of inflicting the sentence of banishment, "To forbid the use of water and fire."—6. *Frumento provisto exercitui*, having provided corn for the army.

[END OF NOTES.]

INDEX,

HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL AND ARCHÆOLOGICAL,

FOR THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

- Acco**, ōnis, a general of the Gauls, who was at the head of the confederacy formed against the Senōnes, Carnūtes, and Trevīri. Cæsar, by the rapidity of his marches, prevented the execution of his plans, and ordered a general assembly of Gaul to inquire into the conduct of these nations, in which he pronounced sentence of death on Acco, who was instantly executed; B. VI. Ch. 4, and 44.
- Adcantuannus**, Adiomatus, vel, Adbuatus, i, the chief man, for many years, among the Allobrōges.
- Aduatūca**, æ, f. a fort nearly in the middle of the country possessed by the Eburōnes,—a different place from Aduatūcum, the capital of the Aduatūci, now called *Tongres*, with which it appears to have been confounded by Ptolemy;—A small part of the town only may have been built when Cæsar was in that country. Hence he mentioned it as a castle, or fort. It stood near the river *Mosa*, (*Mæse*.) between Liege and Mæstricht.
- Aduatūci**, ōrum, m. a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on the west bank of the *Mosa*, (*Mæse*.) between Namur and Liege.
- Ædui**, ōrum, (*sing.* *Ædnuus*, i.), v. Hedui, ōrum, one of the most powerful and wealthy nations of Gallia Celtica. Their territory lay on the W. of the *Arar*, (*Saone*.) between that river and the *Ligeris*, (*Loire*.) a little to the N. of the junction of the former with the *Rhodanus*, (*Rhone*.) At an early period they became the allies of Rome, to which, in some degree, their influence among the other nations of Gaul may be attributed. See *Sequāni*.
- Æmilius**, i, (*Lucius*), an officer in Cæsar's army, who commanded a part of the Gallic cavalry.

Æquinoctium, i, n. (from *Æquus*, equal, and *Nox*, night,) the Equinox, or time when the days and nights are equal, all over the globe. This happens twice a year, on 22d March, and 22d September. The former is called the Vernal, the latter the Autumnal Equinox. The circle, which passes through the place of the sun at these two periods of the year, has, from the phenomenon above mentioned, received the name of the Equinoctial, or Equinoctial Line, and is directly over the Equator.

Agendicum, i, n. (now *Sens*,) the chief city of the Senōnes, a brave and powerful people of Gaul, who inhabited the left bank of the Sequāna, (*Seine*). It stood below the confluence of the Vanne and Icauna, vel, Itumna, (*Yonne*,) a southern branch of the Seine.

Agger, is, the name of a mound raised by the Romans in besieging cities. It was composed of earth, wood, hurdles, stone, &c. The agger commenced at a distance from the walls, gradually advanced towards the town, always increasing in height, till it equalled or overtopped the walls. This mound was secured by towers of different stories, (See *Turris*,) from which showers of missiles were discharged on the defenders by means of engines, and from which, when advanced near enough, a temporary platform or bridge was sometimes thrown to the top of the wall, on which the soldiers marched into the city.

Ala, æ, the wing of an army, properly the cavalry, so called from being placed on the right and left of the infantry. In the plural this term is often used to designate the troops of the allies, which (both infantry and cavalry,) were stationed on the right and left of the Roman army.

Alarii, ōrum, those belonging to the *Alæ*, or wings.

Allobrōges, um, (sing. *Allobrox*, ōgis,) a people of Gaul, whose country lay between the Isāra, (*Isere*,) and the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) They bravely, and for a long time, resisted the power of the Roman legions, but were at last defeated by Pomtīnus. Cicero extols them for their fidelity to his countrymen, of which they gave a remarkable proof in Catiline's conspiracy (See Sallust, B. C.) Horace censures them for their love of novelty, which seems characteristic of the inhabitants of that country, both in ancient and modern times. Cæsar De Bel. Gal. IV. 5. The chief town of the Allobrōges was Vienna, (*Vienne*,) on the left bank of the Rhone, 13 miles below Lugdūnum, (*Lyon*.)

Alpes, ium, a chain of mountains separating Italy from Gaul and Germany. They are in the form of a crescent, and extend from the Sinus Flanaticus, (the gulf of *Quarnero*,) at the top of the

gulf of Venice, to Vada Sabatia, (*Savona*,) on the gulf of Genoa, a distance of 600 miles. They have been divided into different portions, the principal of which are the following: 1. *Alpes Maritimæ*, (or Maritime Alps,) extending from the vicinity of Nice to Monte Viso. 2. *Alpes Cottæ*, (or Cottian Alps,) from Monte Viso to Mont Cenis. 3. *Alpes Graiæ*, (or Graian Alps,) between Mont Iseran and Little St. Bernard. 4. *Alpes Penninæ*, (or Pennine Alps,) from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhine. To this range belongs Mt. Blanc, 14,676 feet high. 5. *Alpes Rhæticiæ*, (or Rhætian Alps,) from St. Gothard to Mount Brenner in the Tyrol. 6. *Alpes Noriciæ*, (or Noric Alps,) from Mount Brenner to the head of the river Plavis. 7. *Alpes Carniciæ*, sive *Julia*, (the Carnic or Julian Alps,) from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum. Over these mountains there are several passes, of which the principal are, that over the Great St. Bernard, that over Mont Simplon, and that over Mont St. Gothard.

Ambarri, ōrum, a people of Gaul, related to the Ædui, supposed to have lived on the Arar, (*Saone*,) a little to the N. of its Junction with the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.)

Ambianum, i, n. anciently Samarobriva, now *Amiens*, a town of the Belgæ.

Ambiani, ōrum, the inhabitants of Ambianum. They entered into a conspiracy against Cæsar, (B. G. II. 4,) and appear to have held a considerable rank among the Belgic tribes.

Ambiliati, ōrum, m. a nation of Gallia Celtica whose geographical position is not precisely ascertained. They are mentioned (B. G. III. 9,) along with the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannètes, &c., and therefore their country must have been included in the province of Bretagne or Normandy. Some editions have Ambiani.

Ambiorix, Igis, king of the Eburōnes, was a great enemy to the Romans. After many narrow escapes, he at last evaded the pursuit of Cæsar's men who followed him too closely, when only four of his attendants remained.

Ambivariti, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, between the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*,) who were subject to the Ædui. (B. IV. Ch. 9.)

Anartes, ium, et Anarti, v. Anartii, ōrum, a people of Dacia, who inhabited the east bank of the river Tibiscus, (*Teissak*, or *Teyss*,) one of the northern branches of the Danube. Their country now forms part of Hungary.

Ancalites, ium, a people of South Britain, who were neighbors to

the Trimobantes. Some have thought the Atrebatæ of Ptolemy and Antonine's Itinerary, the same with the Ancalites of Cæsar. See Horsley's *Britannia Romana*, p. 17, and Gale's *Anton. Itiner.* p. 105, 106.

Andes, ium, Ibus, a nation of the Celtæ in Gaul. Their territory lay on the north bank, and near the mouth, of the river Ligeris, (*Loire*.)

Annus, i, m. a year. See *Gr. App. I.*

Antebrogius, i, m. a man of great influence amongst the Rhemi, who was sent ambassador to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antesignani, ōrum, (*Ante and signum*,) a name given to the soldiers who fought *before* the standards, or in the first line, as those who were stationed behind the standards were called *Postsignani*, or *Subsignani*.

Antistius, i, (Caius A. Rheginus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. Cæsar, in consequence of his expecting greater commotions in that country, gave orders in the sixth year of the war, to Marcus Silanus, C. Antistius Rheginus, and T. Sextius, to levy troops. We find him, at other times, appointing this lieutenant to honorable commissions.

Antistius, (See Turpio.)

Apello, ōis, the son of Jupiter and Latona, the god of music, medicine, augury, painting, poetry, and all the fine arts. He was born at the same birth with his sister Diana, near the foot of Cynthus, a mountain in Delos, an island in Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago*.) Hence he was called Cynthius and Delius; and Diana, Cynthia and Delia. Among beasts, the wolf; among insects, the grass-hopper; among birds, the cock, the crow, the swan, and the hawk; and among trees, the palm, the olive, and the laurel, were sacred to Apello. He was represented as a tall beardless young man, of handsome shape, holding in his hand a bow, hence called *Deus Arcitenens*, or a lyre, and his head surrounded with rays of light.

Aquila, æ, m. an eagle, also the standard of a Roman Legion. From the second consulship of Marius, and under the Emperors, the standards were most commonly of silver, seldom of gold, in the form of an eagle, from which the name is derived. The preference was given to the former metal, according to Pliny, because it is seen at a greater distance than the latter. But though the figure of the Roman ensigns was always that of an eagle, they were not always precisely alike. Sometimes they resembled an

eagle in a standing posture, at others, with outstretched wings, which was the most common form, and not unfrequently with a turret on their backs. The Roman standard, at first, was a bundle of hay fixed to a pole, *Manipulus*,—a term afterward used to denote the third part of a cohort, then of wood, sometimes of silver, and more rarely of gold, in different forms. Marius, during his second consulship, introduced into the Roman army the eagle, which continued to be ensign till the destruction of the empire. The merit of originality does not belong to the Romans, for we have the authority of Xenophon to maintain, that it was first used as a military standard by the Persians.

Aquilifer, fēri, m. standard-bearer, whose office seems, in some degree, to correspond to that of ensign with us. His place was in the first line. To allow the standard to fall into the hands of the enemy was reckoned highly disgraceful to the whole legion, which is still the case in modern times, but particularly to the person who carried it. In one instance recorded by Livy, the standard-bearer was, for this crime, put to death. But the centurions suffered the same punishment at that time, and the army was decimated for cowardice and treachery.—It does not appear from Roman history, that recourse was had to such severity, unless in instances of wilful dereliction of duty, proceeding either from unmanly timidity or treacherous intention.

Aquileia, æ, f. a famous seaport belonging to the Venēti on Mare Adriaticum, (*Gulf of Venice*.) Strabo says it was built by the Romans, to repel the inroads of the barbarians, when their territory on that coast did not extend farther north. The name has been thought to be derived from an eagle, *Aquila*, flying over the site at the time the foundation was laid; but more probably from the Roman standard, in consequence of two legions having been long stationed in that place. From its splendor and magnificence, it was sometimes called *Roma Secunda*. Atilla, king of the Huns, after a long and obstinate siege, plundered it, A. D. 452, and so completely was the city destroyed, that the next generation could scarcely discover its ruins. Since that time, a few fishermen's huts point out the place near which it stood. Aquileia, according to Pliny, was at the distance of 1500 paces from the coast.

Aquitania, æ, f. one of the three principal divisions of Gallia, (*France*,) bounded on the east by Provincia, (*Languedoc, Provence, and Dauphiné*;) on the north by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) which separates it from Gallia Celtica, on the west by Oceanus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) and on the south by Py-

rensi Montes, (*Pyrenees*, or *Pyrenean Mountains*), which divide Gallia from Hispania, (*Spain*.) As Aquitania was much less than either of the other two divisions, Augustus extended its northern boundary to the river Ligëris, (*Loire*.)

Aquitani, ðrum, (sing. Aquitanus, i,) the inhabitants of Aquitania. Arar, ñris, m. (*Saone*), a smooth flowing river of Gaul, which takes its rise near Mount Vosëgus, (*Vosge*), runs southward, and after receiving several streams, falls into the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), at Lugdūnum, (*Lyon*, or *Lyons*.) B. I. Ch. 12.

Arduenna, æ, f. *Ardennes*, a forest of Gaul, the largest in that country, reaching, according to Cæsar, from the Rhenus, (*Rhine*), to the territory of the Remi, upwards of fifty miles in length. Others make the extent of this forest much larger. If it reached from the territory of the Trevîri to that of the Remi, it would greatly exceed fifty miles. The ground is now in many places cleared, and cities built upon it. Strabo says, the trees of this forest were not of a great height, and its length did not exceed forty miles.

Arecomîci, ðrum, a people of Gaul, who lived on the Gallîcus Sinus, (*Gulf of Lyons*), to the west of the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) See Volcæ.

Aries, ëtis, m. a ram:—also a military engine for battering down walls. It is said to have been first used by the Carthaginians at the siege of Gades, (*Cadiz*.) This instrument was originally very simple. To the end of a beam, varying in length and thickness according to circumstances, was affixed a piece of iron in the form of a ram's head, to which it owes its name. This powerful engine of war rested on the arms of the soldiers who worked it. The first improvement made on the battering ram, was to suspend it by a chain or a rope from the top of two logs of wood, having the lower ends fixed firmly in the ground at a considerable distance from each other, and terminating in a point at the upper, by which contrivance the men who wrought it were wholly relieved of its weight. To protect them from the destructive weapons thrown by the besieged, a shed or mantlet, with a strong roof, was formed around it. The whole stood on wheels, so that the besiegers easily moved the engine at pleasure. It does not appear from ancient history, that the battering ram received any important improvement after the one just stated. The discovery of gunpowder and introduction of artillery have quite superseded the use of this military engine, which the Romans long held in great esteem.

The number of men employed at once in working the ram, and the length of time they continued, would vary according to the number of the troops, the magnitude of the beam, the thickness of the wall, &c. It is certain that in some instances, upwards of fifty men plied on each side, and from the severity of the labor, they must, in ordinary cases, have been frequently relieved. The following wood cut represents the battering ram protected by the *Testudo*, or *vineæ*, under which the men employed in working it were protected from the missiles of the enemy.

ARIES.



Ariovistus, i, king of the Germans, who invaded Gallia, (*France*), conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. **Cæsar** marched up to his very camp, compelled him to fight, and gained such a complete victory, that a very few only, among whom was

Ariovistus himself, escaped. These continued their flight, until they reached the banks of the Rhine, which they crossed, some by swimming, others by boats. Ariovistus, in a little vessel, got safely to the other side. From this period nothing of his history is known.

Armoricæ civitates, Armoric States, namely, those of the Rhedones Namnetes, Veneti, Curiosolites, Osismii, Corisopiti, Unelli, Ambrincatui, Bajocasses, Viducasses, and Lexovii, who inhabited the western part of the countries, between the Ligëris, (*Loire*,) and the Sequana, (*Seine*.) They had this name from their situation on the sea coast; *Armor* signifying, in the language of the ancient Gauls, *on the sea*.

Armorici, ðrum, the inhabitants of Armoricæ.

Arpinus, i, (Caius,) a Roman knight whom Cæsar sent along with Quintus Junius to Ambiorix, after he himself had declined an interview with that prince.

Arverni, ðrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the sources of the Eleaver, (*Allier*,) and Duranius, (*Dordogne*,) branches of the Ligëris and Garumna. From the numerous wars which they had carried on against the Romans, Strabo infers their power and resources must, in former ages, have been very great. Like the Romans, they boasted of being descended from the Trojans.

Atrebatæ, ium, a people of Gallia Belgica, the neighbors of the Morini whose country lay along the English Channel, opposite to Dover.

Atrius, i, (Quintus,) an officer to whom Cæsar gave the command of the shipping, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain.

Atuatüci, v. Aduatüci. ðrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, whose territories lay between the rivers Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and the Scaldis (*Scheld*,) adjoining to those of the Nervii and Toxanuri. Their capital was Atuatüca, æ, f. *Tongres*, in Brabant.

Auleri, ðrum; of this name Cæsar mentions four nations of Gaul. *Auleri Brannovices*, whose territories, (*Morienne*,) were adjoining to those of the Ædui, Segusiæni, and Ambivariti; *Auleri Cenomanni*, whose country, (*Mans*,) lay between the rivers Sarta, (*Sarte*,) and Lædus, two of the northern branches of the Loire, *Swindinum*, vel, *Subdinium*, afterwards *Cenomanni*, on the *Sarte* was their chief city; *Auleri Eburovices* inhabited the left bank of the Sequana, (*Seine*,) below Lutetia, (*Paris*.) Their chief town was *Mediolanum*, afterwards *Eburovices*, (*Evreux*.)

The *Aulerici Diablintes*, *Diablita*, et *Diablita*, lived between the two last mentioned nations. Neodunum, afterwards Diablintes, (*Jublaas*), was their largest town. These three, probably, formed but one people, and might, with more propriety, have been denominated tribes, than separate or distinct nations.

Aurunculeius, i, (Lucius A. Cotta) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic War. He opposed the rash measure of his colleague, in wishing to leave their winter quarters, at the deceitful suggestion of Ambiorix, but at last yielded to the timidity of Titurius, which cost him his life. He is frequently called L. Cotta, and sometimes Cotta.

Ausci, ōrum, a people of Aquitania in Gaul. Their capital was Climberis, v. Climberrum, Augusta, and at a latter period, Auci, (*Auch*), which stood on the west branch of the Ger, one of the southern branches of the river Garumna, (*Garonne*).

Auxilia, ōrum, troops sent by foreign kings and states. They usually received pay and clothing from the republic, although sometimes they were supported by those who sent them.

Axōna, æ, m. (*Aine*, or *Aisne*), a river of Gaul, which Ausonius calls *Præceps*, from its rapidity. Its source was in the territories of the Rhēni, which form the department of the Meuse. It runs in a southwest direction, joins the Isāra, (*Isere*), a little below Campagne, and both fall into the Sequāna, (*Seine*), about five miles south of Pointoise.

B.

BACENIS, is, f. a forest of Germany, forming part of the Hercynia Silva, or *Black Forest*. Cæsar says it was of prodigious extent, (*infinitæ magnitudinis*), and like a natural wall, prevented the mutual incursions of the Suēvi and Cherusci.

Baculus; See Sextius.

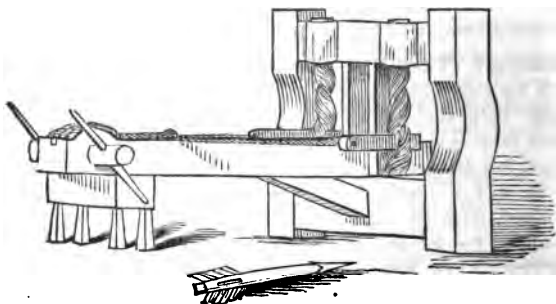
Baleāres, ium, a name anciently given to the islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca* off the coast of Spain, the inhabitants of which were celebrated for their skill in the use of the sling.

Baleāris, e, adj. of or belonging to the Balearic isles.

Balista, æ, (from the Greek βάλλω to throw,) a species of military engine used by the Romans for throwing darts, arrows, and stones. These were of different sizes, and were used with great effect both in battles and sieges. Stones of great weight were often

thrown by these engines to a great distance, by which battlements were thrown down and whole files of men swept from the deepest phalanx. Their effect is said to have been little inferior in sieges to that of artillery. The balista used for throwing darts or javelins, represented in the following wood cut, taken from Folard's commentary on Polybius, resembled in its operation an immense crossbow, the two ends of which consisted of two levers so twisted in coils of ropes as to acquire a powerful spring. The extreme ends were united by a strong rope which was drawn back by means of a windlass after the manner of a bowstring, bringing the ends of the lever back and closer together, thereby twisting the coils of ropes to their greatest tension. When thus drawn back, the javelin or dart was placed in the shaft, directed to the object aimed at, and, at the pleasure of the operator, letting go the rope, was hurled with prodigious force from the engine by the recoil of the levers.

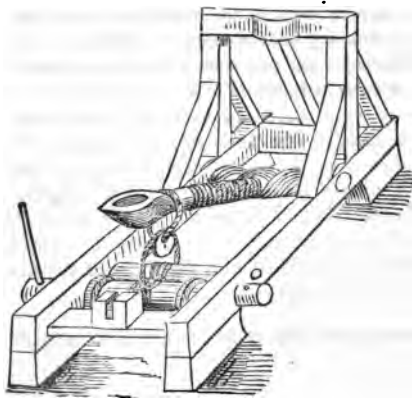
BALISTA FOR THROWING DARTS AND JAVELINS



The balista for throwing stones, (represented in the following wood cut,) consisted of a strong lever, one end of which was made fast in a twist of ropes, and the other scooped out in the form of a spoon, for containing the stone &c. to be thrown. When unbent the lever stood perpendicular. In working it, the end of the lever was brought down, by means of a windlass, to a horizontal position, by which the ropes were twisted to their greatest tension; the stone or missile was laid on in its proper place and thrown by the recoil of the lever to a great distance, often with tremendous effect. Engines of both kinds, of a larger size, were

more commonly called *Balista*, those of a smaller size, *Catapultæ*, which see.

BALISTA FOR THROWING STONES OR OTHER HEAVY BODIES.



Balventius, i, (Titus, i,) a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which Ambiorix made upon the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Basilius; See Minucius.

Batavia, æ, f. v. *Insula Batavorum*, (*United Provinces*,) often called *Holland*, from its being the largest of them; a country at the mouth of the Rhine. It was denominated an island, from being bounded on two sides, by the southern and northern branches of the Rhine, and on the third by the sea. B. IV. Ch. 10.

Batavi, òrum, the people of Batavia, originally a branch of the Catti, a German nation.

Belgæ, arum, a people originally of German extraction, who inhabited the third division of Gaul, which was bounded on the south by the *Matròna*, (*Marne*,) and the *Sequæna*, (*Seine*;) on the east and north by the *Rhénus*, (*Rhine*,) and on the west by *Fretum Britannicum*, (*English Channel*.) Strictly speaking, *Fretum Britannicum*, v. *Gallicum*, was confined to the *Straits of Dover*, but seems generally to have had a more extended signification, and to have nearly corresponded to the modern appellation, the *English Channel*. Cæsar calls it *Océanus*, i. e. *Atlantîcus*, of which the

English Channel and the German Sea form only a very small part. In the division of Gaul made by Augustus, whose object was to render the different provinces more equal in point of extent, the countries of the Helvetii and Sequāni, which till that time were included in Gallia Celtica, were added to Gallia Belgica. According to Cæsar, the Belgæ were, of all the Gauls, the most warlike; and he attributes their superiority in arms to their being strangers to luxury and refinement. B. I. Ch. 1.

Belgium, i, n. is, in general, used by Cæsar to denote a part of Gallia Belgica, not the whole country. See Belgæ.

Bellovāci, ōram, a numerous and powerful tribe of the Belgæ, adjoining the Bellocassi. Calēti, Ambiani, Veromandui, and Silvaneetes.

Bibracte, is, n. afterwards Augustodunum, i, n. (*Autun*), a town of the Ædui, upon the Arroux, one of the northern branches of the Ligēris, (*Loire*), towards the source of that river. At this town in the 7th year of the Gallic war a general assembly of the whole country was held, to choose a commander in chief, on whom the uncontrolled direction of all their military operations should be conferred. The Ædui, who claimed that honor, had to submit to the unanimous election of Vercingetōrix, q. v.

Bibrax, acis, f. (*Bievre*), a town of the Remi on the Axōna, (*Aisne*.)

Bibrōci, ōrum, a British nation, inhabiting what now forms the N. W. part of Berkshire. Their chief town was Bibracte, (*Bray*.) At the time Cæsar invaded Britain, they, with the Cenomāgni, Ancalites, and Cassii, seem to have been subject to Cassivellaunus.

Bigerrōnes, v. Bigerrōnes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who, with several other adjoining tribes, surrendered to Crassus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Their territory was bounded on the south by the Pyrenees, and was nearly at equal distances from the Mediterranean and the Bay of Biscay.

Bison, ontis, v. ōnis, m. a buffalo, a kind of wild ox, of which Cæsar has given the best description to be found in the writings of the ancients, (B. G. VI. 25.) The natural history of this animal is unknown.

Bituriges, um, a nation of Gallia Celtica, on the west side of the river Ligēris, (*Loire*.) Their chief city, Avaricum, was afterwards called by the name of its inhabitants, (now *Bourges*.)

Boduognatus, i, the commander of the Nervii, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Cæsar.

Boii, Brum, a people of Gallia Celtica, who came originally from beyond the Rhine and settled in the country south and west of the Ædui on the banks of the Liger and Eläver,—a territory originally belonging to the Ædui, but which they gave up to the Boii with the consent of Cæsar; B. I. Ch. 28. There were several tribes of the Boii, who lived in different parts of Gaul and Germany. In the latter country their name is still recognized in the districts; *Bavaria*, and *Bohemia*, in the German language, *Boierheim*, i. e. the residence of the Boii.

Bratuspantium, i, n. a town of the Bellovaci. It is supposed to have stood between Cæsaromagnus, afterwards Belvâcus, or Belvâcum, (*Beauvais*,) and Samarobriva, (*Amiens*,) This town is not mentioned by any writer after the commencement of the Christian Æra.

Britannia, æ, f. *Britain*, or *Great Britain*, (anciently called *Albion*,) is the largest island in Mare Atlanticum, (*Atlantic Ocean*,) belonging to Eurôpa; (*Europe*,) That part of the Atlantic which separates Britain from France, was called Fretum Britannicum, (strictly speaking, *Strait of Dover*,) but its signification seems often to have been more extensive, and to have corresponded nearly with the modern appellation, English Channel. Oceânus Verginius, (*St. George's Channel*,) lies between Britain and Hibernia, (*Ireland*,) On the west, Oceânus Calydonicus, (*Scottish Sea*,) washed the west and northwest parts of Scotland, Oceânus Hyperboreus, (*Northern Sea*,) the northern coast, and Oceânus Germanicus, (the *German Ocean*,—which is more properly called a sea,)—formed its boundary on the east. Cæsar's account, both of the form and extent of this island, is not very far from the truth. But of the characters, manners and customs, of the Britons, a very general description only is to be found in the writings of the ancients. Little was known, to the Romans, of this island until the invasion of Cæsar. This commander endeavored, although ineffectually, to reduce it. After a long interval, Ostorius, in the reign of Claudius, subjugated the southern part; and Agricola, subsequently, in the reign of Domitian, extended the Roman dominion to the Frith of Forth and Clyde. The whole force of the empire, although exerted to the utmost under Severus, could not, however, reduce to subjection the hardy natives of the highlands. Britain continued a Roman province, until A. D. 426, when the troops were in a great measure withdrawn, to assist Valentinian III. against the Huns, and never returned. The Britons had become so enervated under the Roman yoke, as to be unable to repel

the incursions of the inhabitants of the north. They invoked, therefore, the aid of the Saxons, by whom they were themselves subjugated, and compelled at last to take refuge among the mountains of Wales.

Britanni, ōrum, (sing. Britannus, i,) et Britōnes, v. Brittōnes, um, (sing. Britto, ōnis, v. ōnis,) the people of Britannia.

Britannus, et, Britannicus, a um, adj. of, or belonging to Britain.

Brutus, i, (Decimus, i,) one of Cæsar's officers, to whom he gave the command of his fleet in the Gallic war, with which he defeated the Venetians, (B. G. III. 15,) and afterwards the people of Marseilles, in two engagements during the civil war.

C.

CÆRESI, ōrum, a nation of Gallia Belgica, who, with the Condrasi, Eburōnes, and Pæmāni, went under the general appellation of Germans, and were supposed to send 40,000 men to the Belgic army, which was raised against the Roman dominion in Gaul, (B. G. II. 4.) Their country was situated between that of the Treviri and the river Mosa, (*Meuse*.)

Cæsar, aris, (Caius Julius,) the first distinguished character of the Cæsars, was the son of Caius Cæsar and Aurelia the daughter of Cotta. He was born in the sixth consulship of Marius, 99 years B. C. He lost his father in the 16th year of his age, and the following year obtained the office of Flamen Dialis, (*High Priest of Jupiter*.) He procured many friends by his eloquence, and after passing through the different offices of Quæstor, Edile, High Priest, (*Pontifex Maximus*,) &c., he was sent as governor into Spain, and upon his return, being elected Consul, he entered into an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, that nothing should be done in the state without their joint concurrence. This was called the First Triumvirate, and was in fact a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome.

Previous to the expiration of his consulship, he obtained from the people the province of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, with three legions for five years; and the Senate, at the desire of Cæsar, added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. These legions were gradually increased to thirteen.

Cæsar set out for Transalpine Gaul in the end of March, B. C. 57, in the 42d year of his age. With wonderful conduct and

bravery he subdued this country in about ten years, and carried the terror of his arms into Germany and Britain, till then unknown to the Romans. The account of these wars is given by Cæsar himself, in his Commentaries on the Gallic war, in seven books. These Commentaries, or Journals, were composed on the spot where his battles were fought. The purity and neatness of his style, notwithstanding the rapidity with which they must have been written, have not been surpassed by any Roman writer. His narrative is perspicuous, simple, and natural. It is at once chaste and animated. His lucid and picturesque description places the whole scene distinctly before the reader, who accompanies him in all his marches, and is a witness of every engagement. No passage occurs in all his writings, which the most illiterate do not understand, and the most polished do not approve. To compose a simple narrative of his campaigns, for the amusement of himself and his friends, seems rather to have been his object, than to give a specimen of his talents as a profound historian, or deep politician. Hence, it were absurd to expect in the Commentaries, a finished history. They are mere outlines, which he perhaps entertained the hope of seeing filled up, either by himself, or by some other hand.

These Commentaries in seven books, and three books concerning the civil war, are the only genuine writings of Cæsar which now remain. Of the character of Cæsar as a general and historian; Dunlop, in his History of Roman Literature, Vol. II. p. 171, &c., speaks thus:

“Though the Commentaries on the Gallic War comprehend but a small extent of time, and are not the general history of a nation, they embrace events of the highest importance, and detail, perhaps, the greatest military operations to be found in ancient story. We see in them all that is great and consummate in the art of war. The ablest commander of the most warlike people on earth records the history of his own campaigns. Placed at the head of the finest army ever formed in the world, and one devoted to his fortunes, but opposed by prowess only second to their own, he and the soldiers he commanded, may be praised almost in the words in which Nestor praised the heroes who had gone before him; for the Gauls and Germans were among the bravest and most warlike nations then on earth. In his clear and scientific details of military operations, Cæsar is reckoned superior to every one, except, perhaps, Polybius. In general, too, when he speaks of himself, it is without affectation or arrogance. He talks

of Cæsar as of an indifferent person, and always maintains the character which he has thus assumed; indeed, it can hardly be conceived that he had so small a share in the great actions he describes, as would appear from his own representations. With the exception of the false colors with which he disguises his ambitious projects against the liberties of his country, every thing seems to be told with fidelity and candor."

Respecting the future history of this illustrious man the following notices may here suffice. After the conquest of Gaul, Pompey, having become jealous of Cæsar's power, induced the Senate to order him to lay down his command; upon which Cæsar crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, and led his army to Rome, Pompey and all the friends of liberty fleeing before him. Having subdued Italy in sixty days, Cæsar entered Rome, and seized upon the money in the public treasury. He then went to Spain, where he conquered the partizans of Pompey, and at his return was created Dictator, and soon after Consul. Leaving Rome and going in search of Pompey, the two hostile generals engaged on the plains of Pharsalia. The army of Cæsar amounted to 22,000 men, while that of Pompey amounted to 45,000; but the superior generalship of Cæsar prevailed, and he was victorious. Making a generous use of his victory, Cæsar followed Pompey into Egypt, where he heard of his murder, and making the country tributary to his power, he hastened to suppress the remainder of Pompey's party in Africa and Spain. Thus triumphing over all his enemies, he was created perpetual Dictator, received the names of *Imperātor* and *Pater Patriæ*, and governed the people with justice. The consequence, however, of his engrossing all the powers of the state and ruling with absolute authority, engendered a spirit of opposition and general disgust; a conspiracy was formed against him by more than sixty senators, the chief of whom were Brutus and Cassius. Accordingly, on the 15th of March, 44 years B. C., and in the 56th year of his age, on his entrance into the Senate house, he was stabbed, and fell, pierced with twenty-three wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue.

Of Cæsar's intrepidity as a soldier, and abilities as a commander, the armies which he defeated and the countries which he conquered are sufficient proofs. To the talents of a consummate general he added those of an elegant historian and a persuasive orator. He spoke with the same spirit with which he fought,

and had he devoted himself to the bar, he would have been the only man capable of rivalling Cicero.

Calætes, ium, v. Calēti, ōrum, a people of Gaul, whose country lay a little to the north of the mouth of the Sequāna, (*Seine*.)

Cantābri, ōrum, (sing. Cantāber, ri,) a very brave and warlike people, who inhabited the northern part of Spain. They seem to have extended from the mouths of Iberus, (*Ebro*,) to the shores of the Bay of Biscay, which was, from them, called *Océanus Cantabricus*. The term is often used to denote the Spaniards in general.

Cantium, i, n. (*Kent*,) a district of England which, in modern times, is bounded by the Strait of Dover, (Fretum Gallicum, vel, Britannicum) on the east, by Sussex on the south, on the west by Sarry, and on the north by the Thames, (*Tamesis*,) which separates it from Essex. But the ancient boundaries of Kent are not precisely ascertained.

Carcāso, ōnis, f. *Carcassonne*, a town of that part of Provincia, now called Languedoc, on the river Atax, (*Aude*.) Here are preserved some records of the place, written upon the bark of trees.

Carfulēnus, i, an officer of Cæsar, who was dispatched to attack the highest part of the camp of the Alexandrians, which he carried. He was afterwards killed in an engagement at Mutīna, fighting against Anthony.

Carnūtes, um, v. ti, ōrum, a powerful nation of Gaul, between the rivers Sequāna, (*Seine*,) and Ligēris, (*Loire*,) south of Lutetia, (*Paris*.)

Carvilius, i, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent*,) who, at the command of Cassivellaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp, in which they were repulsed, and lost a great number of men.

Cassi, ōrum, *the hundred of Caishow*, a British nation, supposed to be subject to Cassivellaunus at the time Cæsar invaded Britain, who submitted to that conqueror.

Cassius, i, (Lucius, i,) a Roman consul, who was killed by the Helvetii, who defeated his army and obliged it to pass under the yoke.

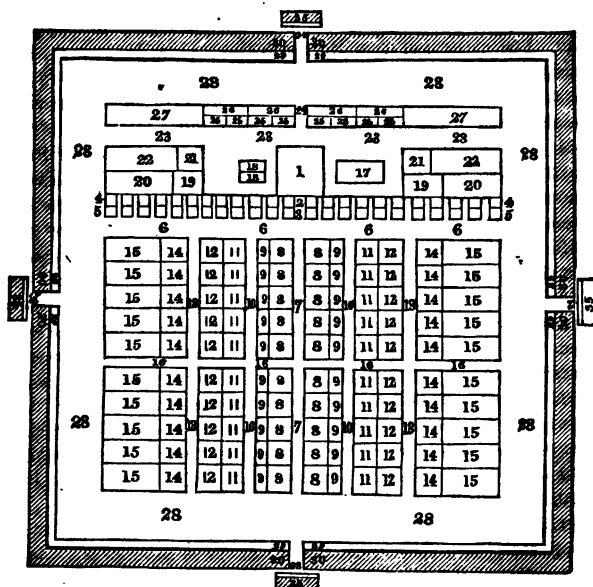
Cassivellaunus, i, one of the British kings, whose territories lay on the north bank of the Tamēsis, (*Thames*,) towards the mouth of that river. On the arrival of the Roman forces in Britain under Cæsar, he was, by common consent, appointed Commander-in-chief. After making some attempts to check the progress of the

enemy, he was obliged to submit, and accept of such terms as Cæsar chose to offer.

Casticus, i, one of the Sequāni, the son of Catamantalēdis, whom Orgetōrix persuaded to seize on the sovereignty of the state, which his father had formerly held.

Castra, ōrum, a camp. The discipline of the Romans was chiefly conspicuous in their marches and encampments. They never passed a night, even in the longest marches, without pitching a camp, and fortifying it with a rampart and ditch. The form of the Roman camp, till later ages, was square, and was always of the same figure. It was surrounded by a ditch, usually nine feet deep, and twelve feet broad, and by a rampart or *vallum*, composed of the earth dug from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it. The camp had four gates, one on each side. They were called *porta PRÆTORIA*, next the enemy; *DECUMANA*, opposite to the former; *porta PRINCIPALIS DEXTRA*, on the right side of the camp, at one end of the main street called *PRINCIPIA*; and *PRINCIPALIS SINISTRA*, on the left side, at the other end. The camp was divided into two parts, called the upper and lower, by the main street just mentioned. In the lower part the troops were disposed in the following order. The cavalry were in the middle; on both sides of them were the *triarii*, *principes*, and *hastāti*, or the third, second, and first Roman ranks; and next to these, on both sides, were the cavalry and foot of the allies, who were always posted in separate places, lest they should form any plots by being united. The *velites* commonly occupied the empty space between the ramparts and tents, which was 200 feet broad. The tents were covered with leather or skins, extended by means of ropes. In each tent were usually ten soldiers, with their *decanus* or petty officer who commanded them. The different divisions of the troops were separated by intervals called *VIAE*. Of these there were five longwise, i. e. running from the *decuman* towards the *prætorian* side; and three across, one in the lower part of the camp, called *quintāna*, and two in the upper, namely, the *principia*, and another between the *prætorium* and the prætorian gate. The following wood cut and illustration will give a good idea of its shape and arrangements.

GROUND PLAN OF THE ROMAN CAMP.



1. The *Pratorium*, or general's tent, with a sufficient space around for the tents of his suite.

2. Ground behind the tents of the *Tribunes*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

3. The tents of the *Tribunes*.

4. Ground behind the tents of the *Prefects of the Allies*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

5. The tents of the *Prefects of the Allies*.

6. A cross street, one hundred feet wide, called *Principia*. (*Vid. PRINCIPIA.*)

7. A cross street, fifty feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the *Roman horse*.

8. The *Horse* of two Roman legions, in ten *turme* or troops each.

9. The *Triarii* of two Roman legions (*Vid. TRIARI*), in ten *maniples* each, facing on two different streets.

10. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Triarii* and *Principes* of two legions.

11. The *Principes* of two Roman legions (*Vid. PRINCIPES*), in ten maniples each.

12. The *Hastati* of two Roman legions (*Vid. HASTATI*), in ten maniples each.

13. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Hastati* of the two Roman legions and the Horse of the Allies.

14. The *Horse of the Allies*, wanting the *Extraordinarii* (*Vid. No. 25*), and placed in two different parts of the camp. The forces of the allies, both cavalry and infantry, were always separated in this manner, to prevent plotting, as remarked above.

15. The *Infantry of the Allies*, wanting the *Extraordinarii*, and, like the horse, placed in two different parts of the camp.

16. The *Quintana* (scil. *via*), a street fifty feet wide, running across the camp, between the fifth and sixth maniples of each line. Hence, as it comes after the fifth maniple, reckoned from the *Principia*, it received the name of *Quintana*.

17. The *Quæstorium*, or Quæstor's tent.

18. The tents of the *Legati*. The space in front of these and the *Quæstorium* was called the *Forum*, where things were sold, &c.

19. *Evocati Equites*, or Veteran Horse. (*Vid. EVOCATI*.)

20. *Evocati Pedites*, or Veteran Foot.

21. *Ablecti Equites* (*Vid. No. 25*), or Horse of the Consular life-guards.

22. *Ablecti Pedites*, or foot of the Consular life-guards.

23. A cross street one hundred feet wide.

24. A street fifty feet wide.

25. *Extraordinarii Equites*. A third part of the allied horse, and a fifth part of the allied foot, were selected, and posted near the consul, under the name of *Extraordinarii*, and one troop of horse, and maniple of foot, called *Ablecti*, or *Selecti*, to serve as his life-guard.

26. *Extraordinarii Pedites*.

27. Quarters for strangers coming to the camp.

28. A space two hundred feet broad, between the outermost tents and the rampart.

29. Rampart, or *Vallum*.

30. Ditch, usually nine feet deep and twelve feet broad.

31. *Porta Principalis Dextra*.

32. *Porta Principalis Sinistra*.

33. *Porta Decumāna* (i. e. *Decimāna*, from *decem*, ten,) so called because all the *tens* of the maniples end here.

34. *Porta Pretoria*.

35. A traverse breastwork, with a ditch, opposite to, and protecting, each of the gates. (*Anthon's Cæsar*.)

Catapulta, a military engine for discharging stones, arrows, and other missiles. (*Vid. BALISTA*.)

Catamantalēdes, is, a nobleman of the nation of the Sequāni, who, for many years, enjoyed the supreme authority over that people.

Cativolcus, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Eburōnes. He and Ambiōrix, at the instigation of Indutiomarus, excited the people to take up arms against the Romans. Having made an unsuccessful attack upon the Roman camp under the lieutenants, Titurius Sabinus, and L. Aurunculēius Cotta, they demanded a conference, in which Ambiōrix stated, that from gratitude to Cæsar, he considered himself bound to inform his lieutenant, that all the states of Gaul had agreed to attack the Roman camp in one day, that a great body of Germans had passed the Rhine, and that no time was to be lost in joining Cicero or Labiēnus, neither of whom were fifty miles distant. At the same time, he gave his solemn promise, that they should have a secure retreat through his territories. This artifice, through the folly or cowardice of Sabinus, succeeded. They left their camp, were attacked by a powerful army under Ambiōrix and Cativolcus, and were almost to a man cut in pieces. Cæsar afterwards completely routed them; and Cativolcus, from his great age, being unable to bear the fatigues of war, poisoned himself by drinking the juice of the yew-tree.

Caturiges, gum, a people of Gaul, who lived near the Alpes Maritimæ, at the S. E. extremity of Dauphiné.

Cavarinus, i, a nobleman whom Cæsar, in prejudice of his brother Moritasgus, the reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senōnes, an honor which his ancestors had long enjoyed. The Senōnes formed the design of publicly assassinating him, but having received intelligence of the plot, he saved his life by fleeing to the camp of Cæsar.

Celtæ, arum, the most powerful and numerous of all the nations of Gaul, who occupied nearly one-half of the country, and from whom that division was called *Celtica*. Their territories were bounded by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) on the south; the Sequāna, (*Seine*,) and the Matrōna, (*Marne*,) on the north; by Mount Jura on the east; and Mare Atlanticum, (*Atlantic Ocean*,) on the west.

Cenimagni, ðrum, an ancient people of Britain, who, with the *Segontiaci*, *Ancalites*, *Bibröci*, and *Cassi*, followed the example of the *Trinobantes*, and submitted to Cæsar. These nations are supposed to have inhabited the counties of *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Norfolk*, *Hertford*, *Buckingham*, *Oxford*, and *Berkshire*.

Censor, is, a Censor, a Roman magistrate whose number from first to last was uniformly two. They were appointed (A. U. 312,) to take an account of the number of the people, and the value of their fortunes, and superintend the public morals. They were chosen from the most reputable persons of consular rank, at first only from the patricians but afterwards likewise from the plebians. They were chosen every five years, but continued in office only a year and a half. For any dishonorable action they had the power to erase the name of a Senator from the list, deprive an eque of his horse and ring, and any other citizen they could degrade and deprive of all the privileges of a Roman citizen, except liberty.

The title of Censor was even more honorable than that of Consul, though attended with less power. No one could be elected a second time, and those who filled it were remarkable for leading an irreproachable life; so that to be descended from a censorian family was considered a distinguished ornament of nobility.

Census, ðs, m. was a general review of the people, estimating their estates, and proportioning their share of the public taxes. Every man was obliged to give in to the Censors his own name, residence and occupation, his wife's name, and the names of his children with their ages, the number of his slaves, and a minute and accurate account of his property. The goods of the person, who made a false return, were confiscated, and he himself, after being scourged, was sold for a slave. By that act he had, in the opinion of the state, deemed himself unworthy of the privileges and honors of a Roman citizen. Servius Tullius, the 6th king of Rome, appointed the Census, in order to ascertain the number of men able to bear arms, and the amount of the whole wealth possessed by the citizens, and consequently what sums could be levied from them. It was held in the Campus Martius, where the Censors, seated in curule chairs, attended by their clerks and public officers, commanded the citizens to be called before them, each in his own tribe. If nothing immoral or improper could be charged against a senator or knight, they passed without remark; but if otherwise, the senators were expelled the senate, and the public horse taken from the knight. The other citizens were raised to a higher tribe, if their wealth had increased, or sunk to a lower

tribe, if diminished; improper conduct deprived them of their right of voting, or subjected them to be taxed like strangers. A minute register of the whole was kept, and must have been of great advantage to the whole community, as determining with precision not only their number, but also their wealth. It ought to have been held at the end of every five years; but it is manifest from Roman history, that this period was not pointedly observed. At the end of this survey of the people they were ordered to attend a lustration, called, from sacrificing, a sow, a sheep, and a bull, *Suovetaurilia*. The precedence at this sacrifice was decided by lot, and he on whom the lot fell was at the conclusion said "*lustrum condere*."

Centurio, ōnis, f, (from *centum*, a hundred,) a centurion or commander of a *hundred* men. The constitution of the Roman legion admitted of a gradation from the lowest centurion of the *Hastati*, up to the first of the *Triarii*, who was called *Primipilus*, q. v. To the first captaincy, the meanest common soldier might aspire. Promotion in the Roman army could be obtained only by merit; appointments by purchase were unknown. This wise regulation produced the happiest effects. Besides each cohort having six centurions, and consequently each legion sixty, opened a wide field for promotion, and suggested numerous excitements to valor and heroism.

Centrōnes, um (B. G. I. 5,) a nation of Gaul in the Alps Graiæ, who, along with the *Garocēli* and *Caturīges*, were defeated by Cæsar in several engagements. There was another tribe, or horde, of this name, who were subject to the *Nervii*, a nation of *Gallia Belgica*, (B. G. Ch. V. 38.)

Cherusci, ōrum, m. a nation of Germany, between the rivers *Albis*, (*Elbe*), and the *Visurgis*, (*Weser*).

Cicēro, ōnis, (Quintus Tullius,) the brother of *Marcus Tullius Cicēro*, the celebrated orator, was, after the expiration of his prætorship, proconsul of Asia for three years. He gained considerable reputation as one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. At the commencement of the civil war, he, in opposition to the advice of his brother, attached himself to Pompey. After Cæsar had defeated the republicans at *Pharsalia*, both *Quintus* and his son solicited the favor of the conqueror, by unjustly imputing their misconduct to the orator. So far was *Cicero* from resenting this injustice, that he used his utmost efforts for their safety and interest. Both perished in the proscription of the second triumvirate.

Cimberius, i, the brother of Nasus, who headed the 100 cantons of the Suëvi, who had left their native country, and encamped on the banks of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) with the view of crossing that river, and settling in Gaul.

Cimbri, ðrum, (sing. Cimber, ri,) a German nation, supposed to be descended from the Asiatic Cimmerians, whose country was, from them, called the Chersonesus Cimbrica, (*Jutland*,) which now forms part of the kingdom of Denmark. About 113, B. C. the Cimbri, leaving their territories, which were both narrow and barren, and being joined by the Teutones, a neighboring people, defeated several German nations, and a Roman consul with his army, who had been sent against them. They invaded, and seem to have overrun, a great part of Gaul; and being strengthened by the accession of many of the tribes who inhabited that country, marched against Rome. After slaughtering the whole army of Cæpio and Mallius, except ten men and two generals, C. Marius marched against them, slew 120,000 and took 60,000 prisoners. Though only an inconsiderable people in the days of Tacitus, it is manifest, that the sagacity of that profound historian was apprehensive of the final destruction of the Roman state by the hordes of Germany, which actually happened about 300 years after his death.

Cingetorix, Igis, a nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Treviri, which was formerly attached to Cæsar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was, by means of his father-in-law, Indutiomarus, declared a public enemy, and his estate confiscated.

Cingetorix, Igis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent*,) who, by order of Cassivellaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp.

Clepsydra, æ, f. an instrument contrived to measure time by water. The merit of this invention belongs to the Egyptians, as well as the discovery of the sun-dial.

There were different kinds of Clepsydræ among the ancients; which, however, were all constructed on this principle, that the water ran through a narrow passage from one vessel to another and that on the surface of the water in the lower vessel, to the side of which a scale of hours was affixed, floated a piece of cork, which shewed the hour. It is manifest the water would be discharged with a rapidity proportioned to the quantity, and that, of course, it ran fastest when the vessel was full, and gradually became slower as the less water remained. Hence if the upper vessel discharged its water in twelve hours, and the under one

was an exact cylinder having its height divided into 144 equal parts, the water in the first hour would rise twenty-three of these parts, in the second hour, twenty-one, in the third, nineteen, &c., and the last or twelfth hour only one part. The state of the atmosphere would have considerable influence on the clepsydra, a defect which the ingenuity of a modern French philosopher, William Amontons, has completely remedied. By means of several important inventions he also freed it from other less inconveniences to which it was subject; and rendered it a very accurate divisor of time.

Cocosates, um, a people of Aquitania in Gaul, whose country lay along the coast of Oceanus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) to the north of the territories of the Tarbelli. Their chief town was Cocösa.

Clypeus, i. a round shield of a smaller size than the *Scutum*, which see.

Cohors, tis, a division of the Roman legion. See *Legio*.

Commius, i, one of the nation of the Atrebatés, hence called *Commius Atrebas*, whom Cæsar appointed king over that people in return for his important services. He afterwards fell under the suspicion of Labiénus, who employed C. Volusénus Quadrátus to kill him in an interview. This perfidious design did not succeed. But in the scuffle, Commius was wounded in the head. He was, from that period, a violent enemy to the Romans. Being at last defeated, he was obliged to submit to Antony, which he did, on condition that he should not appear before any Roman. On these terms, Antony granted him peace.

Condrüsi, òrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, who lived on the river Mosa, (*Mase*, or *Meuse*.) north of Silva Arduenna.

Considius Longus, (Caius, i,) a partisan of Pompey, who was at one time the governor of Adrumétum. He committed several acts of enormous cruelty. Considius afterwards commanded at Tisdra a garrison of Gætulians, and, on hearing of the defeat of his party, fled from that town with his treasures. Escaping from these barbarians and taking the road for Numidia, he was pursued by them, and to obtain possession of his money, they put him to death.

Consul, ùlis, a consul; the official title of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state. They were first created after the expulsion of the kings, A. U. 244. They had the same badges as the kings, except the crown, and nearly the same power. In time of war they had supreme command; one accompanied the army as com-

maunder-in-chief, and the other remained at Rome; or, if necessary, commanded another army, leaving the government in charge of the Prætor. They levied soldiers, appointed the greater part of the officers, and provided what was necessary for their support.

When any dangerous conjuncture arose, the consuls were armed with absolute power by the Senate, which solemnly decreed that they should take care that the republic received no harm. If any serious tumult or sedition occurred, they called the citizens to arms by proclaiming "Let those who wish to save the republic follow me;" and this was usually sufficient to check it.

The authority of the consuls was first impaired by the creation of Tribunes of the people, and afterwards by the Emperors. The office however was retained, and the consuls, after their power was gone, were still employed in consulting the Senate, administering justice, managing the public games and the like; and the year was usually characterized by their names.

At first the consuls were chosen from the Patricians only, but afterwards from the Plebians also. They were elected annually, and to be a candidate it was necessary to be forty-three years of age,—to have gone through the inferior offices of *Quæstor*, *Ædile*, and *Prætor*,—and to be present in a private station.

Proconsul, ūlis, a proconsul, a person invested with consular authority for the government of a conquered country. The consuls, at the expiration of their offices, were generally appointed proconsuls, and soon after quitted the city to take charge of their province. Their powers, though subject to the will of the senate and authority of the people, were very extensive. They had the appointment of the taxes and of the contributions imposed on the country, and it cannot be denied, that avarice and rapacity too often trampled on the principles of justice and humanity. To the honor of the Senate it must be mentioned, that they frequently punished acts both of extortion and cruelty. These crimes, however, were generally very flagrant before they became the subject of prosecution.

Proconsularis, is, e, of or belonging to a proconsul, or the proconsulship, proconsular.

Consularis, e, adj. of or belonging to a consul; consular; one who had been a consul; a man of consular rank.

Cotta, æ, (Lucius Aurunculæius,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, who suspected the stratagem of Ambiorix, and therefore endeavored to convince his colleague Sabinus of the impropriety of following the treacherous advice of that crafty Gaul, but without

effect. Unwilling that any enmity, from difference of opinion, should exist between them, he at last yielded, and his compliance cost him his life. Ambiorix, at the distance of two miles from the camp, lay in ambuscade, and when crossing a large valley, made a furious attack on the Roman forces, in which Cotta, after displaying singular bravery, was killed, and almost the whole of the two legions.

Crassus, i, (Marcus Licinius,) surnamed *Dives*, on account of his prodigious wealth, was, in early life, very poor, but by trafficking in slaves, and by other dishonorable practices, soon acquired great riches. To escape the cruelties of Cinna, he fled to Spain, where he had formerly passed some years with his father, when governor of that country; and remained eight months concealed in a cave. On hearing of Cinna's death, he raised 2,500 men, for whom he procured shipping, sailed to Africa, and attached himself to Metellus Pius. The friendship of Crassus with Metellus was not of long continuance. He then formed an alliance with Sulla, and was of great service to him in the civil war. The military talents of Crassus were greatly inferior to those of Pompey, who, on that account, necessarily stood higher in the favor of Sulla. Hence the enmity of these two powerful citizens, which all the address and eloquence of Cæsar could scarcely subdue. The great object of Crassus seems to have been the accumulation of wealth. Besides buying the estates of the proscribed, he had recourse to other base and scandalous means in order to increase his overgrown fortune.

Crassus was not however, destitute of bravery or generosity. He was honored with an ovation for putting an end to the war with Spartacus by a decisive engagement, in which 12,000 of the slaves were killed. He used frequently to lend money to his friends without interest. After entertaining the populace at 10,000 tables, giving to every citizen corn to support him for three months, and consecrating the tenth part of his property to Hercules, he was worth 7,100 talents. He used to say that no man, who could not maintain an army ought to be called rich. His slaves whom he had ingenuity enough to employ so profitably that they not only defrayed their own expenses, but added greatly to the wealth of their master, were, in number, equal to an army.

A reconciliation between Crassus and Pompey was, at last, effected by Cæsar. The iniquitous combination of these three men to destroy the liberties of their fellow-citizens, was called the first triumvirate. Less solicitous for honor than riches, Crassus,

in this division of the empire, chose Syria for his province, in expectation of making large additions to his fortune. Without the authority of the senate, he crossed the Euphrates and advanced against that country. But he was deceived by Agbarus, an Arabian, defeated by the Parthians, and his army nearly annihilated. He then fled with a small number of his soldiers to Carræ, a town of Mesopotamia, and was prevailed on to meet Surēna, on pretence of negotiating a peace, where he was treacherously put to death. The Parthians cut off his head, and, in contempt of his avarice, poured melted gold into his mouth. The bond of union between Pompey and Cæsar, which had been greatly weakened by the death of Julia, was finally dissolved by that of Crassus. They had now recourse to arms, and their struggles for the superiority terminated in the final extinction of Roman liberty.

Cretenses, ium, the inhabitants of Creta, *q. vel*, Crete, *es, f.* a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, opposite to Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago.*) From its principal city, it is now called *Candia*.

• Cres, Cretis, *m. et* Cressa, *æ, f.* a native of Crete or Candia. Cretis, *Idis*, of Crete or Candia, with relation to a female, or to a noun feminine.

Curiosolitæ, arum, and Curiosolites, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, among Armoricas Civitates, whose country was afterwards called *Britagna*.

D.

Daci, arum, the inhabitants of Dacia a country corresponding to the modern Wallachia, Transylvania, Moldavia, and that part of Hungary which lies to the east of the Tibiscus or *Teiss*; B. VI. Ch. 25.

Danubius, i, the *Danube*, the largest river in Europe, rises in the black forest in Germany, (according to Strabo and Pliny, in the mountain Abnoba,) runs in an easterly direction, through Austria, Germany, Hungary, part of Turkey in Europe, and discharges itself into Pontus Euxinus, (the *Black Sea*.) The ancients gave the name of Ister to the eastern part of this river, after its junction with the Savas, (*Save*.) Though of great breadth and depth in many places, it is not generally navigable on account of the cataracts. Strabo, Diodorus Siculus, Tacitus, and Pliny, have given descriptions of this river in many respects different, and all

exceedingly inaccurate. With the whole course of the Danube the Greeks and Romans were very imperfectly acquainted. Their knowledge of the countries to the north of this large river, was almost wholly obtained by vague report from unlettered barbarians, and, of course, very incorrect.

In the decline of the Roman empire, it became better known to that people, in consequence of almost all the barbarous nations, who assailed that state, commencing hostilities by ravaging the country on the banks of the Danube. But learning had sunk with the state, and no minute or accurate account of this river is found in classic authors.

Decumāna (*porta*), the rear gate of the Roman camp, (*See Castra*) so called because the tens of the maniples were stationed there.

Decurio, ōnis, m. (from *decem*, ten,) an officer of the cavalry among the Romans, who commanded ten men. Each *Turnus*, or troop of horse, had three Decuriōnes, and each Decurio chose a subaltern, who was, on that account, called *Optio*.

Delectus, ūs, (from *deligo*, to choose,) a military term to denote the levying or enrolment of soldiers. The consuls, after they entered on their office, appointed a day, on which all who were of the military age (from 17 to 46,) should be present in the capitol. On the day appointed, the consuls seated in their curule chairs, assisted by the military or legionary tribunes, held a levy, unless hindered by the tribunes of the commons. It was determined by lot in what order the tribes should be called. The consuls ordered such as they pleased to be cited out of each tribe; and every one was obliged to answer to his name under a severe penalty. They were careful to choose those first who had what were thought lucky names; as, *Valerius*, *Sabinaus*, *Statorius*, &c. Their names were written down on tables, hence, *Scribēre milites*, to enlist, to levy, or to raise soldiers.

Diablintes, ium, et Diablitæ, et Dianlitæ, arum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the river Meduana, (*Maine*.) Their chief town was Neodūnum, afterwards Diablintes, now *Jublens*.

Dictātor, ōris, m. a Dictator, an extraordinary Magistrate at Rome, who possessed absolute authority over not only the lives and fortunes of his fellow citizens, but even over the laws themselves. A free government could admit of such an officer being appointed only on important and alarming conjunctures. We find from Roman history that the first Dictator was chosen during the wars with the Latins, (499 B. C.) and that his appointment was a consequence of the plebeians refusing to enlist, and of the consuls

being unable to protect the state. Unless when threatened with imminent danger, either from domestic sedition or foreign wars, the consuls held the highest office, and the laws set bounds to their powers; but the Dictator knew no restriction. Twenty-four Lic-tors preceded him, and, whilst he remained in office, the functions of the other magistrates, with the exception of that of Tribunes of the people, were suspended. He proclaimed war, levied forces, and marched against the enemy; or made peace or disbanded them whenever he pleased. Execution followed his decision, and from his judgment lay no appeal. At the expiration of his office, which could not exceed six months, he might be called to an account for his conduct; but few instances of it occur in the annals of Rome. Bravery does not extirpate credulity, nor does greatness of mind obliterate the fictions of ignorance. Though a nation of intrepid warriors, the Romans were credulous and superstitious. Hence to avert a plague, to remove some dreadful calamity, or to stop the progress of an invading enemy, they some times named a Dictator to drive a nail into the temple of Jupiter, which trivial and absurd ceremony they thought possessed these virtues. They sometimes too appointed a Dictator to hold the comitia, or to celebrate public festivals, and once to choose Senators. But for these purposes, except on particular occasions, the state had seldom recourse to the election of that magistrate.

Dies, ei, m. & f. a day, or that space of time which elapses from the first appearance of light in the morning, till the return of darkness at night. It is more generally used to denote the time the sun is visible, or above the horizon, which strictly speaking constitutes a solar day. The term has frequently a more extended signification, and includes the night. This forms the Astronomical day, and has also been called the Natural or Civil day. It exceeds the Siderial day, or a complete revolution of the earth on its axis, by three minutes and fifty-six seconds. Different nations begin the day at different times. Among the Romans the natural day began when the sun first appeared above the horizon, which was called the first hour, and ended with that luminary disappearing, which was the twelfth hour. This mode of dividing that space of time during which the sun is visible into twelve parts, though still followed in Turkey, must have been attended with great inconvenience. The hours thus varied with the length of the day and those of the night were subject to the same alteration. Besides, the hours of these two portions of time could be equal only twice a year, viz: at the Equinoxes, (See Hora.) The civil day

began at midnight, when the third watch commenced. With us, and most of the nations of Europe, the day is reckoned from midnight to midnight. The Jews began their day at sun-setting, and like the Romans divided it into twelve hours; and the night with them also consisted of twelve hours. It may not be improper to observe that astronomers generally compute from noon to noon, reckoning in a numeral succession from one to twenty-four hours, and not by two twelves agreeably to common usage.

Dis, Itis, the god of riches, Pluto.

Divico, ðnis, a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii, who commanded the army in the war against Cassius, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Cæsar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, (*Saone*,) and he had attacked and killed a great part of the other fourth.

Divitiacus, i, a nobleman of the Ædui, who had great influence with Cæsar, in consequence of his steady attachment to the Romans.

Druides, um, v. *Druïdæ*, arum, (a term of doubtful etymology), Druids, the priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences, and what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes of any note, the Druids and Equites, of which that of the Druids was the more illustrious. Their authority in many instances, surpassing that of the nobles, it is not surprising that they were, in general, sons of the first families. The worship and sacrifices of these priests were performed in deep groves, chiefly under an oak, which was their favorite tree. It was reckoned unlawful to commit any of their doctrines to writing; hence, many of their peculiar tenets are now unknown. It is generally supposed they believed in the immortality of the soul, and also the metempsychosis. Of natural philosophy, astronomy, arithmetic, and botany, it cannot be doubted their knowledge was very considerable. To the study of rhetoric they paid great attention, and to the charms of their eloquence, much of the admiration and power which they enjoyed, may be justly ascribed. Britain was, according to Cæsar, the great school of the Druids, whose chief settlement was Anglesey, called *Mona* by Tacitus. The natives of Gaul and Germany, who wished to be thoroughly versant in the mysteries of

Druidism, resorted to this island to complete their studies. At what time the Druids were wholly suppressed in Britain, is uncertain. But from the introduction of Christianity, their power and influence began to decline. It is worthy of remark, that some of their superstitious doctrines, and modes of predicting future events, are not, at this day, entirely forgotten in many parts of the island.

Dubis, is, m. the *Doux*, a river of Gallia, (*France*), which originates in a small lake near mount Jura, and after a southwest course of sixty leagues, falls into the Arar, (*Saone*), near to Cabillonum, (*Chalons*.)

Dumaōrix, Igis, one of the Ædūi, and brother of Divitiācus. He persuaded the noblemen of Gallia, (*France*), not to go with Cæsar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. His character will be found in B. G. I. 18.

Durocortōrum, i, n. the capital of the Remi, now called *Rheims*, on the *Vesle*, one of the branches of the river *Axōna*, (*Aisne*.)

E.

Eburōnes, um, (*Eburōnes*, in Greek), a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territories lay on both sides of the river Mosa, (*Mase*, or *Meuse*), at its junction with the Sabis, (*Sambre*.) On their being dispossessed, they were succeeded by the Tungri. They were under the vassalage of the Treviri. Cæsar attempted to extirpate this nation; but this barbarous design, even from his own account, he was unable to carry into full effect.

Ebuovices, um, a people of Gallia, (*France*), on the left bank of the Sequāna, (*Seine*.) The Lexovii were between them and the sea. Their chief city was at first called Mediolanum, and afterwards Ebuovices, now *Evreux*.

Elusates, ium, a people of Aquitania, who lived on the river Atur, (*Adour*), whose principal city was Elusa, æ, f. (*Euse*.)

Equites, (from *equus* and *eo*), cavalry. Of these the number belonging to each legion was 300, called *justus equitatus*, or *ala*. They were divided into ten *turmae*, or troops of thirty each; and each *turma* into three *decuriæ*, or bodies of ten men. The office of the Equites at first was to serve in the army. They were so-

lected both from the patricians and plebeians; they were required when chosen, to be 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of 400 sestertia, (\$15,472.) See Gr. App. V.

Eratosthènes, is, a native of Cyrene, (Cyræneus,) the scholar of Callimæchus, and of Aristo of Chios, and the second who was intrusted with the Alexandrian library, devoted his time to criticism and philosophy. He was eminent as a poet and mathematician, but more distinguished as an astronomer and geographer. He died in the year 194 B. C. in the 82d year of his age. B. VI. Ch. 24.

Essui, ðrum, supposed to be also called **Saii, ðrum**, a people of Gallia, whose territories lay on the Olæna, (*Orne*), adjoining to the Diablintes and Aulerici Eburðnes.

Esubii, ðrum. This word occurs only in B. G. III. 7, where the readings are very different. Some copies have Esubios, or Eusubios, and others Lexuvios. The Greek has Unellos, to which Dr. Clarke, in a note, seems to give the preference, although he has retained Eusubios in the text.

Evocati, (from *evoco*, to call out,) veteran soldiers, who had served out their time and received their discharge, but who were sometimes again *called out* into public service. This class were highly respected, and were exempted from the drudgery of military service to which the other soldiers were subjected.

Excubiæ, arum, watches either by day or night. **Vigiliæ**, watches by night only. These were relieved at the end of every three hours; hence the night, from sunset till sunrise, was divided into four watches, called the *first, second, third, and fourth*. See Gr. App. I.

Exercitus, ðs, (from *exerceo*, to exercise,) an army, a body of men trained to, or *exercised* in military service. (*Agmen*, from *ago*, an army on the march, or in marching order. *Acies*, an army drawn up in a *line*, or in battle array.) A consular army consisted of two Roman legions, (See *Legio*), with the proper number of cavalry, and two legions of the allies with their cavalry, making in all about 20,000 men, or in the time of Polybius, 18,600

F.

Fabius, i, (Caius,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Fabius, i, (Quintus Fabius Maximus) a Roman consul who defeated the Avernî and Rutêni.

Funditores, um, (from *funda*, a sling.) Slingers, a class of warriors usually joined with the *Velites*, but not properly a part of them. They were armed with slings and stones, or bullets of lead, which from practice they threw with great precision and with so much force that neither buckler nor head-piece could resist their impetuosity. They were generally obtained from the Balearic Isles, Achaia, Crete, Arabia, &c., the Balearians being considered the best. See *Velites*.

G.

GALBA, æ, the name of a branch of the Sulpicii, v. Sulpitii, or, according to others, the surname of the founder of that tribe.

Galba, æ, the king of the Suessiones at the time Cæsar invaded Gaul. On account of his knowledge and love of justice, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces raised by the Belgian states, against the power of Rome, in the second year of the Gallic war.

Galba, æ, (Sergius) was the son of C. Galba, and grandson of Servius, or Sergius Galba, a celebrated orator and the first distinguished character of that family. He held the rank of lieutenant in Cæsar's army during the Gallic war, and afterwards joined the conspiracy, which the Republican party formed against the life of that ambitious and unprincipled general.

Galea, a helmet, a defensive piece of armor, made of brass or iron, which came down to the shoulders but left the face uncovered.

Gallia,* æ, now *France*, (See the map,) was an extensive and populous country of Europe, bounded on the north by the British Channel, on the east by the Rhine, Mount Jura and the Alps; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. In the time of Cæsar it was divided into three parts; Gallia Belgica, or the country of the BELGÆ (now *Belgium*) occupying the northern part; Gallia Celtica, or the country of the CELTÆ, or Celts, by far the largest, and occupying the middle portion; and AQUITANIA, lying between the Garumna (*Garonne*,) and the Pyrenees,—much smaller than either of the others. Adjoining Gaul on the east, and separated from it by Mount Jura,

* Cæsar does not use this term always in precisely the same sense. In B. I. Ch. 1, it means the whole of Gaul not then subject to the Romans; and in the same chapter it is used to denote the central division, or that possessed by the Celts. It is used in the same restricted sense, B. III. Ch. 2.

lay **HELVETIA**, (now part of *Switzerland*,) extending from Mount Jura to the Rhine, on the east; and from Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*) and the Rhone on the south, to the Rhine on the north. On the south and eastern border of Gallia lay what was called **PROVINCIA**, the Roman Province. (See *Provincia*.) Each of these great divisions contained within them numerous nations or tribes, all living under their respective kings or chiefs, all of which were finally brought under subjection to the Romans. The whole of this extensive country was called by the Romans *Gallia Transalpina*, Gaul beyond the Alps, to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which they called *Gallia Cisalpina*.

In the 27th year before the Christian æra, and twenty years after the conquest of Gaul was completed by C. Julius Cæsar, Augustus Cæsar made a new division of the whole, including *Provincia Romana* and *Helvetia*, into four grand divisions, in which more attention was paid to equality in the extent of the provinces than to the nations that inhabited them. *Aquitania* was extended northward and eastward to the Liger, (*Loire*,) *Gallia Belgica* on its eastern border was extended southward, taking in part of *Gallia Celtica*, and the whole country of the *Helvetii*. These four divisions were *Gallia Belgica*, *Gallia Celtica*, *Aquitania*, and *Gallia Narbonensis* (formerly *Provincia*, or *Provincia Romana*). These four divisions were again subdivided into seventeen provinces in all. And it is this division which is exhibited in the maps of ancient geography commonly in use. In the map accompanying this work, the division of the country in the time of Cæsar, and the names by which these divisions were then known, have been preferred as more suitable for such a work as this.

The whole country of Gaul from the time of its conquest by Cæsar, 47 years B. C., remained subject to the Romans, and a part of their vast empire for five hundred and fifty years. On the final dismemberment of that empire, Gaul being conquered by the Franks, (or Freemen,) a confederacy of warlike nations bordering on the Rhine, was from them called France about the beginning of the sixth century.

Galli, ðrum, the Gauls, or the inhabitants of Gaul. **Gallus**, i, a Gaul; one of the inhabitants of Gaul.

Gallus, i, (Marcus Trebius.) a prefect or Tribune of the soldiers, sent by P. Crassus, to forage among the *Curiosolitæ*.

Garites, um, a people of *Aquitania*, to the north of the *Ausci*.

Garumna, æ, m. the *Garonne*, a river of France, which rises in the valley of Arran, to the south of St. Bernard, runs with rapidity N. N. E. to Tolōsa, (*Toulouse*,) afterwards N. N. W. to Guienne, and falls into Oceanus Cantabricus, vel, Mare Aquitanicum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.) The general course of this river, which extends to about 250 miles, is northwest. After its junction with the Duranius, (*Dordogne*,) below Burdegalia, (*Bordeaux*,) it assumes the name of *Gironde*. According to Julius Cæsar's division of Gaul, the Garonne was the boundary of Aquitania, and separated that district from Gallia Celtica. It is navigable to Toulouse, and communicates with the Mediterranean by means of the Royal Canal, about 180 miles long, made through Languedoc by Louis XIV.

Genēva, æ, f. *Geneva*, a town at the western extremity of Lacus Lemānnus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) on the south bank of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) From Geneva towards Mount Jura, Cæsar raised a mole or rampart of earth, nineteen miles in length.

In modern times, Geneva is a considerable city, nearly two miles in circumference, and contains thirty thousand inhabitants. Besides being neatly built, it is strongly fortified, and remarkable for its beautiful situation, fine walks, and delightful prospects. Calvin spent the latter part of his life at Geneva, and his followers have, ever since, held the government of the city.

Germania, æ, f. *Germany*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*,) on the east by the Vistūla, (*Vistula*,) on the north by Codānus Sinus, vel, Mare Suevicum, (the *Baltic Sea*,) and on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and Oceanus Germanicus, (the *German Sea*.)

Germanus, i, pl. i, ōrum, the people of Germany; Germans.

Getūli, ōrum, (sing. Getūlus, i,) the inhabitants of Getulia, or Gætulia, æ, f. *Biledulgerid*, a large country of Africa, to the south of Mauritania and Numidia. It formed part of the kingdom of Massinissa. Sallust, from books written in the Punic language which belonged to Hiempsal, gives the following character of the Getuli and Libyes:—"Africa was at first possessed by the Getulians and Libyans, a savage and untutored people, who lived on the flesh of wild beasts, or grass of the field, like cattle; subject to no established customs, laws or government, a race of wanderers, who had no settled habitation, and who lay down to rest wherever night overtook them."—*Sal. Bel. Jug.* 18.

Gladius, i, a sword. The Roman sword was short, straight, and heavy, both for cutting and thrusting. It was worn on the right

side, so as in drawing not to interfere with the shield. The long sword of the cavalry was curved, and was worn on the left side. Gorduni, *ōrum*, a people of the northern part of Gallia Belgica, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay along the sea-coast, to the north of the Morini.

Graiocēli, *ōrum*, an ancient nation of Gaul, whose territories seem to have been adjacent to those of the Centrōnes and Caturiges, a people who lived among the Alps.

Grudii, *ōrum*, a neighboring nation to the Gorduni. Their country was bounded on the north by the mouths of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*.)

H.

Harudes, *um*, a people of Germania, (*Germany*,) on the north bank of the Danubius, (*Danube*,) towards the source of that river.

Hastati, *ōrum*, the name given to the first rank of the Roman legion (*See Legio*.)

Helvetia, *æ*, f. *Switzerland*, a country of a triangular form, bounded on the north by the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and Lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake of Constance*,) which separate it from Vindelicia and Germania, (*Germany*;) on the south by the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) and Lacus Lemanus, (*the Lake of Geneva*,) which divides it from Provincia Romana; and on the west by Mount Jura which protected them from the Gauls. Hence it is manifest that Helvetia was of less extent than Switzerland. Cæsar (B. G. I. 1,) seems to consider the Helvetii as Gauls. In Lib. I. cap 24, he says, *Helvetii—phalange factâ*, by which is to be understood simply, that they fought in close order, not that they drew up their troops precisely in the form of the Macedonian Phalanx, so celebrated in ancient history.

Helvetii, *ōrum*, the people of Helvetia; the Helvetians.

Hercynia, *æ*, f. a very extensive forest of Germany, the breadth of which, according to Cæsar, was nine days journey, and its length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Namnètes, and Raurāci, along the Danubius, (*Danube*,) to the country of the Daci and Anartes; then turning to the north, it spread over many large tracts of land, and is said to have contained many different animals, unknown in other countries, of which Cæsar describes two or three kinds. Since the other forests of Germany were only branches of the Hercynian, some writers have considered it as covering nearly the whole of that

extensive territory. As the country became more inhabited, the grounds were gradually cleared, and few vestiges of the ancient forest remain in modern times.

Hiberna, *δρμ*, winter quarters. The wars of the Romans were prosecuted chiefly in the summer. When the weather and the state of the country became unfavorable to military operations the troops were withdrawn from the field, and led into winter quarters, (*hiberna*.) These were strongly fortified and furnished with every accommodation, like a city, containing storehouses, (*armaria*,) workshops, (*fabrica*,) an infirmary, (*valetudinarium*,) &c. Hence, from them many towns in Europe, and particularly in England, are supposed to have had their origin. This appears to be indicated by the terminations *cester*, or *chester*, from *castra*.

Hibernia, *æ*, *f.* *Ireland*, a considerable island in *Mare Atlanticum*, (the *Atlantic Ocean*.) It is washed on the east by *Oceānus Verginius*, (*St. George's Channel*,) which separates it from England; on the north by *Mare Hibernicum*, (*Irish Sea*,) which divides it from Scotland; and on all other parts by *Mare Atlanticum*, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) of which *St. George's Channel*, and the *Irish Sea*, form but very small parts.

Hiberni, *δρμ*, the inhabitants of Hibernia.

Hispania, *æ*, *f.* *Spain*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by *Fretum Gaditanum*, or *Herculeum*, (the *Strait of Gibraltar*;) on the east by the Mediterranean, which was known among the Romans by the appellation of *Nostrum Mare*, and among the Greeks, of *Mare Internum*; on the north by the *Pyrenæi Montes*, (*Pyrenees*,) which separate it from *Gallia*, (*France*,) and *Oceānus Cantabricus*, (the *Bay of Biscay*;) on the west by *Lusitania*, (*Portugal*, included in *Hispania Ulterior*,) and *Mare Atlanticum*, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) which the Greeks called *Mare Externum*. Its greatest length, from east to west, is 600 miles, and its greatest breadth 550. The superficial contents of this country are about 148,000 square miles. Spain, including Portugal, was, by the Romans, divided into two parts, *Hispania Citerior*, (*Nearer Spain*,) and *Hispania Ulterior*, (*Farther Spain*;) hence, *duæ Hispaniæ*, the two Spains, or *Hispaniæ*, Spains. The former, or northern, comprehending an extent of country equal to three-fourths of modern Spain, the latter, or southern, the rest of the country. These two divisions were sometimes governed by proconsuls, but more commonly by prætors.

In the reign of Augustus, *Hispania Citerior* was, from *Tarræco*. its principal city, called *Tarraconensis*, and *Hispania Ulterior*

was divided into *Lusitania* and *Bætica*. The former appellation was derived from the Lusitani, the most powerful of the nations who inhabited that country, and the latter, from Bætis, the *Guadalquivir*, a very large river, which watered that province.

Hispani, ὄρουμ, the people of Hispania.

Hora, ἡ, f. an hour. Among the Romans it was the twelfth part of the day. The first hour commenced with the rising of the sun, and the twelfth ended with his setting. It is manifest that the portion of time denominated an hour by them, was constantly changing, and was of equal length to our hour only at the equinoxes. At these two periods of the year, and at them only, their first hour corresponded to our 7 o'clock in the morning; the second to eight, third to 9, fourth to 10, and fifth to 11; but their sixth hour or noon (meridies) coincided exactly with our 12 o'clock noon, or mid-day throughout the whole year. Their 7th then answered to our 1 in the afternoon, 8th to 2, 9th to 3, 10th to 4, 11th to 5, and 12th to 6. At the summer solstice, or longest day, the sun rises at Rome a few minutes past 4 o'clock, and sets the same number of minutes before 8, consequently their hour is, at that time, nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ longer than ours, and at the winter solstice it will be as much shorter.

I.

Iccius, ἰ, m. one of the ambassadors whom the Rhemi sent to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Iccius, ἰ, (*sc. portus*), a harbor in the country of the Morini, in Gallia Belgica, which, according to some, was *Boulogne*, and, according to others, *Vissant*, or *Calais*. Ptolemy mentions it as a promontory, although it cannot be doubted that there was likewise a cognominal harbor. From his description, this seems to be the place which he had in view. It could not be *Calais*. Cæsar set out from Iccius Portus, when he sailed the second time for Britain.

Idus, uum, f. the Ides, one of the divisions of the Roman month. In March, July, and October, the Ides were on the 15th, and in the other months, on the 13th. Like the Kalends, and Nones, the Ides were reckoned backwards. (See Gr. App. I.)

Illyricum, (*Croatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Slavonia*), a country opposite to Italy, bordering on the Adriatic. It was bounded on the south by Macedonia; on the east by Mæsia and Pannonia; on the north by

Noricum; and on the west by Histia and Mare Adriaticum, vel Supërum, (the *Gulf of Venice*.)

Imanuentius, i, m. a Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

Impedimenta, ðrum, baggage; (from *impedio*, to hinder.) The heavier baggage of the Romans, such as tents, mills, &c. was carried on beasts of burden; sometimes, though more seldom, on baggage wagons, (*carri*.) Every thing else was carried by the soldiers themselves, each of whom usually carried provisions for fifteen days, usually corn, sometimes dressed food, a saw, a basket, a mattock or axe, a reaper's hook and leathern thong, a chain, a pot, usually three or four stakes, sometimes more, for the *vallum*, amounting in all, exclusive of armor, to 60 pounds; and under this load they commonly marched 20 miles a day, sometimes more.

Indutiomärus, i, a chief man among the Treviri, father-in-law to Cingetörix, who attacked Labiënus, but was repulsed, and slain.

Italia, æ, f. *Italy*, a large and celebrated country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Sicûlum, (the *Strait of Messina*,) which separates it from Sicily; on the northeast by Mare Adriaticum, or Supërum, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) which divides it from Græcia, (*Greece*,) now part of *Turkey in Europe*. The Alps, (*Alps*,) form the boundary between Italy and Germany on the north; and on the southwest it is washed by that part of the Mediterranean, formerly called Mare Tyrrhënum, Tuscum, or Infërum, now the *Tuscan Sea*. The Appeninus, (*Appenines*,) forms a ridge of mountains which extends from the Alps to Rhegium, (*Reggio*,) the whole length of the country. The sources of all the rivers in Italy are found in these mountains. Roma, (*Rome*,) for many years the seat of universal empire, was the capital of Italy. From it, the inhabitants of Italy were frequently called Romäni, a name originally given only to the natives of that city and its territory, which was long very small.

Itäli, ðrum, the people of Italia; Italians.

Itius Portus, a harbor in the country of the Morini, from which Cæsar sailed on his second expedition against Britain. See Iccius.

J.

JUGUM, i, a yoke. This consisted of two spears or pieces of wood set upright in the ground, a little space apart, over which a third was laid across the top, the whole resembling the Greek II.

Under this frame the soldiers of conquered armies were often obliged to pass naked, (*nudi*,) *i. e.* without their armor, which was previously laid down.

Jumenta, *ōrum*, beasts of burden, (horses, mules, asses, &c.) used by the Romans for carrying their heavier baggage. (See *Impedimenta*.)

Junius, *i*, (Quintus, *i*,) a Spaniard who was frequently sent by Cæsar to converse with Ambiorix.

Jura, *æ*, *m*, a chain of mountains which, extending from the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) to the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) separated Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) from that part of Gallia Celtica which the Sequani possessed, now called *Franche Comte*. Vosëgus, (*Vauge*,) is a branch, or an extension of Mount Jura.

Justus equitatus, the complement of cavalry attached to a Legion; three hundred in number, exclusive of the horsemen of the allies.

K.

KALENDÆ, or **Calendæ**, *arum*, *f*, the Kalends, the name given by the Romans to the first day of every month. A priest was appointed to give notice to the people of the change of the moon, or when the new moon was first visible. This term appears to be derived from the Greek verb *καλέω*, *I call*. (See *Gr. App. I*.)

L.

LABERIUS. (Quintus, *L. Durus*,) a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army. He was killed in Britain, B. G. V. 15.

Labienus, *i*, (Titus, *i*,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the Civil war he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda.

Latobrigi, *ōrum*, a people who appear to have been neighbors of the Helvetii Rauraci and Tulingi, but of whom little is known with certainty.

Legatus, *i*, *m*, a lieutenant-general, who was both appointed by, and acted immediately under, the consul, or Commander-in-chief. The number of these officers varied in proportion to the greatness or importance of the war. Each legion had at least one, often two. When separated from the main army, sent into win-

ter quarters, &c. the lieutenant-general, being the deputy of the commander, had the honor to be the highest officer.

At their first institution, the Legati were counsellors to the governors of provinces, and decided all causes of minor importance; but held no military rank. Hence the word primarily denoted an Ambassador. Their admission into the army naturally resulted from that place of intimacy and confidence. Under the emperors the term became a common appellation for all invested with the highest military command in foreign countries.

Legio, *ōnis*, f. a legion, or body of soldiers consisting of different numbers at different times. In the early part of the reign of Romulus, the legion contained 3,000 foot, and 300 horse, which he, on the increase of the citizens by the admission of the Sabines, raised to 4,000. To that number 1,000 was added during the war which Hannibal carried on in Italia, (*Italy*,) about 216 years B. C. but a reduction of 500 had taken place before the time Polybius wrote his history. Livy states that the legion consisted of 5,000 foot, and Vegetius, of 6,000 foot. It cannot be doubted that these historians recorded the exact number, which constituted a complete legion in their respective times. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, each cohort of three maniples, and each manipule of two centuries; and in the order of battle the troops were drawn up in three lines, first the *Hastāti*; second, the *Prīncipes*; and third, the *Triarii*. Those who formed the first line were called *Hastāti*, from their fighting with *Hasta*, a long spear, which was afterwards laid aside on account of its being inconvenient. They were the flower of the Roman youth. The second line consisted of the same number of maniples, but of men more advanced in life, and of greater military experience, who were called *Prīncipes*, probably from their being at one time the *first* line. Their arms were heavy. The *Triarii* made up the third line, and seem to have been a body of reserve. They were frequently, from *Pilum*, a javelin, called *Pilāni*, and the *Hastāti* and *Prīncipes*, *Antepilāni*, from being stationed before them. The *Velites* generally skirmished before the lines, sometimes between them, and appear to have been what the moderns call Irregulars. They had light armor, hence called *expediti*, *levis armaturæ*, &c. The archers and slingers were attached to this body. According to that historian, twenty *Velites* seem to have belonged to each manipule. They were, in battle, not formed into cohorts, or maniples, but fought in such parties and in such places as the commander judged most advantageous.

In the early ages of the Roman state, their army in battle order was drawn up, like the Macedonian phalanx, in a continued line. This fact rests on the authority of Livy. The disposition into three lines, and arranging in maniples at some distance from each other seems an improvement of later times. When the *Hastati* yielded to the superior force or bravery of the enemy, they fell back to the *Principes*, who filled up the spaces between the maniples, and with them they renewed the charge. If both were forced to give way, the *Triarii* came up, and a third attack was made on the enemy. Hence, *ad triarios ventum est*, it is come to the last push; matters are in the utmost danger. The cavalry fought on the wings, but their exact form or position is not certainly known. It probably did not differ very much from the practice of the moderns. If after the whole force was brought into action the enemy still prevailed, they of necessity submitted to a defeat.

All the cohorts of the legion were manifestly on an equal footing in the army of Cæsar, and no preference seems to have been either acknowledged or claimed. The only vestige of the ancient division was the officers retaining their former appellations, as *Primus hastatus*, *Primus pilus*, &c. Cæsar frequently kept the third line as a body of reserve.

Lémanus (Lacus), the *Lake of Geneva*, is a most beautiful expanse of water, in the form of a crescent, the convex side of which is upwards of fifty-four miles long. Its hollow side is towards Switzerland, and its greatest breadth measures about twelve miles. The Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) descending from the Alps, traverses the whole length of the lake, and renders the water at its entrance turbid, on account of the quantity of earth and mud brought down from these steep mountains. Like the other waters and lakes of Switzerland, for nearly an hour in the evening, after the sun is hid behind Mount Jura, it shines with a splendor resembling burnished gold, by the reflection of the solar rays from the Glaciers.

Léponti, ðrum, a people of the Alps, near the source of the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) on the south of that river.

Levæci, ðrum, a people in the northern part of Gallia Belgica, on the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*,) between the Nervii and Grudii. The Centrones, Grudii, Levæci, Pleumosii, and Gordani. were vassals of the Nervii. B. G. V. 39.

Leuci, ðrum, a Belgic nation who lived between the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) near the source of that river.

Lexovii, *ſtrum*, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose country was bounded on the north by the Sequana, (*Seine*,) and on the west by Fretum Gallicum, or, Britannicum, (the *English Channel*.)

Liger, *ſſis*, or *Ligēſis*, is, *m.* the *Loire*, a large river of Gaul, which takes its rise in the country of the Helvii, runs N. N. W. and after a course of 200 miles, falls into Oceānus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) According to the division of Gaul made by Augustus, the Loire was the northern boundary of Aquitania.

Lingōnes, *um*, a people of Gaul whose territories included Mount Voſegus, (*Vauſe*,) conſequently the ſources of the rivers Moſa, (*Meuſe*,) and Matrōna, (*Marne*.) Their chief town was Andomadānum, or Andomatūnum, afterwards Lingōnes, now *Langres*.

Liscus, *i*, one of the Supreme magiſtrates of the Ædui, who along with Divitiācus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Cæſar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumnōrix.

Lituſ, *i*, a clarion, bent a little at the end like an augur's ſtaff. It was uſed for the cavalry. The *tuba* was ſtraight and employed by the infantry. The *cornu* was bent almoſt round. The *buccina* was commonly uſed for changing the watches.

Lorica, *æ*, a coat of mail, generally made of leather, covered with plates of iron in the form of ſcales, or iron rings twiſted within one another like chains. It is alſo uſed to denote a battlement, or defence of towers and walls, conſtructed of ſtone or of hurdles.

Lucinius, *i*, (*Quintus*, *i*), a centurion of the firſt rank, who was killed in attempting to reſcue his ſon when ſurrounded by ſome of the troops of Ambſſix, after that king had treacherouſly perſuaded Aurunculeius Cotta and Q. Titurius Sabinus, lieutenants, with the army which they commanded, conſiſting of one legion and five cohorts, to leave their winter-quarters among the Eburōnes.

Lugotōrix, *Igis*, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent*;) ſome copies read Cingetōrix (B. G. V. 22).

Lutetia, *æ*, *f.* Lutetia the capital of the Parisii, (*Paris*, now the capital of France,) was originally a ſtreſſ on a ſmall iſland in the Sequana, (*Seine*.) There are two other iſlands in the Seine at Paris covered with buildings, and connected with each other and the town, by means of bridges. Paris, ſituated in a plain on both ſides of the Seine, is of a circular form, and upwards of eleven miles in circumference. It contains many ſtately edifices, and the fineſt collections of medals, ſtatues, and paintings, as the

world. Every thing excellent in Rome, and in the other cities of Italy, has been conveyed to Paris to enrich these collections and to adorn the city.

M.

MAGETOBRIA, æ, f. a city of Gallia, (*France*), at which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. This victory put the country under his dominion.

Mandubratius, i, one of the nation of Trinobantes, who, on his father's being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Cæsar then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Manilius, (Lucius, i,) a proconsul, who was obliged to fly from Aquitania, with the loss of all his baggage.

Manilius, i, (Tuscūlus,) one of the conspirators against Cassius Longinus, Proprætor of Farther Spain.

Manipulus, i, (See *Legio*.)

Marcomāni, or Marcomanni, ōrum, a people of Germania, (*Germany*), whose territories were bounded on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*), and on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*), corresponding to part of the modern *Circle of Swabia*. They afterwards expelled the Boii, and took possession of their country now called *Bohemia*.

Mare Nostrum, the *Mediterranean Sea*, to which the Romans gave this name, from its bounding their native country, Italia, (*Italy*), on three sides. By the Greeks it was called Mare Internum; and the *Atlantic Ocean*, Mare Externum. In Scripture, this collection of water is denominated the *Great Sea*, which, though of small extent, when compared with the Pacific Ocean, &c. is the largest inland sea in the world. The modern appellation is manifestly derived from its situation, being wholly surrounded by land, except the narrow strait of Gibraltar, which connects it with the Atlantic Ocean.

The length of the Mediterranean is about 2,300 miles, and its breadth varies from 900 to 300 miles. Tides are scarcely known in this sea, except in the *Gulf of Venice*, and on the coast of *Tripoli*. There is a constant influx into the Mediterranean, both from the Atlantic and Pontus Euxinus, (the *Black Sea*.) That part of it which is east of the Archipelago, or of the island *Candia*, is called the Levant.

The principal islands in the Mediterranean, are the *Baleares*,

(*Majorca and Minorca*,) Sardinia, (*Sardinia*,) Corsica, (*Corsica*,) Sicilia, (*Sicily*,) separated from Italia, (*Italy*,) by Fretum Siculum, (the *Strait of Messina*,) Melita, (*Malta*,) and Creta, (*Candia*,) In the Levant, besides some other islands of less extent, are Rhodos, (*Rhodes*,) and Cyprus, (*Cyprus*,)

Matrōna, æ, f. the *Marne*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) which formed part of the ancient boundary between Gallia Belgica and Gallia Celtica. It takes its rise at Sangres, runs northwest to Châlons, then westward, passes by Meaux, becomes navigable at Vitry, and at Charenton, a little above Paris, falls into the Sequana, (*Seine*,) after a course of about ninety-two leagues.

Mediomatrices, um, vel. i, ðrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) and the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) The Treviri were their neighbors on the north. Their chief town was Divodurum, afterwards Mediomatrici, now Metz. At one period they were a powerful nation, and possessed a very extensive country. But the conquest of Gallia, (*France*,) by the Romans, destroyed their power, and confined them to a narrow territory.

Meldi, ðrum, a people whose country was included between the rivers Matrōna, (*Marne*,) and Sequana, (*Seine*,) The modern town, Meaux, is of some note, and contains 6,000 inhabitants. The Meldi mentioned B. V. 5, were a Belgic tribe living on the Scaldis (*Scheldt*,)

Menapii, ðrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was separated from Insula Batavorum, (*Holland*,) by the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) The Toxandri were their neighbors on the south.

Mensis, is, m. a month; a term originally employed to denote that portion of time which elapses between two successive changes of the moon. (See Gr. App. I.)

Messala, æ, (Marcus,) a noble Roman who was consul with Marcus Puppius Piso, in the 60th year B. C.

Mettius, i, (Marcus, i,) a man allied to Ariovistus by the rights of hospitality, whom Cæsar joined in commission with C. Valerius Procillus, on an embassy to that king. As soon as they entered his camp, without suffering them to speak, Ariovistus commanded both to be put in irons. He thrice drew lots to determine whether they should be burned alive upon the spot, or reserved for another time. The lots being always favorable, their lives were preserved. After the defeat of Ariovistus, Cæsar himself in the pursuit fell in with Procillus, and Mettius was likewise recovered and brought back to the Roman camp.

- Minucius, i,** (Lucius M. Basilius,) one of Cæsar's officers. To C Fabius, and L. Minucius Basilius, he gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Rhemi.
- Mona, æ, f.** the *Isle of Man*, an island in the Irish Sea, nearly equidistant from England, Scotland, and Ireland. It is thirty miles long, and eight broad. The soil is fertile, the air salubrious, and the inhabitants live in general to a great age. The sovereignty of this island formerly belonged to the Dukes of Athol; but it was sold in 1765 to the crown. Tacitus and others call Anglesy, Mona, but Cæsar is more correct.
- Morini, ðrum,** a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay along the coast opposite to Cantium, (*Kent.*)
- Moritasgus, i,** the king of the Senones, at Cæsar's arrival in Gallia, (*France.*)
- Mosa, æ, f.** the *Mase*, or *Meuse*, a river of Gallia, (*France,*) rising a little to the west of Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge,*) runs north, passes a number of celebrated towns, receives, at Namur, the Sabis, (*Sambre,*) joins the Vahâlis, (*Wahal*, or, *Waal,*) below the island of Bommel, and falls into the German Sea. The course of this river, which extends to 160 leagues, is north.
- Munatius, i,** (Lucius M. Plancus,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, who, with Caius Trebonius, had the command of three legions which were settled in Belgium, during the winter.
- Muscûlus,** a species of moveable shed or pent-house on wheels, shaped like an arched wagon, usually sent before the large towers to prepare the way for their advance, by cutting down trees, filling up ditches, removing obstructions, and making a smooth and solid road even up to the enemy's walls.

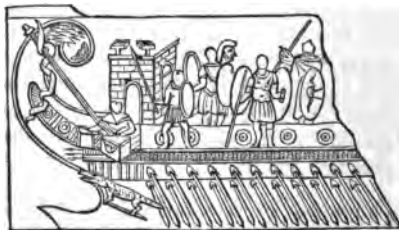
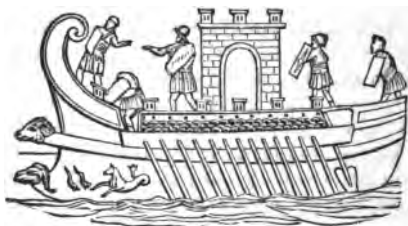
- N.

- NAMEIUS, i,** a nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Cæsar, to request permission to march through the Roman province.
- Namnètes, or, Nannètes, um,** a people of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the north bank of the Ligêris, (*Loire,*) where it falls into the sea.
- Nantuates, um,** a people, whose country lay on the south of Lacus Lemânus, (*the Lake of Geneva.*)
- Narbo, ðnis. f.** *Narbonne*, a town of Provincia, to the south of the river Atax, (*the Aude,*) near the sea-coast, which afterwards gave name to that division of Gallia, (*France,*) called Narbonensis.

Nasus, m, the brother of Cimberius, who commanded the 100 Cantons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the Rhenus (*Rhine*,) with the design of crossing that river.

Naves, iam, (sing. *navis*,) ships. The kind of ships used by the Romans were chiefly two, viz: *Naves Longæ*, ships of war, and *Naves Onerariæ*, ships of burden. The *Naves longæ* were so called because they were of a longer shape than the others. They were commonly impelled by oars, and were distinguished by a helmet at the mast head. They were also ranked as *birèmes*, *tri-rèmes*, *quadrèmes*, and *quinquirèmes*, according as they had two, three, four, or five rows or tiers of oars. According to the generally received opinion, these rows or tiers ran from the prow to the stern, as exhibited in the following wood cuts, taken from antiques, the first of which has one row and the second two. Over these were erected decks on which sometimes towers were constructed, from which the enemy might be more conveniently and successfully assailed.

NAVES LONGÆ.



The *Naves Onerariæ*, or ships of burden, were broader and rounder than the vessels of war. They were impelled by sails

and distinguished by a basket, (*corbis*,) suspended from the mast head; whence they were sometimes called *corbitæ*.

Naves Actuariæ were ships contrived for lightness and expedition. They had but one bank of oars, or at most two, on each side. They were of different kinds, distinguished by different names; as, *Celoces*, *Lembi*, *Phaseli*, &c., but the most remarkable were the *Naves Liburnæ*, a kind of light galleys used by the Liburni.

Nemētes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, probably a tribe of the Germans, on the west bank of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) between the Tribœci and Vangiōnes. Their principal city was *No-viomagus*, (*Spire*.)

Nervii, ōrum, a powerful and warlike nation of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on both sides of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*,) near the source of that river, afterwards *Hainault*, and *Nord*. They revolted and attacked the Roman troops under Cæsar; but were totally routed. Their mode of defence against the attacks of cavalry was simple and effectual. The different readings B. G. Lib. II. 17, are numerous, yet the idea conveyed by all is not very materially different. In the place where the Nervii wished to raise a barrier, they, probably at a considerable distance from each other, half cut two rows of young trees, so that they continued to grow, bent them longitudinally, and gave their branches a lateral direction. The middle space between these rows was planted or filled up with briars and thorns, which intermixing with the trees that formed the outside of the fence, rendered the whole so close and impervious, that it not only stopped the progress, but even the view of the invaders.

After *ramis* the common text has *enatis*, which Oudendorp and others reject, as a mere gloss, unnecessary to the sense. It is also wanting in the best MSS.

Nonæ, arum, f. the Nones, the second division of the Roman month; so called, it is supposed, because from that day to the Ides nine days intervened. In the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh, and in the other months on the fifth. (See Gr. App. I.)

Noreia, æ, f. a city of Noricum, the capital of the Taurisci. B. I. 5.

Noricum, i, n. or Noricus ager, a large country of Germany, between Italia, (*Italy*,) and the Danubius, (*Danube*). It comprehended the greater part of Austria, all Salzburg, Stiria, and Carinthia. Their chief city was Noreia, which was besieged by the

Boii, in the inroad which they had made upon Noricum, before they entered into alliance with the Helvetii.

Norici, ðrum, the people of Noricum.

Noviodanum, i, n. (B. G. II. 15,) a town of the Suessiōnes, (*Soissons*, or *Noyons*.) Another of the Ædui, (B. G. VII. 55,) now *Nevers*, on the banks of the Ligēris, (*Loire*). And a third belonged to the Bituriges, (B. G. VII. 14,) now *Neuvy* or, *Neufry*, about twenty miles west from *Nevers*.

Numidia, æ, f. *Algiers*, a country of Africa, bounded on the north by the Mediterranean; on the west by Mauritania, (*Morocco* and *Fex*;) on the south by Gætulia; and on the east by Africa Propria, (*Tunis*.)

Numidæ, ærum, and, Nomādes, um, the inhabitants of Numidia, described by Sallust, in the Jugurthan war, as faithless, unsteady, and fond of revolutions in the state.

O.

OCELUM, i, n. *Oux*, or *Exilles*, a town on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpina, Citerior, or Togata, in Alpes Graiæ.

Octodurus, i, (Octodōrus, in Greek,) *Martigny*, a town, or village, of the Verāgri, (*Vicus Veragrōrum*, Cæsar, B. G. III. 1,) on the *Drance*, near its junction with the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) at a considerable distance above the entrance of the latter into Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Orcynia, æ, f. a name given by Eratosthenes, and some other Greeks, to Hercynia Silva; which see.

Orgetōrix, Igis, was, according to Cæsar, the richest and most noble of the Helvetii. Prompted by a love of power, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles, and persuaded the people to quit their country. When his ambitious views were discovered by the state, he was obliged to answer to the charges preferred against him. Orgetōrix, by means of his vassals and debtors, rescued himself, from the hands of his judges, and escaped. But whilst the state was endeavoring to support its authority by force, he died, as was suspected, by his own hands.

Osismii, ðrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, one of the nations which went under the general name of *Civitates Armoricae*. Their country afterwards formed part of the province of *Bretagne*. It is now called *Finisterra*.

P.

PADUS, i, m. the *Po*, the largest river of Italy. anciently called *Eridānus*. The northern branches of the *Po*, descending from the Alps, render it largest in the warmest months of summer, by the melting of the snow towards the summit of these lofty mountains. It disembogues into *Mare Adriaticum*, or *Hadriaticum*, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) by seven mouths, of which two were formed by nature, the other five by art.

Pæmāni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the east bank of the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*.) They had the *Cæræsi* on the south, the *Treviri* on the east, and *Silva Arduenna* on the north.

Paludamentum, i, the military robe or cloak of the Roman commander; sometimes also worn by the chief officers. It was of a scarlet color, bordered with purple. The elevation of this upon a spear above the *Prætorium*, or general's tent, was often the signal given for commencing battle.

Parisii, ōrum, the inhabitants of *Lutëtia*, from whom it was afterwards called *Parisii*, now *Paris*, the capital of France. (See *Lutetia*.)

Passus, ūs, a pace, (two steps,) was reckoned nearly equal to five feet. (See *Gr. App. VI. 5*.) Of these 125 made a stadium, and 1000 made a mile; hence, *mille passuum*, a mile.

Pedius, i, (*Quintus*) a grandson of one of *Julius Cæsar's* sisters, was one of his lieutenant-generals in the Gallic war, and appointed in his will co-heir with *Octavius*, who had *Pedius* for his colleague in his first consulship. He passed a law, from him called *Lex Pedia*, declaring the death of *Julius Cæsar* to have been murder, and subjecting the assassin to capital punishment.

Peligni, ōrum, a people of Italy, whose country lay between the sources of the rivers *Sagrus*, (*Sangro*,) and *Aternus*, (*Pescara*.) both of which fall into the *Gulf of Venice*.

Petrosidius, i, (*Lucius*, i,) a standard bearer of the army which, under the command of *Q. Titurius Sabīnus* and *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, wintered among the *Eburōnes*. These troops were, in consequence of a stratagem of *Ambiōrix*, attacked by him on disadvantageous ground two miles from the camp, and almost wholly cut off. *Petrosidius* having, with a few of his men, returned to the camp, threw his standard within the rampart, and was killed fighting with great bravery before the fortifications.

Pictōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the south bank of the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) where it falls into the sea.

Pilani. (See *Legio*.)

Pirustæ, arum, a people of Illyricum, on the east coast of Mare Adriaticum, (*the Gulf of Venice*.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius Calpurnius, i,) Cæsar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinus Paulus, in the year of the city 696. In their consulship, Cicero was banished from Rome, and Clodius was supported by Piso, in procuring that disgraceful sentence, (B. G. I. 6.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius, i,) the grandfather of **Piso** above mentioned, was a lieutenant of Cassius, both of whom fell in an engagement with the Helvetii, (B. G. I. 12.)

Piso, ōnis, surnamed from his country, Aquitanus, a nobleman of Aquitania, whose father had been supreme magistrate in that country, and called *Friend* by the Romans, (B. G. IV. 12.)

Plancus, i, (L. Munatius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, to whom he gave the joint command with C. Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgica. After the death of Julius Cæsar, L. Munatius Plancus joined Antony and Lepidus. With the latter he was consul. He is said to have founded Lugdunum, (*Lyons*.)

Pleumosii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, supposed to have lived on the Scaldia, (*Scheldt*,) near the place where the city *Tournay* now stands.

Pluteus, i, a kind of moveable gallery on wheels, in form resembling the *Musculus*, (which see,) but used chiefly to protect the archers stationed in it, in order to clear the walls with their arrows, and so facilitate the approach of storming parties and the erection of scaling ladders.

Pompeius, i, (Cneius,) a Roman who was well skilled in the language of the Gauls, and acted as interpreter to Quintus Titurius. After the credulity of that lieutenant had placed himself and his men at the mercy of Ambiorix, he sent Cneius Pompeius to the king of the Eburōnes, begging him to spare their lives. (See *Titurius*.)

Præconinus, i, a lieutenant who was himself killed, and his army defeated at Apollonia.

Præfectus, i, an officer who commanded the allies, and who in the extent of his command resembled the legionary tribune. The commander of the cavalry of a legion was called *præfectus alæ*.

Prætor, ōris, m. a Prætor; (from *Præ* and *eo*,) literally, one who goes before. In the early ages of the Roman State, this term is

supposed by some to have been a general appellation of all the Roman Magistrates, afterwards of the general of the army; even the Emperors were ambitious to include it among their other titles. But the word commonly denoted a Roman judge who administered justice both among his fellow-citizens, and also among the foreigners who resided in Rome. In dignity the Prætor ranked next to the Consul. He had power to alter laws, repeal them, and enact new at pleasure.

Prætoria cohors, Prætorian cohort, a select band of troops forming the general's body guard.

Preciāni, ðrum, a people of Aquitania, who are supposed to have lived at the foot of the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*,) near Mare Cantabricum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.)

Primopilus, i, (sometimes *primus pilus*,) the chief centurion of the legion. This name belonged to the first centurion of the first manipule of the Triarii. He was entrusted with the eagle or main standard of the legion; in pay he ranked among the equites, and had a place in the council of war with the consul and tribunes.

Provincia Romana, the Roman Province; that part of Transalpine Gaul in the possession of the Romans previous to the conquests of Cæsar. It extended along the shore of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and was bounded on its northwest side by the Mount Cebenna, (or *Cevennes*,) and on the north, eastward, by the Ambani, Sequani, and Helvetii. In the new division of Gaul afterwards made by Augustus, its boundaries remained as before, but as all Gaul was now become a Roman Province it ceased to be distinguished by that name, and was called *Narbo-nensis*, from *Narbo* its principal city. (See *Narbo*.)

Pulſio, ðnis, (Titus, i,) a Roman centurion of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varēnus respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery without the fortifications. Nor was his rival for military fame, inferior to him either in bravery or generosity; B. V. Ch. 44. (See *Varenus*.)

R.

RAURACI, ðrum, a people of Gallia Celtica. on the northern extremity of Mount Jura. The Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) was their boundary on the east.

Remi, ðrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay to the north of the Matrōna, (*Marne*). Their chief town was *Durocor-wrum*, now *Rheims*.

Rhedōnes, um, a people of Gallia Cēlūca. The Rhedōnes were one of those nations reckoned among the *Civitates Armorica*. Their country is now called *Bretagne*.

Rhenus, i, m. the *Rhine*, a celebrated river of Europe, which takes its rise in Mount Adūla, (*St. Gothard*,) in the country of the Grissons, passes Lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake of Constance*,) and continues to run nearly west about 75 miles, when it reaches Basti. On leaving this city, it takes a northerly direction and becomes the boundary between France, or the Netherlands, and Germany, till it divides into two branches, which, with the German Sea, formed, what was anciently called, Insula Batavorum, (*Holland*, or the *United Provinces*.) After a course of 600 miles, and receiving several rivers on both banks, the Rhine discharges itself into that part of Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) called Oceānus Germanicus, (the *German Sea*.)

Rhodānus, i, m. the *Rhone*, a large and rapid river of Europe, which has its source in Mount la Fourche, near St. Gothard, in the canton of Uri, not more than two leagues south from that of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) passes Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) five leagues below which it disappears between two rocks for a considerable way, rises again, flows with great rapidity in a southern direction, and discharges itself by three mouths into that part of the Mediterranean formerly called Gallicus Sinus, (the *Gulf of Lyons*.) The course of the Rhone is about 400 miles, during which it falls 5,400 feet. In Strabo's time it was navigable a good way up; but its mouths are now so full of rocks brought down from the mountain by its impetuous current, that no ship can enter them. The Rhone is largest in summer, and is at its greatest height soon after the longest day. This is most probably occasioned by the heat of the sun melting part of the snow on the Alps during the summer months.

Roma, æ, f. *Rome*, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, stood on the banks of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. Romūlus, from whom the name is derived, laid the foundation of this city on Mons Palatinus, 15th April, 753 B. C. From a very small beginning it gradually increased, until its circumference, according to Pliny, was not less than twenty miles. After the lapse of many years, Rome became the capital of Italia. (*Italy*,) and, at the commencement of the Christian Era, the known world was in subjection to that gigantic power. It was divided into twenty-four regions or wards, had seven great, and thirteen smaller aqueducts, thirty-seven gates, and six hundred and forty-four tow-

ers n the walls. To ascertain its population when in the height of power, is perhaps impossible; but it could not fall much below four millions.

Roscius, i, (Lucius, i,) a lieutenant, to whom Cæsar gave the command of the third legion, which he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

Rufus, i, (P. Sulpicius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, to whom he gave the charge of the port in Gallia, (*France*,) from which he sailed for Britannia, (*Britain*,) and a garrison sufficient to protect it during his absence.

Rutēni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, on the river Tarnis, (*Tarne*.)

Rutilus, i, (M. Sempronius, i,) an officer of Cæsar, who had, with T. Labiēnus, the joint command of the two legions which that general ordered to march into the territories of the Sequāni.

S.

Sabinus, i, (Caius Calvisius,) an officer in Cæsar's army, whom he sent into Ætolia, in Græcia, (*Greece*,) with five cohorts and a few men.

Sabinus, i, (Q. Titurius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army. He, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, had the command of the troops which were stationed among the Menapii, and in other parts of Gallia Belgica. When in their quarters on the frontiers of the Eburōnes, the artful stratagem of Ambiorix, king of that tribe, to cut off these lieutenants and their two legions succeeded, through the credulity and obstinacy of Sabinus. A few of the private soldiers escaped the sword of the Gauls. (See *Cotta*.) This officer is sometimes called simply Titurius, or, Sabīnus.

Sabis, is, m. the *Sambre*, a river of Gallia Belgica, which has its rise in what is now called *Picardy*, runs northeast and falls into the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*,) near *Namur*.

Sagittarii, ōrum, archers; men who fought with bows and arrows, attached to the *velites*. (See *Legio*.) The best archers were the Cretans. The Romans did not use the bow in the early times of the republic, and when introduced they had scarcely any archers except those of the auxiliary troops.

Samarobrīva, æ, f. (*i. e.* the bridge of the Samāra,) *Amiens*, a town of Gallia Belgica, on the south bank of the river Samāra, (*Somme*.) It was afterwards called *Ambianum*, from its inhabitants; hence the present name.

Santones, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the north of the river Carantonus, (*Charente*.) Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Santones, now *Saintes*.

Scaldis, is, the *Scheld*, or the *Scheldt*, a river of Gallia Belgica, which takes its rise about fifteen miles south of Camaracum, (*Cambray*,) in the province of Picardy, runs north, and dividing into two branches, falls into the German Sea. Cæsar erroneously makes it a branch of the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) (B. G. VI. 33.)

Scorpiões, a species of military engine for throwing darts and javelins, similar to the Balista, or probably only another name for the same. (See *Balista*.)

Scutum, i. m. a shield; a part of the defensive armor of the Roman infantry, which they wore on their left arms to protect their bodies against the arrows, darts, and other missile weapons thrown by the enemy. It consisted of thin pieces of wood joined by plates of iron, and covered with thick skin or hide. The most common form was oval, extending to four feet in length and two and a half in breadth. When a soldier had not his shield he was said to fight *nudo corpore*.

Seduni, ōrum, a nation of Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) on the north bank of the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) above Lacus Lemanus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Sedusii, ōrum, a nation of Germany, on the northeast bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.) Their country was watered by the Mœnus, (*Maine*.)

Segonax, acis, one of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, (*Kent*,) at the time Cæsar invaded Britain.

Segontiaci, ōrum, a British nation on the south of the river Tamēsis, (*Thames*.) They appear to have been subject to Cassivellaunus, at the time Cæsar attempted to add this island to the Roman empire. (B. V. Ch. 21.)

Segusiāni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the west of the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*.) Their country was traversed by the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) towards the source of that river.

Senōnes, um, a warlike nation of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the Sequana, (*Seine*,) about 70 miles above Paris.

Septimius, i, (*Lucius, i*,) a tribune of the soldiers, sent along with Achilles, by Ptolemæus king of Egypt, to murder Pompey, in whose army he had formerly been a centurion.

Sequana, æ, the *Seine*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) has its source near Nevers in Bourgogne, runs in a northwest direction, and falls into that part of the Atlantic called Fretum Britannicum, (the *British Channel*,) at Havre de Grace. The course of this beautiful and picturesque river extends to 250 miles. Paris, the capital of France, originally a fort on a small island in the Seine, above 120 miles from the sea, now stands on both sides of this river, over which there are, in that city, 12 bridges.

Sequana, æ, f. a district of Gallia, (*France*,) bounded on the east by Mons Jura, (*Mount Jura*,) which separated it from the country of the Helvetii; on the north by Mount Vosegus, (*Vauze*,) which divided it from that of the Leuci; on the west by the country of the Ædui and Lingōnes; and on the south by that of the Ambarri and Allobroges.

Sequāni ōrum, (sing. Sequānus, i,) the people of Sequāna. This nation headed one of the factions of the Gallic states, and the **Ædui** the other.

Sesuvii, ōrum, (or **Sesovii**,) one of the Armoric states in Gaul, the situation of which is not known.

Sextius, i, (Publius S. Baculus,) a centurion of the first rank in Cæsar's army, in the Gallic wars.

Sextius, i, (Titus, i,) one of the three lieutenants whom Cæsar sent to augment his army, in the sixth year of the war in Gallia, (*France*.)

Sibutzātes, um, a people of Aquitania, whose country lay along the **Atur**, (*Adour*.) Of their history nothing is known.

Sigambri, ōrum, a German nation, who lived on the east bank of the Rhine, to the south of the river **Rura**, (*Roir*.)

Silānus, i, (Marcus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he ordered to levy troops for the war in Gallia, (*France*.)

Silius, i, (Titus, i,) an officer whom P. Crassus sent to the **Venēti**, to procure grain and forage with **Velanius**. But the **Venēti**, seized them in expectation of regaining their hostages by this measure.

Sotiates, ium, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the **Garumna**, (*Garonne*.) Their territories formed part of what was afterwards called **Novempopulāna**, bounded by the **Garonne**, **Pyrenees**, and **Bay of Biscay**.

Suessiōnes, **Suessōnes**, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country was bounded on the south by the **Matrōna**, (*Marne*.) Although a brave and powerful nation, they were obliged to submit to the arms of Cæsar.

Suevi, ōrum, a nation of Germania, (*Germany*,) who inhabited a large tract of country, **Suevia**, æ, f. lying between the **Albis**, (*Elbe*), and the **Vistūla**, (*Vistula*), on the northern side of **Silva**, **Hercynia**. They made many inroads on the Roman territories.

Sulpitius, i, (Publius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Q. **Tullius Cicēro**, and P. **Sulpitius**, were stationed among the **Ædui**, at **Cabillo**, v. **Cabillōnum**, (*Chalons*), and **Matisco**, (*Mascon*), on the **Arar**, (*Saone*.) These two officers were entrusted with the care of provisions.

T.

TAMESIS, or **Thamesis**, is, m. the *Thames*, one of the largest rivers of England, rises in Cotswold hills in the western extremity of Gloucestershire, runs eastward, and after passing through London, falls into the German Sea. With respect to commerce, this is the first river in the world. It is navigable about 130 miles, and the tide flows up as far as Richmond in Surrey, which taking the course of the river, is 70 miles.

Tarbelli. ōrum, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the sea-coast, from the **Pyrenæi Montes**, (*Pyrenees*), to the territories of the **Cocosātes**.

Tarusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania. The **Tarbelli** were between them and the **Bay of Biscay**.

Tasgetius, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Carnutes, whose fore fathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state.

Taximagulus, i, one of the four kings who reigned over Cantium. (*Kent.*) They seem to have all been under the power of Cassivellaunus.

Tectosages, um, and **Tectosagi**, ōrum, a very valiant people of Gallia, a branch of the Volcæ, near the Pyrenees. (*See Volcæ.*)

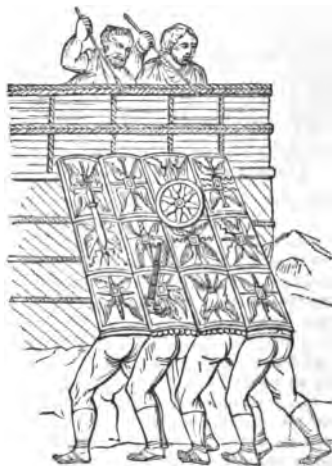
Tenchthēri, ōrum, a people of Germany, on the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*), south of the Sigambri.

Terrasidius, i, (*Titus*, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he sent into the country of the Esubii.

Testudo, Inis, f. I. A wooden tower used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers when employed in undermining the walls of a town, or in battering them with the ram, (*See Aries.*) It was erected of wood, and covered with hides, earth, or any other kind of substance which is with difficulty set on fire.

II. When the soldiers of a company advanced to an assault, they frequently stood close together, and formed a shade or screen of their shields, to protect their bodies against the missile weapons, thrown by the enemy from the walls. This defence they also called *Testudo*, from the resemblance which the locked shields had to the shell or covering of the tortoise, (*See the following wood cut,*) but it must not be confounded with the tower or *man telet* just described.

TESTUDO.



Tigurinus Pagus, one of the four cantons or districts, into which Helvetia (*Switzerland*), is divided according to Cæsar, compre-

- hending the modern cantons *Zurich*, *Schwitz*, *Schaffhausen*, and the lands of the *Abbey of St. Gal*.
- Tigurini**, ōrum, the people of Pagus *Tigurinus*.
- Titus**, i, a common prænomen among the Romans.
- Titurius**, i, (Quintus T. Sabinus,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, often called simply, *Titurius*, killed by *Ambiorix*. (See *Aurunculeius*.)
- Tolōsa**, æ, *Thoulouse*, or *Toulouse*, a town of Aquitania, beautifully situated on the north bank of *Garumna*. *Tolōsa* was one of the most flourishing cities of Gaul, afterwards the residence of a Roman colony, and, at a later period, the metropolis of the *Visigoths*.
- Tolosates**, ium, the inhabitants of *Tolōsa*.
- Trebius**, i, (Marcus T. Gallius,) an officer sent by Cæsar to the *Curiosolitæ*, to procure provisions.
- Treviri**, ōrum, or (sing. *Trevir*, Iri,) a nation of *Gallia Belgica*, between the *Mosella*, (*Moselle*,) and *Silva Arduenna*. Their chief city, *Augusta Trevirōrum*, now *Triers*, or *Treves*, stands on the east bank of the *Moselle*, over which it has a large bridge.
- Tribuni**, ōrum, (sing. *Tribūnus*, i,) militum, *Tribunes* of the soldiers; officers in the Roman army, who had the command of a division of a legion. To take care of the works and camp, to communicate the watchword to the guards, and to give judgment in certain cases, formed the duty of the military tribunes. *Romulus* first appointed the tribunes, to whom he gave that name from their being only *three* in number, one out of each *tribe*. But afterwards, each legion had six tribunes. The right of nomination belonged first to the kings, then to the consuls, or dictators, and, at a later period, to the people.
- Trinobantes**, um, a nation of ancient Britain, inhabiting the counties now called *Essex* and *Middlesex*. *Cassivellaunus* was their king at the time Cæsar invaded this island.
- Tulingi**, ōrum, a people of Germany, between the rivers *Danubius*, (*Danube*,) and *Rhenus*, (*Rhine*.)
- Turōnes**, um, or, i, ōrum, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, on the banks of the river *Lotre*, about 140 miles from the sea. Their name is perpetuated by the modern appellation of the country, *Touraine*, and their city *Tours*, anciently *Turōnes*.
- Turris**, is, a tower. The towers used in the Roman military works were of two kinds, the fixed and the moveable. The fixed towers were erected on the *agger*, or mound, and were raised sufficiently high to overlook and command the enemy's ramparts, and from them showers of arrows, darts, and other missiles were thrown by means of various engines. The moveable towers (See wood cut, next page,) were pushed forward on rollers or wheels fixed below. To prevent them from being set on fire they were covered with raw hides and pieces of coarse woollen cloth. They were of immense size, sometimes forty or fifty feet square, and higher than the walls, or even the towers of the city. When brought up against the walls, a place was seldom able to stand out long. Sometimes they were provided with a species of drop or platform, which being let down reached from the tower to the top of the wall and formed a species of bridge by which the assailants took possession of the walls.

TURRIS.



U.

Usii, ōrum, a people of Germany, whose territories were on the Rhine opposite to the Sigambri.

Unelli, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the northwest of what is now called *Normandy*. Their country was bounded on three sides by the sea. Their chief town was Coriallum, (*Gouril*.) Off the coast of the Unelli, lay the islands of Cæsarea, (*Jersey*,) Sarnia, (*Guernsey*,) and Reduna, (*Alderney*,) which have long been in possession of the British.

Usipètes, um, or Usipii, ōrum, a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.)

V.

VAHALIS, is, m. *Wahal*, or, *Waal*, the left branch of the Rhenus. (*Rhine*.) It joins the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) at the island of Voorn, and falls into the German sea below the Breil.

Valerius, i, (Caius V. Cabūrus,) a chief man among the Gauls in Provincia, whose original name appears to have been Cabūrus.

- On being made a Roman citizen, by C. Valerius Flaccus, he, as was usual, took the name of his patron.
- Valerius, i, (Caius, V. Flaccus,) a noble Roman, who conferred the freedom of the city on C. Valerius Cabūrus.
- Valerius i, (Caius V. Procillus,) the son of C. Valerius Cabūrus, was the chief man in Provincia. Cæsar, on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language, sent him and M. Mettius to hold an interview with Ariovistus, king of Germany. The German king imprisoned them both, but they were afterwards rescued by the Romans during the flight of their army.
- Vallum, the ramparts of a Roman encampment, composed of the earth dug out from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it to keep it together. (See *Castra*.)
- Vangiones, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the west bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.) They were originally from Germany, and, at one time, had probably lands on both sides of that river. Their chief town was Borbetomagus, now *Worms*.
- Velanius, i, (Quintus, i,) sent by Cæsar with Silius to procure corn from the Veneti, who detained them in order to receive the hostages which they had given to that general.
- Velauni, ōrum, a small tribe in Gallia Celtica, on the sources of the Ligēris. Their chief city was Anderitum, now *Javoli*, or *Javoux*.
- Velites, light-armed troops. They were equipped with bows, slings, seven javelins or spears with slender points like arrows, so that, when thrown, they bent, and could not easily be returned by the enemy; a spanish sword, having both edge and point; a round buckler (*parma*), about three feet in diameter, made of wood and covered with leather; and a helmet or casque for the head, generally made of the skin of some wild beast. When the army was drawn up in order of battle, the *velites* were placed in the spaces or intervals between the maniples, or else on the wings. (See *Legio*.)
- Velocasses. (See *Bellocasses*.)
- Veneti, ōrum, a nation in the west part of Gallia Celtica, whose chief town was Venetia. Their country lay on the sea coast, northwest from the mouth of the Liger, (*Loire*.)
- Veragri, ōrum, a people who lived in that part of Provincia, now called *Dauphine*, on the south bank of the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*), above Lacus Lemanus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)
- Verbigenus, i, (sc. pagus,) or, Urbigenus, one of the four divisions of Helvetia, (*Switzerland*), included the cantons of *Friburg* and *Bern*, with the districts of *Neufchatel* and *Vallengin*.
- Vergobretus, i, the title of the supreme magistrate among the Ædui, who was created yearly, and had the power of life and death over his countrymen.
- Veromandui, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Nervii and Suessiones. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum, (*St. Quentin*), on the right bank of the Samara, (*Somme*.) Like most of the other nations of Gallia Belgica, they were originally from Germany.
- Vertico. ōnis, a nobleman of the Nervii, who was in Cicero's camp, when attacked by the Eburones, and prevailed on a slave to carry a letter to Cæsar, communicating information of that event.

- Verudoctius**, i, one of the Helvetii. He and Nameius were at the head of the embassy sent to Cæsar, requesting permission to march through Provincia.
- Vesontio**, ðnis, f. *Besançon*, the chief town of the Sequāni. on the east bank of the river Dubis, (*Doux*.)
- Vigilia**, æ, f. a watch, the time a Roman soldier remained on guard during the night. Of these there were four, each three hours long. (See Gr. App. I.)
- Vineæ**, arum, f. a shed, used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers in besieging towns. It consisted of four upright posts, upon which was fixed a roof of hurdle or wicker-work. Above the hurdles were spread raw hides, a little earth, &c. to protect it from fire. The size of the vineæ differed according to circumstances. The whole rested upon wheels, so that this mantelet would be easily moved, and under it the besiegers either worked the ram, (See *Aries*,) or tried to undermine the walls. (See *Pluteus*.)
- Virdomārus**, one of the Ædui, more distinguished by political influence, than by noble birth. Cæsar, at the request of Divitiācus, raised him to the highest dignity in the state.
- Viridōvix**, icis, the leading man among the Unelli, who headed a powerful army in an attack on Sabīnus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants stationed among them, who defeated Viridōvix by an artful stratagem.
- Vocātes**, ium, a people of Aquitania, supposed by some to be the same with Vasātes, whose territories lay on the south bank of the *Garonne*, about ninety miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was *Cossio*.
- Vocio**, ðnis, king of the Norīci, to whose sister Ariovistus was married.
- Vocontii**, ðrum, a nation of Gaul, on the banks of a small stream called *Druna*, (*Drome*,) which falls into the *Rhodānus*, (*Rhone*,) about 100 miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was *Dia*, *Die*.
- Vosēgus**,* i, or *Vogēsus*, m. *Vaūge*, is a branch of Mount Jura, stretching in a northern direction, in which are the sources of the *Arar*, (*Saone*.) the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*,) and the *Mosella*, (*Moselle*.)
- Volcatius Tullus**, Volcatii Tulli, an officer, who, according to Cæsar, sustained, at Dyrrachium, (*Durazzo*,) with three cohorts, the charge of a whole legion.
- Volcæ**, arum, a numerous and powerful nation of Gaul, between the *Garumna*, (*Garonne*,) and the *Rhodānus*, (*Rhone*,) divided into the *Arecomīci*, and *Tectosāges*, q. v.
- Volusenū**, i, (*Caius*, i,) an officer whom Cæsar sent with a galley to survey the coast of Britain opposite Gaul, and to acquire as correct information as he could, respecting the harbors and landing places, previously to his sailing against that island.

148

[THE END.]

h. i.







JUN 28 1928

